Owner's Manual

2019 ILX

⚠WARNING

California Proposition 65 Warning

Operating, servicing and maintaining a passenger vehicle or off-highway motor vehicle can expose you to chemicals including engine exhaust, carbon monoxide, phthalates, and lead, which are known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. To minimize exposure, avoid breathing exhaust, do not idle the engine except as necessary, service your vehicle in a well-ventilated area and wear gloves or wash your hands frequently when servicing your vehicle. For more information go to *www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle*.

Event Data Recorders

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder (EDR). The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an air bag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. **The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less. The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:**

- **How various systems in your vehicle were operating;**
- **Whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts were buckled/fastened;**
- **How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal; and,**
- **How fast the vehicle was traveling.**

These data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur. NOTE: EDR data are recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data are recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data (e.g., name, gender, age, and crash location) are recorded. However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

The data belongs to the vehicle owner and may not be accessed by anyone else except as legally required or with the permission of the vehicle owner.

Service Diagnostic Recorders

This vehicle is equipped with service-related devices that record information about powertrain performance. The data can be used to verify emissions law requirements and/or help technicians diagnose and solve service problems. It may also be combined with data from other sources for research purposes, but it remains confidential. Some diagnostic and maintenance information is uploaded to Acura upon vehicle start up.

California Perchlorate Contamination Prevention Act

The airbags, seat belt tensioners, and CR type batteries in this vehicle may contain perchlorate materials - special handling may apply. See *www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate/*

As you read this manual, you will find information that is preceded by a NOTICE symbol. This information is intended to help you avoid damage to your vehicle, other property, or the environment.

Software End User License Agreement

Your vehicle comes equipped with software, which is governed by the End User License Agreement in Owner's Manual, and which contains a binding arbitration clause. Please refer to the End User License Agreement for the terms and conditions governing your use of the installed software, as well as the applications, services, functions, and content provided through the software. Your use of the installed software will serve as your consent to the terms and conditions of the End User License Agreement.
You may opt out within 30 days of your initial use of the Software by sending a signed, written notice to ACURA at American Honda Motor Co., Inc. Acura Client Relations Mail Stop 100-5E-8F, 1919 Torrance Blvd. Torrance, CA 90501-2746.

Privacy Notice

This vehicle may share location and usage information. To manage this setting, visit *www.acuralink.com/vehicle-data-choices*.

A Few Words About Safety

Your safety, and the safety of others, is very important. And operating this vehicle safely is an important responsibility.

To help you make informed decisions about safety, we have provided operating procedures and other information on labels and in this manual. This information alerts you to potential hazards that could hurt you or others.

Of course, it is not practical or possible to warn you about all the hazards associated with operating or maintaining your vehicle. You must use your own good judgment.

You will find this important safety information in a variety of forms, including:

- **Safety Labels** - on the vehicle.
- **Safety Messages** - preceded by a safety alert symbol ⚠ and one of three signal words: **DANGER**, **WARNING**, or **CAUTION**. These signal words mean:

⚠DANGER	You WILL be KILLED or SERIOUSLY HURT if you don't follow instructions.
⚠WARNING	You CAN be KILLED or SERIOUSLY HURT if you don't follow instructions.
⚠CAUTION	You CAN be HURT if you don't follow instructions.

- **Safety Headings** - such as Important Safety Precautions.
- **Safety Section** - such as Safe Driving.
- **Instructions** - how to use this vehicle correctly and safely.

This entire book is filled with important safety information - please read it carefully.

This owner's manual should be considered a permanent part of the vehicle and should remain with the vehicle when it is sold.

This owner's manual covers all models of your vehicle. You may find descriptions of equipment and features that are not on your particular model.

Images throughout this owner's manual (including the front cover) represent features and equipment that are available on some, but not all, models. Your particular model may not have some of these features.

This owner's manual is for vehicles sold in the United States and Canada.

The information and specifications included in this publication were in effect at the time of approval for printing. Honda Motor Co., Ltd. reserves the right, however, to discontinue or change specifications or design at any time without notice and without incurring any obligation.

Safe Driving P. 27

For Safe Driving P. 28 Seat Belts P. 32 Airbags P. 39

Instrument Panel P. 67

Indicators P. 68 Gauges and Multi-Information Display P. 88

Controls P. 105

Clock P. 106 Locking and Unlocking the Doors P. 108
Moonroof P. 134
Adjusting the Seats P. 154

Features P. 175

Audio System P. 176 Audio System Basic Operation P. 183, 206
Customized Features P. 304, 310 HomeLink® Universal Transceiver* P. 336

Driving P. 419

Before Driving P. 420 Towing a Trailer P. 425
Parking Your Vehicle P. 495 Multi-View Rear Camera P. 500

Maintenance P. 505

Before Performing Maintenance P. 506 Maintenance Minder™ P. 509
Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades P. 530
Climate Control System Maintenance P. 544 Cleaning P. 545

Handling the Unexpected P. 553

Tools P. 554 If a Tire Goes Flat P. 555
Overheating P. 584 Indicator, Coming On/Blinking P. 586

Information P. 595

Specifications P. 596 Identification Numbers P. 598
Warranty Coverages P. 603 Authorized Manuals P. 605

Contents

Quick Reference Guide P. 4

Child Safety P. 52
Exhaust Gas Hazard P. 65
Safety Labels P. 66

Safe Driving P. 27

Instrument Panel P. 67

Opening and Closing the Trunk P. 124
Security System P. 128
Opening and Closing the Windows P. 131
Operating the Switches Around the Steering Wheel P. 135
Adjusting the Mirrors P. 152
Interior Lights/Interior Convenience Items P. 164
Climate Control System P. 171

Controls P. 105

Features P. 175

Audio Error Messages P. 275
General Information on the Audio System P. 286
Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink® P. 339, 368
AcuraLink®* P. 410

Driving P. 419

When Driving P. 426
AcuraWatch™ P. 446
Braking P. 491
Refueling P. 502
Fuel Economy and CO_2 Emissions P. 504

Maintenance P. 505

Maintenance Under the Hood P. 514
Replacing Light Bulbs P. 525
Checking and Maintaining Tires P. 532
Battery P. 541
Remote Transmitter Care P. 542
Accessories and Modifications P. 551

Handling the Unexpected P. 553

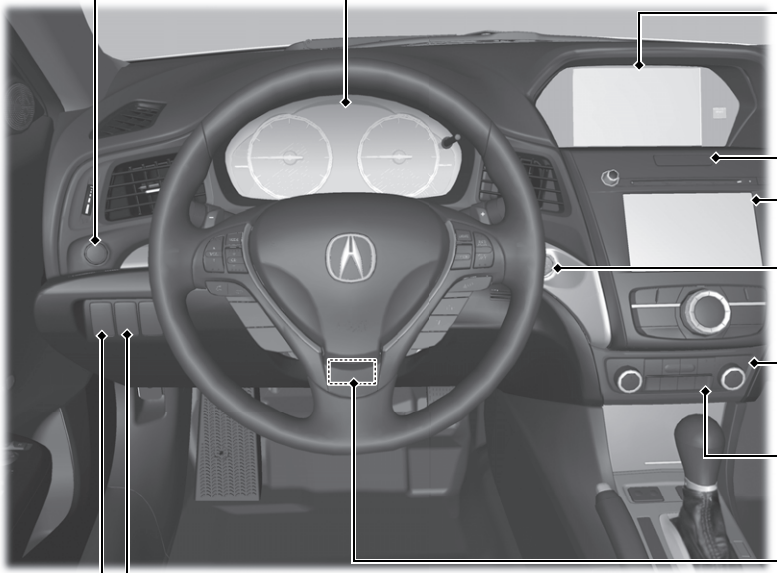
Engine Does Not Start P. 577
Jump Starting P. 580
Shift Lever Does Not Move P. 583
Fuses P. 590
Emergency Towing P. 593

Information P. 595

Devices that Emit Radio Waves P. 599
Reporting Safety Defects P. 600
Emissions Testing P. 601
Client Service Information P. 606

Index P. 610

Visual Index



(Vehicle Stability Assist® (VSA®) System OFF) Button P. 438

System Indicators P. 68

Gauges P. 88

Multi-Information Display P. 89

Audio/Information Screen* P. 184

Information Screen* P. 211

Navigation System*
See the Navigation System Manual

Hazard Warning Button

Audio System P. 176

On Demand Multi-Use Display™* P. 207

ENGINE START/STOP Button P. 135

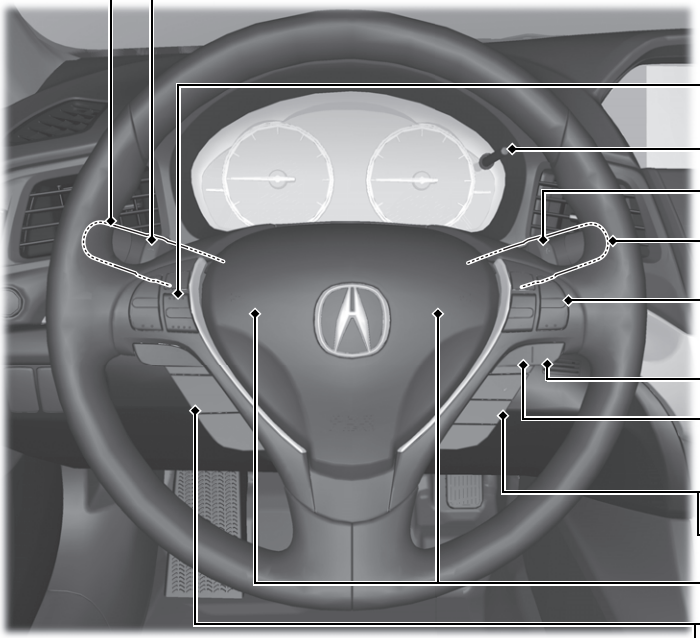
Climate Control System P. 171

Rear Defogger/Heated Door Mirror Button P. 149

Steering Wheel Adjustments P. 149

Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™) Button P. 452

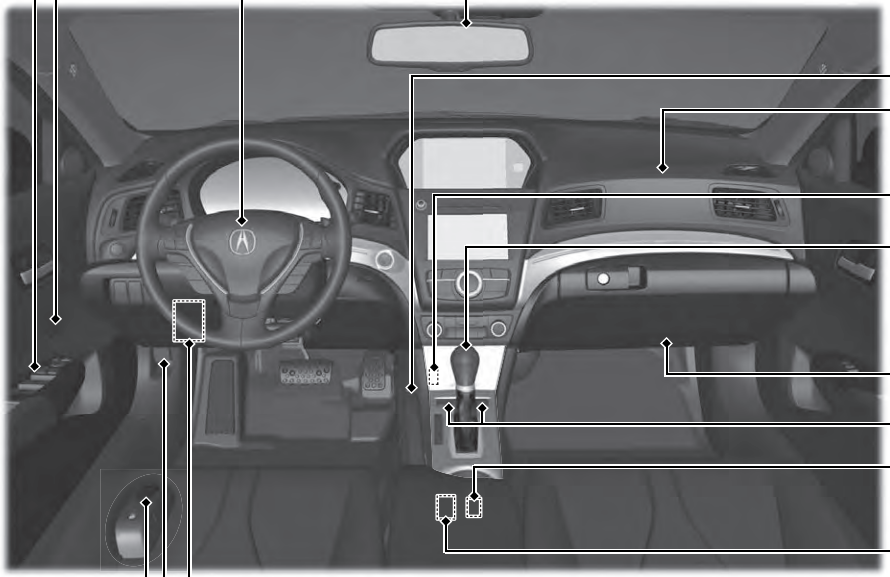
Road Departure Mitigation (RDM) Button P. 485



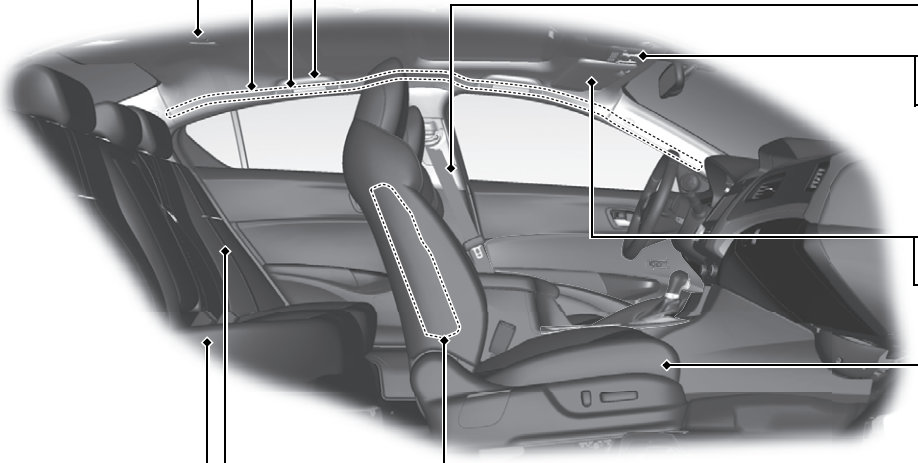
- Headlights/Turn Signals P. 138
- Fog Lights* P. 142
- Paddle Shifter (Shift down) P. 436
- Audio Remote Controls P. 181
- Brightness Control P. 148
- Paddle Shifter (Shift up) P. 436
- Wipers/Washers P. 146
- Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) Buttons P. 459
- Interval Button P. 468
- Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Button P. 476
- SEL/RESET Button P. 91
- ▲ⓘ/▼ (Information) Button P. 90
- Horn (Press an area around .)
- Voice Control Buttons* P. 218
- *Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink® System Voice Control Buttons P. 339, 368

* Not available on all models

Visual Index



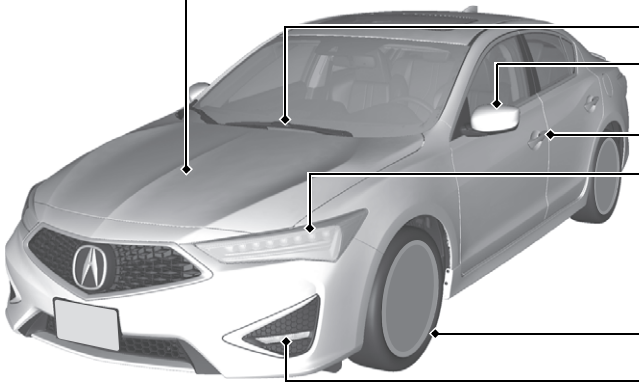
Power Window Switches P. 131
Memory Buttons* P. 151
SET Button* P. 151
Power Door Lock Master Switch P. 122
Door Mirror Controls P. 153
Driver's Front Airbag P. 42
Rearview Mirror P. 152
Parking Brake P. 491
Passenger's Front Airbag P. 42
USB Adapter Cable* P. 178
Shift Lever
Dual Clutch Transmission P. 433
Glove Box P. 166
Seat Heater Switches P. 170
Auxiliary Input Jack P. 177
USB Port* P. 179
Accessory Power Socket P. 169
Interior Fuse Box P. 591
Hood Release Handle P. 515
Trunk Opener P. 124
Fuel Fill Door Release Handle P. 503



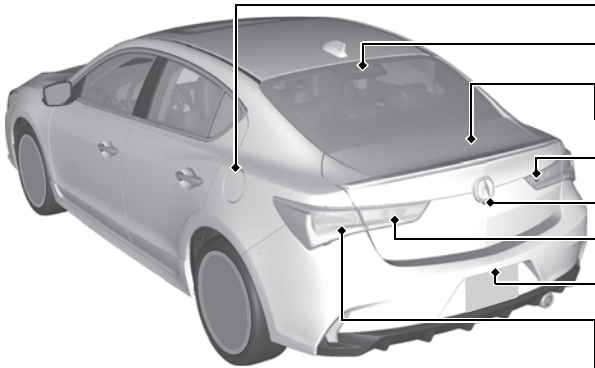
Interior Light P. 164
Side Curtain Airbags P. 48
Coat Hook P. 169
Grab Handle
Seat Belts P. 32
Moonroof Switch P. 134
Map Lights P. 165
Sun Visors
Vanity Mirrors
Front Seat P. 154
Side Airbags P. 46
Seat Belt (Installing a Child Seat) P. 59
Seat Belt to Secure a Child Seat P. 61
Rear Seat P. 162
LATCH to Secure a Child Seat P. 57

* Not available on all models

Visual Index



- Maintenance Under the Hood P. 514
- Windshield Wipers P. 146, 530
- Power Door Mirrors P. 153
- Door Lock/Unlock Control P. 111
- Headlights P. 139, 525
- Front Turn Signal Lights P. 138, 525
- Front Side Marker Lights P. 139, 525
- Parking/Daytime Running Lights P. 139, 142, 525
- Tires P. 532, 555, 570
- Fog Lights* P. 142, 525



- How to Refuel P. 503
- High-Mount Brake Light P. 529
- Opening/Closing the Trunk P. 124
- Emergency Trunk Opener P. 127
- Trunk Release Button P. 125
- Multi-View Rear Camera P. 500
- Back-Up Lights P. 528
- Rear License Plate Light P. 139, 529
- Rear Turn Signal Lights P. 526
- Rear Side Marker Lights P. 526
- Brake Lights P. 526
- Taillights P. 139, 526

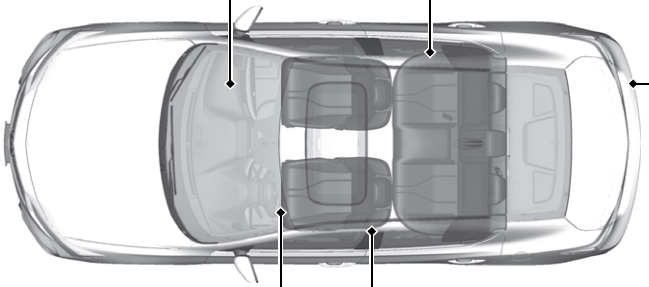
Safe Driving P. 27

Airbags P. 39

- Your vehicle is fitted with airbags to help protect you and your passengers during a moderate-to-severe collision.

Child Safety P. 52

- All children 12 and younger should be seated in the rear seat.
- Smaller children should be properly restrained in a forward-facing child seat.
- Infants must be properly restrained in a rear-facing child seat.



Exhaust Gas Hazard P. 65

- Your vehicle emits dangerous exhaust gases that contain carbon monoxide. Do not run the engine in confined spaces where carbon monoxide gas can accumulate.

Seat Belts P. 32

- Fasten your seat belt and sit upright well back in the seat.
- Check that your passengers are wearing their seat belts correctly.



Fasten your lap belt as low as possible.

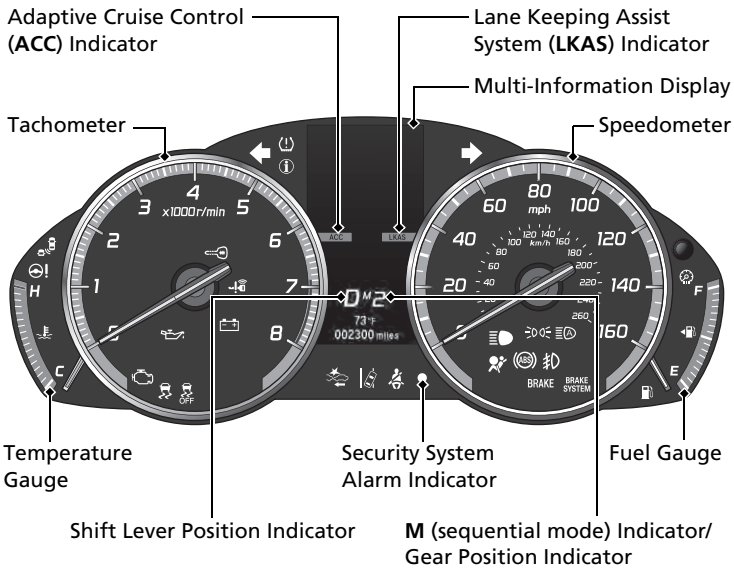
Before Driving Checklist P. 31

- Before driving, check that the front seats, head restraints, steering wheel, and mirrors have been properly adjusted.

* Not available on all models

Instrument Panel P. 67

Gauges P. 88/Multi-Information Display P. 89/System Indicators P. 68



System Indicators

- Blind spot information System Indicator*
- Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator
- Malfunction Indicator Lamp
- Low Oil Pressure Indicator
- Vehicle Stability Assist® (VSA®) System Indicator
- Vehicle Stability Assist® (VSA®) OFF Indicator
- Immobilizer System Indicator
- Keyless Access System Indicator
- Charging System Indicator
- Low Tire Pressure/ TPMS Indicator

System Indicators

- System Message Indicator
- Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™) Indicator
- Road Departure Mitigation (RDM) Indicator

Lights Indicators

- Lights On Indicator
- High Beam Indicator
- Fog Light Indicator*

System Indicators

- Turn Signal and Hazard Warning Indicators
- Supplemental Restraint System Indicator
- Anti-lock Brake System (**ABS**) Indicator
- BRAKE U.S. / Canada — Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red)
- BRAKE SYSTEM U.S. / Canada — Brake System Indicator (Amber)
- Low Fuel Indicator
- Seat Belt Reminder Indicator
- Auto High-Beam Indicator

Controls P. 105

Clock P. 106

Models with one display

1. Press the **CLOCK** (**AUX**) button until the displayed time begins flashing.
2. Press Preset 4 (Hour) or 5 (Minute) to set the time. Press Preset 6 (Reset) to set the time to the nearest hour.
3. Press the **CLOCK** button again to set the time.

Models with two displays



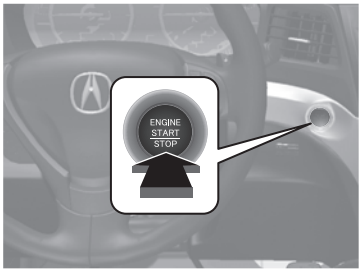
1. Enter the **Clock Adjustment** screen.
   Adjusting the Clock P. 106
2. Rotate ⟲ to change hour, then move ○▷.
3. Rotate ⟲ to change minute, then press ⊙.

Models with navigation system

The clock is automatically updated through the audio system.

ENGINE START/STOP Button P. 135

Press the button to change the vehicle's power mode.



Turn Signals P. 138

Turn Signal Control Lever



Lights P. 139

Light Control Switches



* Not available on all models

Wipers and Washers

P. 146

Wiper/Washer Control Lever



MIST
OFF
AUTO[*1]: Wiper speed varies automatically
INT[*2]: Low speed with intermittent
LO: Low speed wipe
HI: High speed wipe

Pull toward you to spray washer fluid.

Adjustment Ring
−: Low Sensitivity[*1]
: Lower speed, fewer sweeps[*2]
+: High Sensitivity[*1]
: Higher speed, more sweeps[*2]

*1:Models with automatic intermittent wipers
*2:Models without automatic intermittent wipers

Models with automatic intermittent wipers

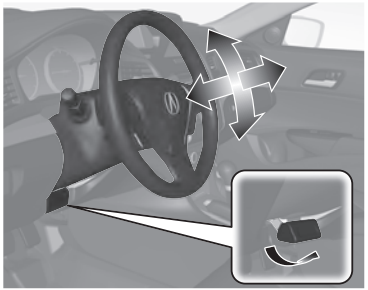
AUTO should always be turned **OFF** before the following situations in order to prevent severe damage to the wiper system:

- Cleaning the windshield
- Driving through a car wash
- No rain present

Steering Wheel

P. 149

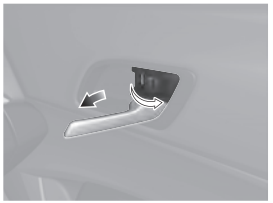
- To adjust, pull the adjustment lever toward you, adjust to the desired position, then lock the lever back in place.



Unlocking the Front Doors from the Inside

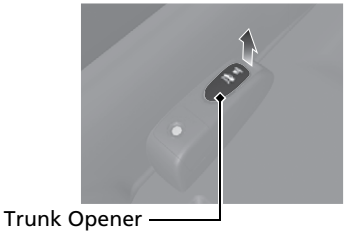
P. 121

- Pull either front door inner handle to unlock and open it in one motion.



- Unlocking and opening the driver's door from the inner handle unlocks all the other doors.

Trunk P. 124

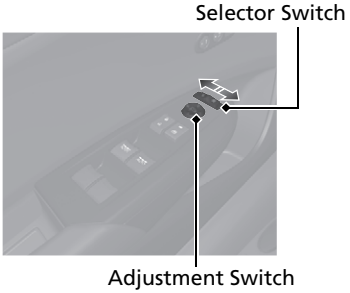


● To unlock and open the trunk:
- Pull the trunk opener.
- Press the trunk release button on the keyless access remote.
- Press the trunk release button on the trunk lid.

Power Door Mirrors

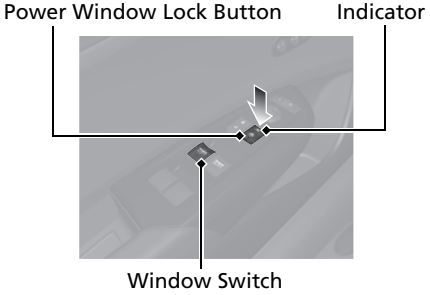
P. 153

● With the power mode in ON, move the selector switch to **L** or **R**.
● Push the appropriate edge of the adjustment switch to adjust the mirror.



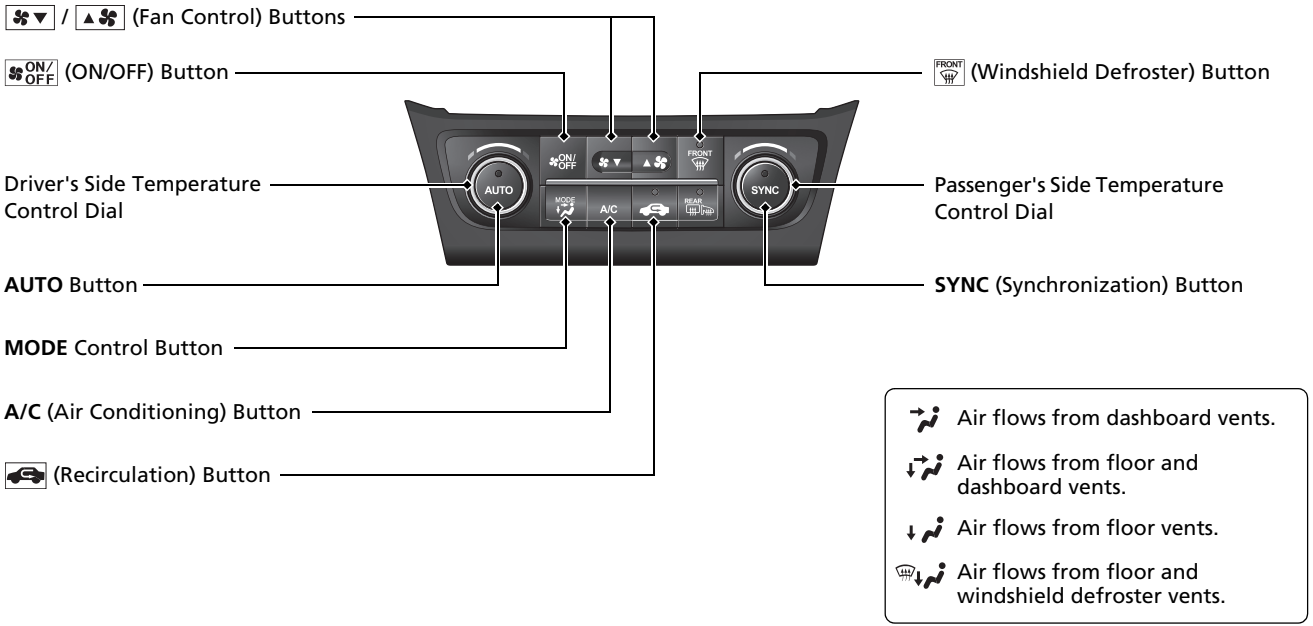
Power Windows P. 131

● With the power mode in ON, open and close the power windows.
● If the power window lock button is in the off position, each passenger's window can be opened and closed with its own switch.
● If the power window lock button is in the on position (indicator is on), each passenger's window switch is disabled.



Climate Control System P. 171

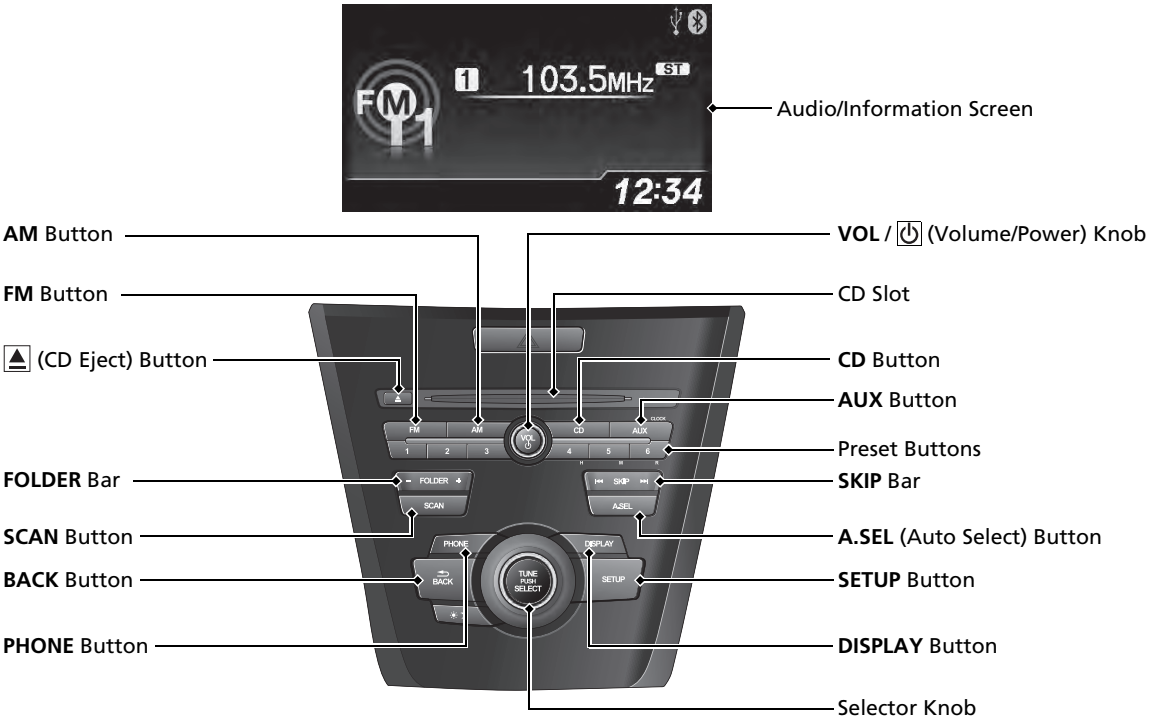
- Press the **AUTO** button to activate the climate control system.
- Press the ON/OFF button to turn the system on or off.
- Press the FRONT button to defrost the windshield.



Features P. 175

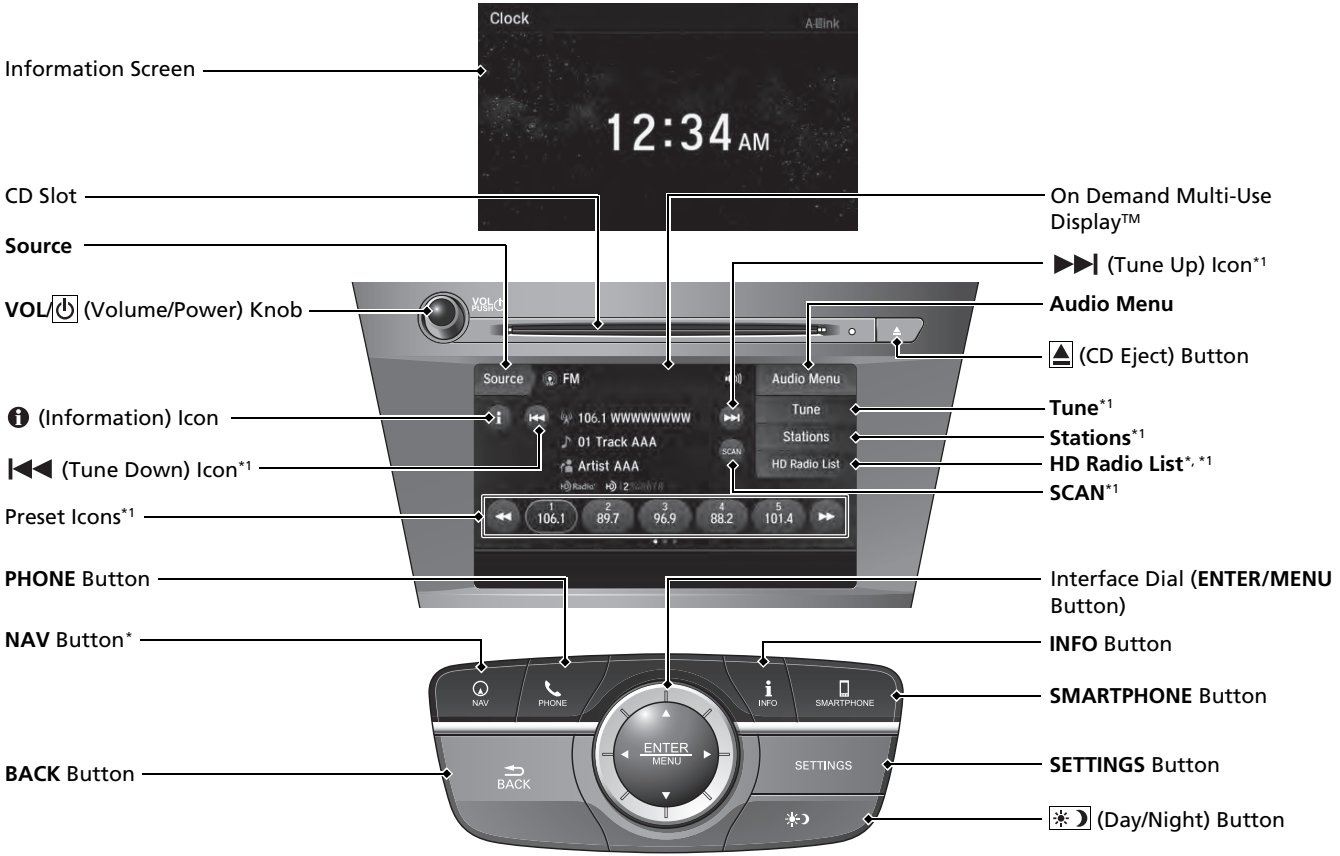
Audio System P. 176

Models with one display P. 183



For navigation system operation See the Navigation System Manual

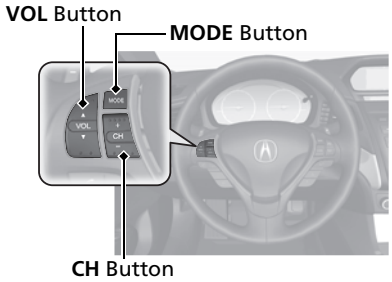
Models with two displays P. 206



*1:Icons that appear on the screen vary by the source selected.

Audio Remote Controls

P. 181



- **VOL** (Volume) Button
  Press ▲ / ▼ to adjust the volume up/down.
- **MODE** Button

  Models with one display

  Press to change the audio mode: FM1/FM2/AM/CD/AUX.

  Models with two displays

  Press to change the audio mode: FM/AM/SiriusXM®/CD/HDD*/USB/iPod/Apple CarPlay/Android Auto/*Bluetooth*® Audio/Pandora®*/AUX
- **CH** (Channel) Button
  Radio: Press to change the preset station. Press and hold to select the next or previous strong station.
  CD/HDD*/USB device: Press to skip to the beginning of the next song or return to the beginning of the current song. Press and hold to change a folder.

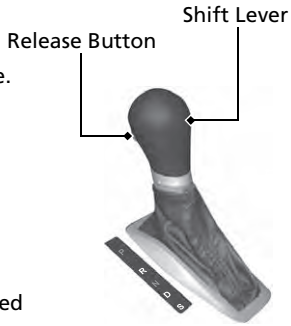
* Not available on all models

Driving P. 419

Dual Clutch Transmission P. 433

- Shift to P and depress the brake pedal when starting the engine.

Shifting



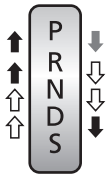
P **Park**
Turn off or start the engine. Transmission is locked.

R **Reverse**
Used when reversing.

N **Neutral**
Transmission is not locked.

D **Drive**
Normal driving. Sequential mode can be used temporarily.

S **S Position**
Sequential mode can be used.



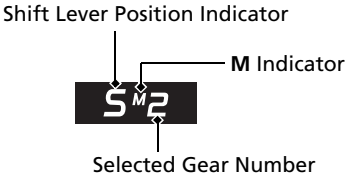
Depress the brake pedal and press the release button to move out of P.

Press the release button to move the shift lever.

Move the shift lever without pressing the release button.

Sequential Mode P. 436

Paddle shifters allow you to shift gears much like a manual transmission (1st through 8th). This is useful for engine braking.

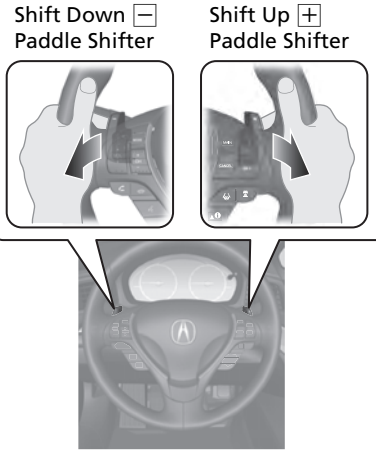


When the transmission is in D

- The transmission will shift back to automatic mode once the system detects that the vehicle is cruising.

When the transmission is in S

- Holds the selected gear, and the **M** indicator comes on.
- The selected gear position is shown in the instrument panel.



CMBS™ On and Off

P. 449

- When a possible collision is likely unavoidable, the CMBS™ can help you to reduce the vehicle speed and the severity of the collision.
- The CMBS™ is turned on every time you start the engine.
- To turn the CMBS™ on or off, press and hold the button until you hear a beep.

VSA® On and Off P. 438

- The Vehicle Stability Assist® (VSA®) system helps stabilize the vehicle during cornering, and helps maintain traction while accelerating on loose or slippery road surfaces.
- VSA® comes on automatically every time you start the engine.
- To partially disable or fully restore VSA® function, press and hold the button until you hear a beep.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) P. 442

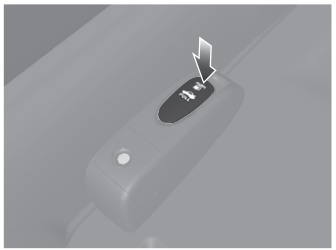
- The TPMS monitors tire pressure.
- The TPMS is turned on automatically every time you start the engine.

Refueling P. 502

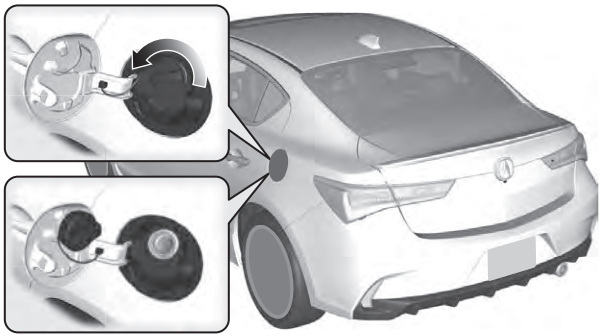
Fuel recommendation: **Unleaded premium gasoline, pump octane number 91 or higher**

Fuel tank capacity: 13.2 US gal (50 L)

1. Push the fuel fill door release handle.

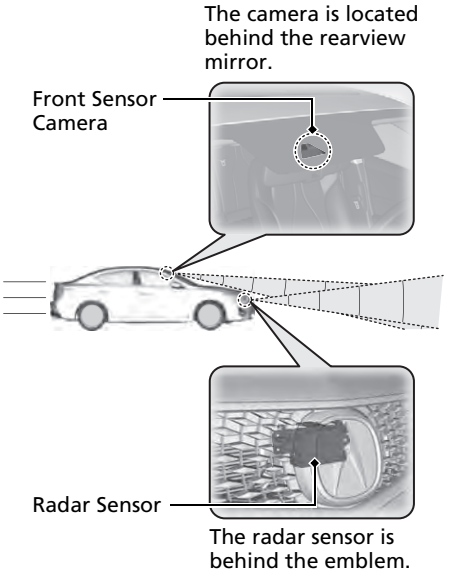


2. Turn the fuel fill cap slowly to remove the cap.
3. Place the cap in the holder on the fuel fill door.
4. After refueling, screw the cap back on until it clicks at least once.



AcuraWatch™ P. 446

AcuraWatch™ is a driver support system which employs the use of two distinctly different kinds of sensors, a radar sensor located behind the emblem and a front sensor camera mounted to the interior side of the windshield, behind the rearview mirror.



Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™) P. 449

Can assist you when there is a possibility of your vehicle colliding with a vehicle or a pedestrian detected in front of yours. The CMBS™ is designed to alert you when a potential collision is determined, as well as to reduce your vehicle speed to help minimize collision severity when a collision is deemed unavoidable.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) P. 459

Helps maintain a constant vehicle speed and a set following-interval behind a vehicle detected ahead of yours, without you having to keep your foot on the brake or the accelerator.

Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) P. 474

Provides steering input to help keep the vehicle in the middle of a detected lane and provides visual alert if the vehicle is detected drifting out of its lane.

Road Departure Mitigation (RDM) System P. 483

Alerts and helps to assist you when the system detects a possibility of your vehicle unintentionally crossing over detected lane markings and/or leaving the roadway altogether.

Maintenance P. 505

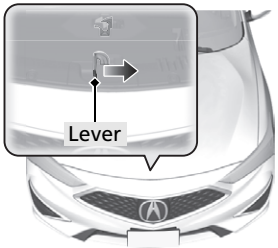
Under the Hood P. 514

- Check engine oil, engine coolant, and windshield washer fluid. Add when necessary.
- Check brake fluid.
- Check the battery condition monthly.

1. Pull the hood release handle under the corner of the dashboard.



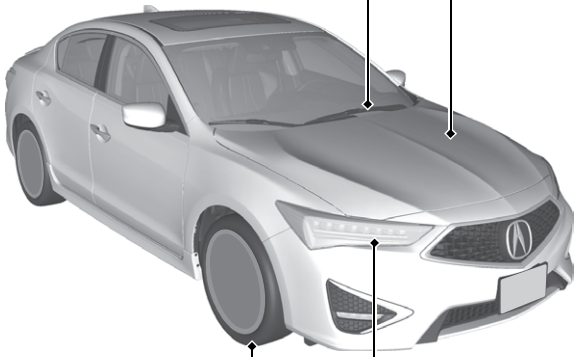
2. Locate the hood latch lever, push it to the side, and then raise the hood. Once you have raised the hood slightly, you can release the lever.



3. When finished, close the hood and make sure it is firmly locked in place.

Wiper Blades P. 530

- Replace blades if they leave streaks across the windshield.



Tires P. 532

- Inspect tires and wheels regularly.
- Check tire pressures regularly.
- Install snow tires for winter driving.

Lights P. 525

- Inspect all lights regularly.

Handling the Unexpected P. 553

Flat Tire P. 555

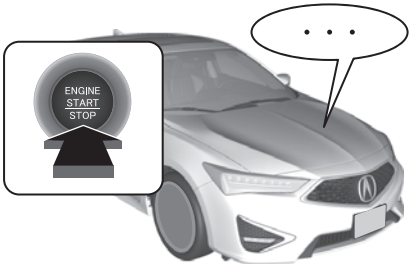
● Models with tire repair kit
Park in a safe location and repair the flat tire using the temporary tire repair kit.

Models with optional spare tire
Park in a safe location and replace the flat tire with the compact spare tire in the trunk.



Engine Won't Start P. 577

● If the battery is dead, jump start using a booster battery.



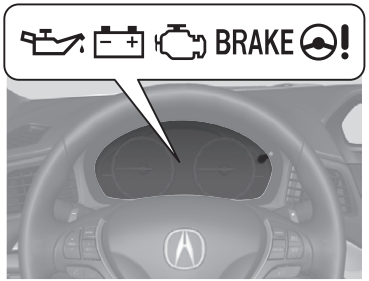
Overheating P. 584

● Park in a safe location. If you do not see steam under the hood, open the hood, and let the engine cool down.



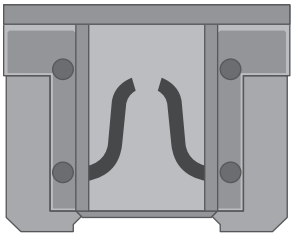
Indicators Come On P. 586

● Identify the indicator and consult the owner's manual.



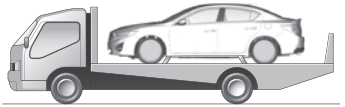
Blown Fuse P. 590

● Check for a blown fuse if an electrical device does not operate.



Emergency Towing P. 593

● Call a professional towing service if you need to tow your vehicle.



What to Do If

Q **The power mode does not change from ACCESSORY to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK). Why?**

A The shift lever should be moved to P.



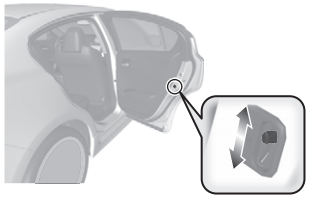
Q **Why does the brake pedal pulsate slightly when applying the brakes?**

A This can occur when the ABS activates and does not indicate a problem. Apply firm, steady pressure on the brake pedal. Never pump the brake pedal.

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) P. 493

Q **The rear door cannot be opened from inside the vehicle. Why?**

A Check if the childproof lock is in the lock position. If so, open the rear door with the outside door handle. To cancel this function, slide the lever up to the unlock position.



Q **Why do the doors lock after I unlocked the doors?**

A If you do not open the doors within 30 seconds, the doors are relocked automatically for security.

Q **Why does the beeper sound when I open the driver's door?**

A The beeper sounds when:
- The power mode is in ACCESSORY.
- The exterior lights are left on.

Q **Why does a beeper sound when I walk away from the vehicle after I close the door?**

A The beeper sounds if you move outside the walk away auto lock operating range before the door completely closes.
➡ **Locking the doors (Walk away auto lock®)** P. 113

Q **Why does the beeper sound when I start driving?**

A The beeper sounds when:
- Driver and/or front passenger are not wearing their seat belts.
- The parking brake lever is not fully released.

Q **I'm seeing an amber indicator of a tire with an exclamation point. What is that?**

A The Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) needs attention. Check tire pressure.
➡ **If the Low Tire Pressure/TPMS Indicator Comes On or Blinks** P. 589

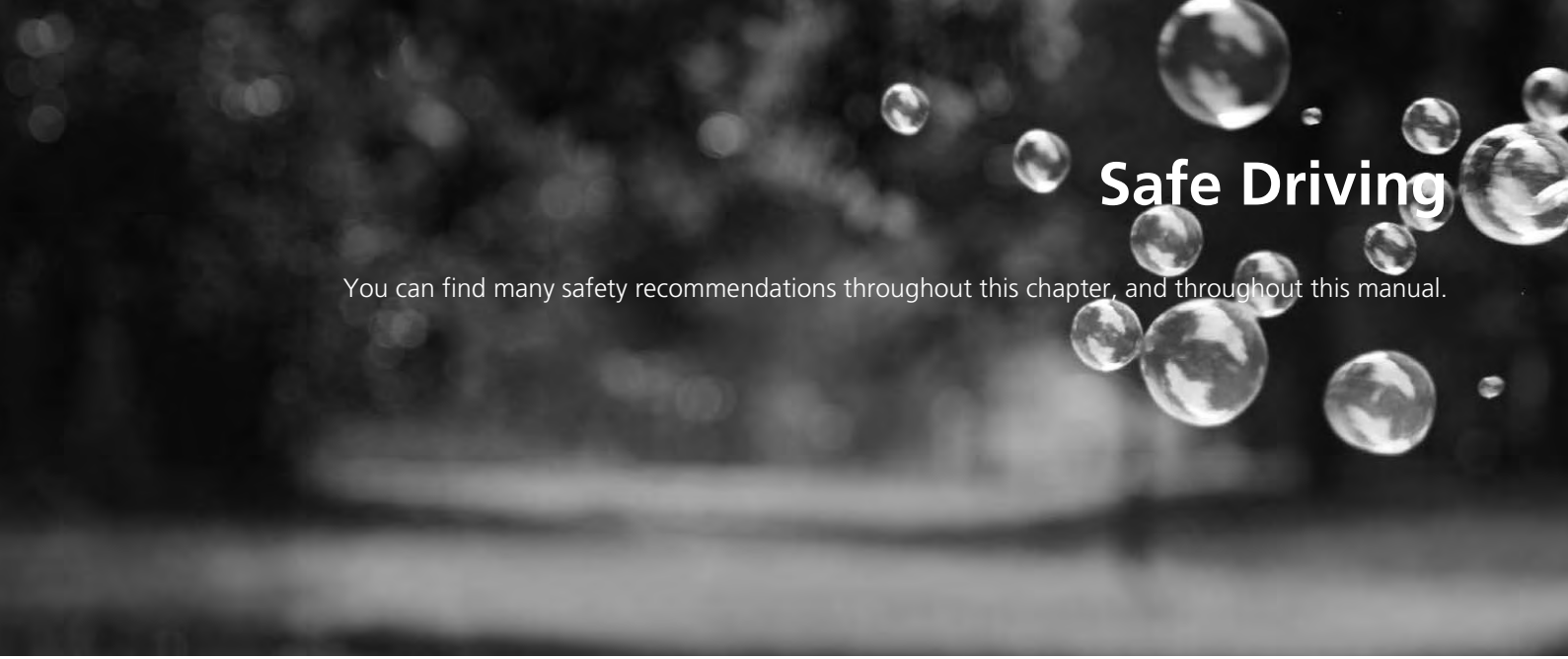
Q **Why do I hear a screeching sound when I apply the brake pedal?**

A The brake pads may need to be replaced. Have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

Q **Unleaded gasoline with a Pump Octane Number (PON) of 91 or higher is recommended.**
Is it possible to use unleaded gasoline with a Pump Octane Number (PON) of 87 or lower on this vehicle?

A Unleaded gasoline with a Pump Octane Number (PON) of 91 or higher is recommended.
Use of lower octane gasoline can cause occasional metallic knocking noise in the engine and will result in decreased engine performance.
Use of gasoline with a pump octane less than 87 can lead to engine damage.

This page intentionally left blank.



Safe Driving

You can find many safety recommendations throughout this chapter, and throughout this manual.

For Safe Driving
- Important Safety Precautions 28
- Your Vehicle's Safety Features..... 30
- Safety Checklist 31

Seat Belts
- About Your Seat Belts..... 32
- Fastening a Seat Belt..... 35
- Seat Belt Inspection..... 38

Airbags
- Airbag System Components..... 39
- Types of Airbags 42
- Front Airbags (SRS) 42
- Side Airbags 46
- Side Curtain Airbags 48
- Airbag System Indicators..... 49
- Airbag Care 51

Child Safety
- Protecting Child Passengers 52
- Safety of Infants and Small Children 54
- Safety of Larger Children 63

Exhaust Gas Hazard
- Carbon Monoxide Gas..... 65

Safety Labels
- Label Locations..... 66

The following pages explain your vehicle's safety features and how to use them properly. The safety precautions below are ones that we consider to be among the most important.

Important Safety Precautions

■ Always wear your seat belt

A seat belt is your best protection in all types of collisions. Airbags are designed to supplement seat belts, not replace them. So even though your vehicle is equipped with airbags, make sure you and your passengers always wear your seat belts, and wear them properly.

■ Restrain all children

Children ages 12 and under should ride properly restrained in a back seat, not the front seat. Infants and small children should be restrained in a child seat. Larger children should use a booster seat and a lap/shoulder seat belt until they can use the belt properly without a booster seat.

■ Be aware of airbag hazards

While airbags can save lives, they can cause serious or fatal injuries to occupants who sit too close to them, or are not properly restrained. Infants, young children, and short adults are at the greatest risk. Be sure to follow all instructions and warnings in this manual.

■ Don't drink and drive

Alcohol and driving don't mix. Even one drink can reduce your ability to respond to changing conditions, and your reaction time gets worse with every additional drink. So don't drink and drive, and don't let your friends drink and drive, either.

Important Safety Precautions

Some states, provinces and territories prohibit the use of cell phones other than hands-free devices by the driver while driving.

■ Pay appropriate attention to the task of driving safely

Engaging in cell phone conversation or other activities that keep you from paying close attention to the road, other vehicles, and pedestrians could lead to a crash. Remember, situations can change quickly, and only you can decide when it is safe to divert some attention away from driving.

■ Control your speed

Excessive speed is a major factor in crash injuries and deaths. Generally, the higher the speed, the greater the risk, but serious injuries can also occur at lower speeds. Never drive faster than is safe for current conditions, regardless of the maximum speed posted.

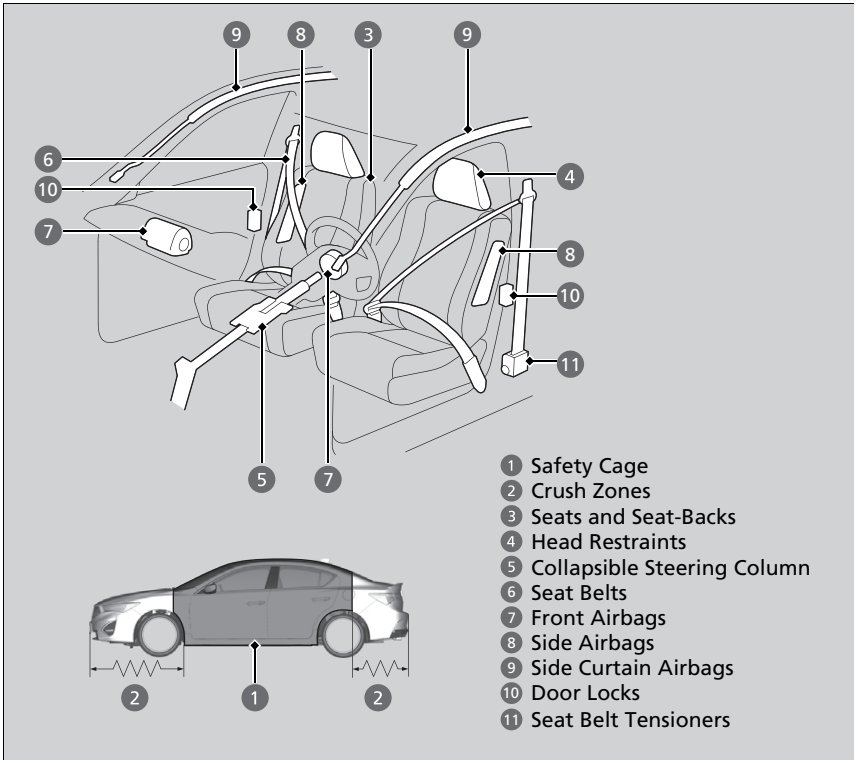
■ Keep your vehicle in safe condition

Having a tire blowout or a mechanical failure can be extremely hazardous.
To reduce the possibility of such problems, check your tire pressures and condition frequently, and perform all regularly scheduled maintenance.

■ Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle

Children, pets and people needing assistance left unattended in the vehicle may be injured if they activate one or more of the vehicle controls. They may also cause the vehicle to move, resulting in a crash in which they and/or another person(s) can be injured or killed. Also, depending on the ambient temperature, the temperature of the interior may reach extreme levels, which can result in harm or death.
Even if the climate control system is on, never leave them in the vehicle unattended as the climate control system can shut off at any time.

Your Vehicle's Safety Features



The following checklist will help you take an active role in protecting yourself and your passengers.

Your Vehicle's Safety Features

Your vehicle is equipped with many features that work together to help protect you and your passengers during a crash.

Some features do not require any action on your part. These include a strong steel framework that forms a safety cage around the passenger compartment, front and rear crush zones, a collapsible steering column, and tensioners that tighten the front seat belts in a sufficient crash.

However, you and your passengers cannot take full advantage of these features unless you remain seated in the correct position and always wear your seat belts. In fact, some safety features can contribute to injuries if they are not used properly.

Safety Checklist

For the safety of you and your passengers, make a habit of checking these items each time before you drive.

- After everyone has entered the vehicle, be sure all doors and the tailgate are closed and locked. Locking the doors and the tailgate helps prevent an occupant from being ejected and an outsider from unexpectedly opening a door or the tailgate.
  ➡ **Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside** P. 120
- Adjust your seat to a position suitable for driving. Be sure the front seats are adjusted as far to the rear as possible while allowing the driver to control the vehicle. Sitting too close to a front airbag can result in serious or fatal injury in a crash.
  ➡ **Adjusting the Seats** P. 154
- Adjust head restraints to the proper position. Head restraints are most effective when the center of the head restraint aligns with the center of your head. Taller persons should adjust their head restraint to the highest position.
  ➡ **Adjusting the Front and Rear Outer Head Restraint Positions** P. 158
- Always wear your seat belt, and make sure you wear it properly. Confirm that any passengers are properly belted as well.
  ➡ **Fastening a Seat Belt** P. 35
- Protect children by using seat belts or child seats according to a child's age, height and weight.
  ➡ **Child Safety** P. 52

Safety Checklist

If the door and/or trunk open message appears on the multi-information display (MID), a door and/or the trunk is not completely closed. Close all doors and the trunk tightly until the message disappears.

➡ **Multi-Information Display Warning and Information Messages** P. 81



About Your Seat Belts

Seat belts are the single most effective safety device because they keep you connected to the vehicle so that you can take advantage of many built-in safety features. They also help keep you from being thrown against the inside of the vehicle, against any passengers, or out of the vehicle. When worn properly, seat belts also keep your body properly positioned in a crash so that you can take full advantage of the additional protection provided by the airbags.

In addition, seat belts help protect you in almost every type of crash, including:
- frontal impacts
- side impacts
- rear impacts
- rollovers

■ Lap/shoulder seat belts

All five seating positions are equipped with lap/shoulder seat belts with emergency locking retractors. In normal driving the retractor lets you move freely while keeping some tension on the belt. During a collision or sudden stop the retractor locks to restrain your body.
The front passenger's and rear seat belts also have a lockable retractor for use with child seats.

➧ **Installing a Child Seat with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt** P. 59

About Your Seat Belts

⚠WARNING

Not wearing a seat belt properly increases the chance of serious injury or death in a crash, even though your vehicle has airbags.

Be sure you and your passengers always wear seat belts and wear them properly.

Seat belts cannot completely protect you in every crash. But in most cases, seat belts can reduce your risk of serious injury.

Most states and all Canadian provinces and territories require you to wear seat belts.

If you extend the seat belt too quickly, it will lock in place. If this happens, slightly retract the seat belt, then extend it slowly.

■ Proper use of seat belts

Follow these guidelines for proper use:

- All occupants should sit upright, well back in the seat, and remain in that position for the duration of the trip. Slouching and leaning reduce the effectiveness of the belt and can increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.
- Never place the shoulder part of a lap/shoulder seat belt under your arm or behind your back. This could cause very serious injuries in a crash.
- Two people should never use the same seat belt. If they do, they could be very seriously injured in a crash.
- Do not put any accessories on the seat belts. Devices intended to improve comfort or reposition the shoulder part of a seat belt can reduce the protective capability and increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.

■ Seat Belt Reminder



The seat belt system includes an indicator on the instrument panel to remind the driver or a front passenger or both to fasten their seat belts.
If you set the power mode to ON and a seat belt is not fastened, a beeper will sound and the indicator will blink. After a few seconds, the beeper will stop and the indicator will come on and remain illuminated until the seat belt is fastened.

The beeper will periodically sound and the indicator will blink while the vehicle is moving until the driver's and/or the front passenger's seat belts is fastened.

Continued

About Your Seat Belts

If a rear seat passenger moves around and extends the seat belt, the lockable retractor may activate. If this happens, release the retractor by unfastening the seat belt and allow the belt to retract completely. Then refasten the belt.

Seat Belt Reminder

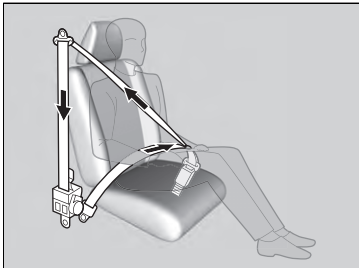
The indicator will also come on if a front passenger does not fasten their seat belt within 6 seconds after the power mode is set to ON.
When no one is sitting in the front passenger's seat, the indicator will not come on and the beeper will not sound.
The indicator also may not come on and the beeper may not sound when the occupant is not heavy enough to trigger the weight sensor. Such occupants (e.g., infants and smaller children) should be moved to the rear seat as a deploying front airbag likely will injure or kill them.

➡ **Protecting Child Passengers** P. 52

■ Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners

The front seats are equipped with automatic seat belt tensioners to enhance safety.

The tensioners automatically tighten the front seat belts during a moderate-to-severe frontal collision, sometimes even if the collision is not severe enough to inflate the front airbags.



Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners

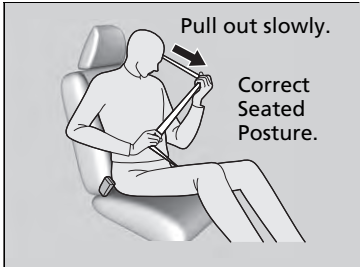
The seat belt tensioners can only operate once. If a tensioner is activated, the SRS indicator will come on. Have a dealer replace the tensioner and thoroughly inspect the seat belt system as it may not offer protection in a subsequent crash.

During a moderate-to-severe side impact, the tensioner on that side of the vehicle also activates.

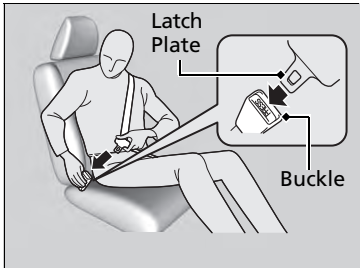
Fastening a Seat Belt

After adjusting a front seat to the proper position, and while sitting upright and well back in the seat:

Adjusting the Seats P. 154



1. Pull the seat belt out slowly.



2. Insert the latch plate into the buckle, then tug on the belt to make sure the buckle is secure.

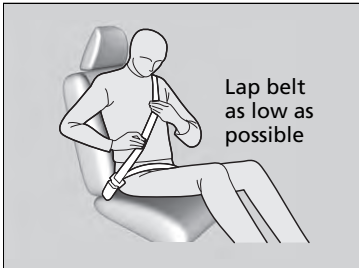
▶ Make sure that the belt is not twisted or caught on anything.

Fastening a Seat Belt

No one should sit in a seat with an inoperative seat belt or one that does not appear to be working correctly. Using a seat belt that is not working properly may not protect the occupant in a crash. Have a dealer check the belt as soon as possible.

Never insert any foreign objects into the buckle or retractor mechanism.

Continued

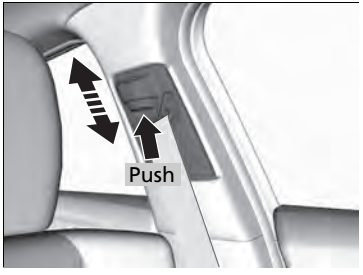


3. Position the lap part of the belt as low as possible across your hips, then pull up on the shoulder part of the belt so the lap part fits snugly. This lets your strong pelvic bones take the force of a crash and reduces the chance of internal injuries.

4. If necessary, pull up on the belt again to remove any slack, then check that the belt rests across the center of your chest and over your shoulder. This spreads the forces of a crash over the strongest bones in your upper body.

■ Adjusting the Shoulder Anchor

The front seats have adjustable shoulder anchors to accommodate taller and shorter occupants.



1. Move the anchor up and down while holding the release button.

2. Position the anchor so that the belt rests across the center of your chest and over your shoulder.

Fastening a Seat Belt

⚠WARNING

Improperly positioning the seat belts can cause serious injury or death in a crash.

Make sure all seat belts are properly positioned before driving.

To release the belt, push the red **PRESS** button and then guide the belt by hand until it has retracted completely.
When exiting the vehicle, be sure the belt is properly stowed so that it will not get caught in the closing door.

Adjusting the Shoulder Anchor

The shoulder anchor height can be adjusted to four levels. If the belt contacts your neck, lower the height one level at a time.

After an adjustment, make sure that the shoulder anchor position is secure.

Advice for Pregnant Women

If you are pregnant, the best way to protect yourself and your unborn child when driving or riding in a vehicle is to always wear a seat belt and keep the lap part of the belt as low as possible across the hips.

Wear the shoulder belt across the chest avoiding the abdomen.



Wear the lap part of the belt as low as possible across the hips.

Advice for Pregnant Women

Each time you have a checkup, ask your doctor if it is okay for you to drive.

To reduce the risk of injuries to both you and your unborn child that can be caused by an inflating front airbag:

- When driving, sit upright and adjust the seat as far back as possible while allowing full control of the vehicle.
- When sitting in the front passenger's seat, adjust the seat as far back as possible.

Seat Belt Inspection

Regularly check the condition of your seat belts as follows:

- Pull each belt out fully, and look for frays, cuts, burns, and wear.
- Check that the latch plates and buckles work smoothly and the belts retract easily.
  ▶ If a belt does not retract easily, cleaning the belt may correct the problem. Only use a mild soap and warm water. Do not use bleach or cleaning solvents. Make sure the belt is completely dry before allowing it to retract.

Any belt that is not in good condition or working properly will not provide proper protection and should be replaced as soon as possible.
A belt that has been worn during a crash may not provide the same level of protection in a subsequent crash. Have your seat belts inspected by a dealer after any collision.

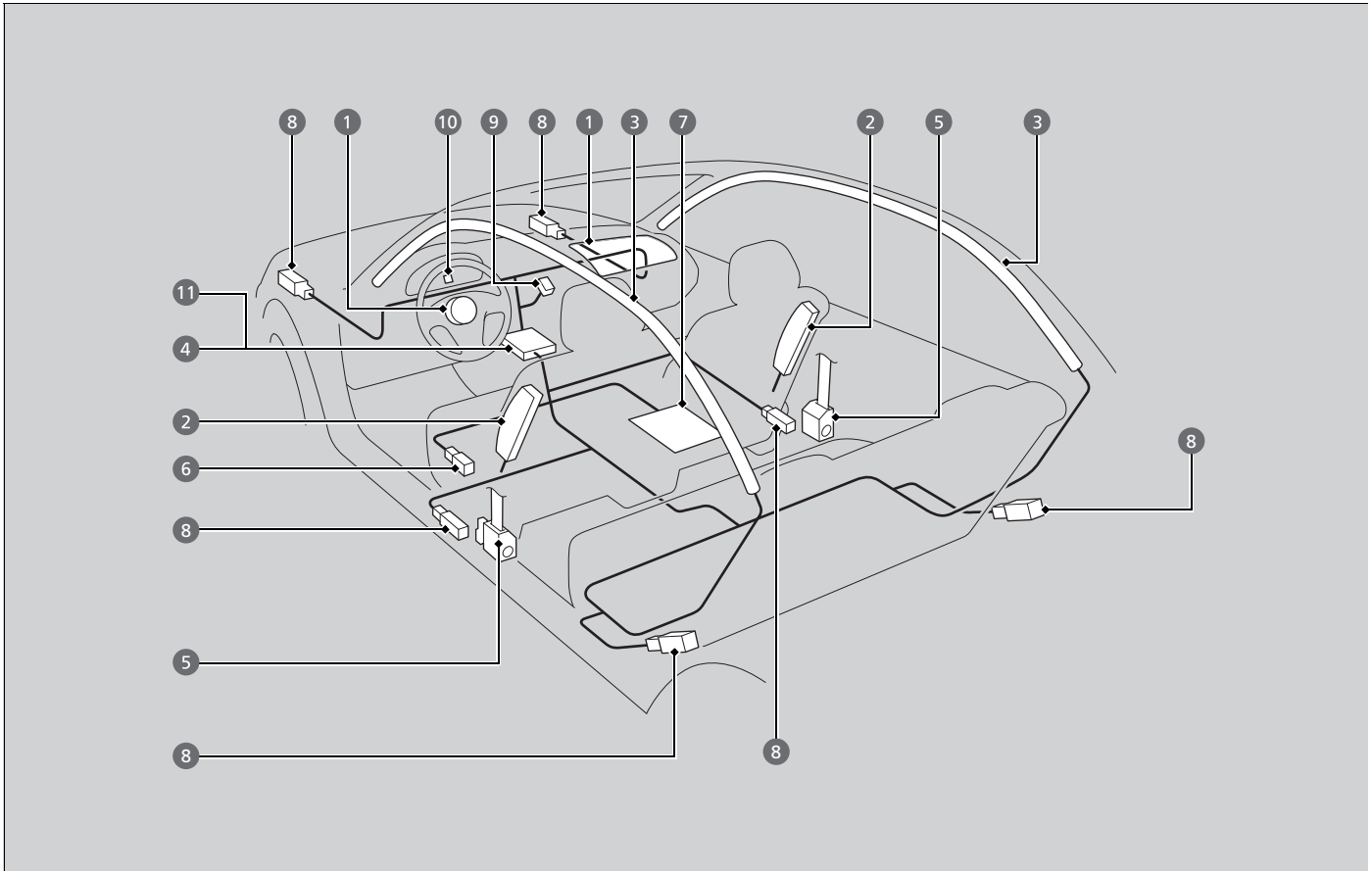
Seat Belt Inspection

⚠WARNING

Not checking or maintaining seat belts can result in serious injury or death if the seat belts do not work properly when needed.

Check your seat belts regularly and have any problem corrected as soon as possible.

Airbag System Components



Continued

The front, front side, and side curtain airbags are deployed according to the direction and severity of impact. Both side curtain airbags are deployed in a rollover. The airbag system includes:

❶ Two SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) front airbags. The driver's airbag is stored in the center of the steering wheel; the front passenger's airbag is stored in the dashboard. Both are marked **SRS AIRBAG**.

❷ Two side airbags, one for the driver and one for a front passenger. The airbags are stored in the outer edges of the seat-backs. Both are marked **SIDE AIRBAG**.

❸ Two side curtain airbags, one for each side of the vehicle. The airbags are stored in the ceiling, above the side windows. The front and rear pillars are marked **SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG**.

❹ An electronic control unit that, when the vehicle is on, continually monitors information about the various impact sensors, seat and buckle sensors, rollover sensor, airbag activators, seat belt tensioners, and other vehicle information. During a crash event the unit can record such information.

❺ Automatic front seat belt tensioners. In addition, the driver's and front passenger's seat belt buckles incorporate sensors that detect whether or not the belts are fastened.

❻ A driver's seat position sensor. This sensor determines the optimal force at which the airbag will deploy in a crash.

❼ Weight sensors in the front passenger's seat. The front passenger's airbag will be turned off if the weight on the seat is approximately 65 lbs (29 kg) or less (the weight of an infant or small child).

❽ Impact sensors that can detect a moderate-to-severe front or side impact.

❾ An indicator on the dashboard that alerts you that the front passenger's front airbag has been turned off.

❿ An indicator on the instrument panel that alerts you to a possible problem with your airbag system or seat belt tensioners.

⓫ A rollover sensor that can detect if your vehicle is about to roll over and signal the control unit to deploy both side curtain airbags.

Important Facts About Your Airbags

Airbags can pose serious hazards. To do their job, airbags must inflate with tremendous force. So, while airbags help save lives, they can cause burns, bruises, and other minor injuries, sometimes even fatal ones if occupants are not wearing their seat belts properly and sitting correctly.

What you should do: Always wear your seat belt properly, and sit upright and as far back from the steering wheel as possible while allowing full control of the vehicle. A front passenger should move their seat as far back from the dashboard as possible.

Remember, however, that no safety system can prevent all injuries or deaths that can occur in a severe crash, even when seat belts are properly worn and the airbags deploy.

Do not place hard or sharp objects between yourself and a front airbag. Carrying hard or sharp objects on your lap, or driving with a pipe or other sharp object in your mouth, can result in injuries if your front airbag inflates.

Do not attach or place objects on the front airbag covers. Objects on the covers marked **SRS AIRBAG** could interfere with the proper operation of the airbags or be propelled inside the vehicle and hurt someone if the airbags inflate.

Important Facts About Your Airbags

Do not attempt to deactivate your airbags. Together, airbags and seat belts provide the best protection.

When driving, keep hands and arms out of the deployment path of the front airbag by holding each side of the steering wheel. Do not cross an arm over the airbag cover.

Types of Airbags

Your vehicle is equipped with three types of airbags:

- **Front airbags:** Airbags in front of the driver's and front passenger's seats.
- **Side airbags:** Airbags in the driver's and front passenger's seat-backs.
- **Side curtain airbags:** Airbags above the side windows.

Each is discussed in the following pages.

Types of Airbags

The airbags can inflate whenever the power mode is in ON.

After an airbag inflates in a crash, you may see a small amount of smoke. This is from the combustion process of the inflator material and is not harmful. People with respiratory problems may experience some temporary discomfort. If this occurs, get out of the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

Front Airbags (SRS)

The front SRS airbags inflate in a moderate-to-severe frontal collision to help protect the head and chest of the driver and/or front passenger.

SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) indicates that the airbags are designed to supplement seat belts, not replace them. Seat belts are the occupant's primary restraint system.

■ Housing Locations

The front airbags are housed in the center of the steering wheel for the driver, and in the dashboard for the front passenger. Both airbags are marked **SRS AIRBAG**.

Front Airbags (SRS)

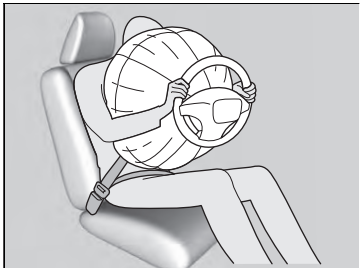
During a frontal crash severe enough to cause one or both front airbags to deploy, the airbags can inflate at different rates, depending on the severity of the crash, whether or not the seat belts are latched, and/or other factors. Frontal airbags are designed to supplement the seat belts to help reduce the likelihood of head and chest injuries in frontal crashes.

Operation

Front airbags are designed to inflate during moderate-to-severe frontal collisions. When the vehicle decelerates suddenly, the sensors send information to the control unit which signals one or both front airbags to inflate.

A frontal collision can be either head-on or angled between two vehicles, or when a vehicle crashes into a stationary object, such as a concrete wall.

How the Front Airbags Work



While your seat belt restrains your torso, the front airbag provides supplemental protection for your head and chest.

The front airbags deflate immediately so that they won't interfere with the driver's visibility or the ability to steer or operate other controls.

The total time for inflation and deflation is so fast that most occupants are not aware that the airbags deployed until they see them lying in front of them.

Continued

How the Front Airbags Work

Although the driver's and front passenger's airbags normally inflate within a split second of each other, it is possible for only one airbag to deploy. This can happen if the severity of a collision is at the margin, or threshold, that determines whether or not the airbags will deploy. In such cases, the seat belt will provide sufficient protection, and the supplemental protection offered by the airbag would be minimal.

■ **When front airbags should not deploy**

Minor frontal crashes: Front airbags were designed to supplement seat belts and help save lives, not to prevent minor scrapes, or even broken bones that might occur during a less than moderate-to-severe frontal crash.

Side impacts: Front airbags can provide protection when a sudden deceleration causes a driver or front passenger to move toward the front of the vehicle. Side airbags and side curtain airbags have been specifically designed to help reduce the severity of injuries that can occur during a moderate-to-severe side impact which can cause the driver or passenger to move toward the side of the vehicle.

Rear impacts: Head restraints and seat belts are your best protection during a rear impact. Front airbags cannot provide any significant protection and are not designed to deploy in such collisions.

Rollovers: In a rollover, your best form of protection is a seat belt or, if your vehicle is equipped with a rollover sensor, both a seat belt and a side curtain airbag. Front airbags, however, are not designed to deploy in a rollover as they would provide little if any protection.

■ **When front airbags deploy with little or no visible damage**

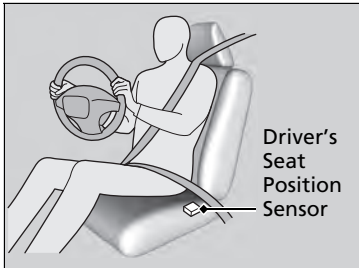
Because the airbag system senses sudden deceleration, a strong impact to the vehicle framework or suspension might cause one or more of the airbags to deploy. Examples include running into a curb, the edge of a hole, or other low fixed object that causes a sudden deceleration in the vehicle chassis. Since the impact is underneath the vehicle, damage may not be readily apparent.

■ **When front airbags may not deploy, even though exterior damage appears severe**

Since crushable body parts absorb crash energy during an impact, the amount of visible damage does not always indicate proper airbag operation. In fact, some collisions can result in severe damage but no airbag deployment because the airbags would not have been needed or would not have provided protection even if they had deployed.

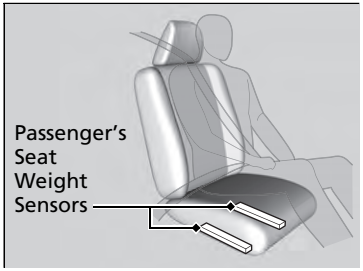
Advanced Airbags

The airbags have advanced features to help reduce the likelihood of airbag related injuries to smaller occupants.



The driver's advanced airbag system includes a seat position sensor.

Based on information from this sensor and the severity of the impact, the advanced airbag system determines the optimal deployment of the driver's airbag.



The front passenger's advanced airbag system has weight sensors.

We advise against allowing a child age 12 or under to ride in the front passenger's seat. However, **if you do allow a child age 12 or under to ride in the front passenger's seat**, note that the system will automatically turn off the front passenger's airbag if the sensors detect that the child is approximately 65 lbs (29 kg) or less.

Advanced Airbags

If there is a problem with the driver's seat position sensor, the SRS indicator will come on, and in the event of a crash, the airbag will deploy (regardless of the driver's seating position) with a force corresponding to the severity of the impact.

For the advanced airbags to work properly:

- Do not spill any liquid on or under the seats.
- Do not put any object under the passenger's seat.
- Make sure any objects are positioned properly on the floor. Improperly positioned objects can interfere with the advanced airbag sensors.
- All occupants should sit upright and wear their seat belts properly.
- Do not cover the passenger's side dashboard with a cloth, towel, cover, etc.

Passenger Front Airbag Off Indicator P. 50

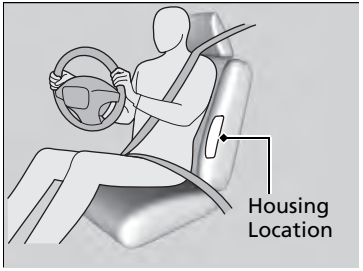
Make sure the floor mat behind the front passenger's seat is hooked to the floor mat anchor. An improperly placed mat can interfere with the advanced airbag sensors.

Floor Mats P. 546

Side Airbags

The side airbags help protect the torso and pelvis of the driver or a front passenger during a moderate-to-severe side impact.

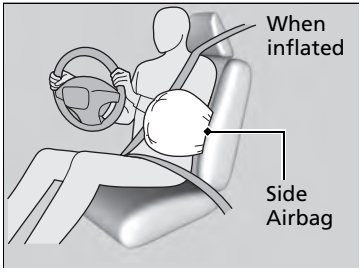
■ Housing Locations



The side airbags are housed in the outside edge of the driver's and passenger's seat-backs.

Both are marked **SIDE AIRBAG**.

■ Operation



When the sensors detect a moderate-to-severe side impact, the control unit signals the side airbag on the impact side to immediately inflate.

Side Airbags

Make sure you and your front seat passenger always sit upright. Leaning into the path of a side airbag can prevent the airbag from deploying properly and increases your risk of serious injury.

Do not attach accessories on or near the side airbags. They can interfere with the proper operation of the airbags, or hurt someone if an airbag inflates.

Do not cover or replace the front seat-back covers without consulting a dealer.
Improperly replacing or covering front seat-back covers can prevent your side airbags from properly deploying during a side impact.

■ When a side airbag deploys with little or no visible damage

Because the airbag system senses sudden acceleration, a strong impact to the side of the vehicle's framework can cause a side airbag to deploy. In such cases, there may be little or no damage, but the side impact sensors detected a severe enough impact to deploy the airbag.

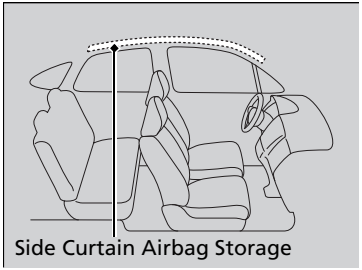
■ When a side airbag may not deploy, even though visible damage appears severe

It is possible for a side airbag not to deploy during an impact that results in apparently severe damage. This can occur when the point of impact was toward the far front or rear of the vehicle, or when the vehicle's crushable body parts absorbed most of the crash energy. In either case, the side airbag would not have been needed nor provided protection even if it had deployed.

Side Curtain Airbags

The side curtain airbags help protect the heads of the driver and passengers in the outer seating positions during a moderate-to-severe side impact. The side curtain airbags equipped in this vehicle are also designed to help reduce the likelihood of partial and complete ejection of vehicle occupants through side windows in crashes, particularly rollover crashes.

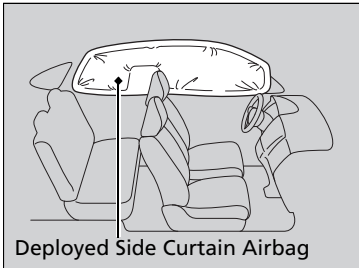
■ Housing Locations



Side Curtain Airbag Storage

The side curtain airbags are located in the ceiling above the side windows on both sides of the vehicle.

■ Operation



Deployed Side Curtain Airbag

The side curtain airbag is designed to deploy in a rollover or a moderate-to-severe side impact.

Side Curtain Airbags

To get the best protection from the side curtain airbags, occupants should wear their seat belts properly and sit upright and well back in their seats.

Do not attach any objects to the side windows or roof pillars as they can interfere with the proper operation of the side curtain airbags.

If the impact is on the passenger's side, the passenger's side curtain airbag deploys even if there are no occupants on that side of the vehicle.

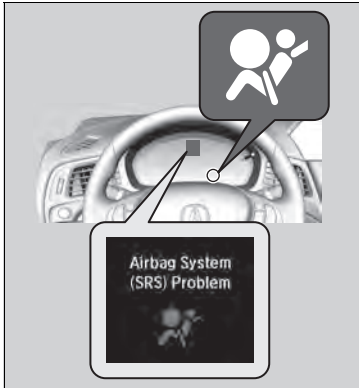
If the SRS control unit senses that your vehicle is about to rollover, it immediately deploys both side curtain airbags and activates both front seat belt tensioners.

■ **When side curtain airbags deploy in a frontal collision**
One or both side curtain airbags may also inflate in a moderate-to-severe angled frontal collision.

Airbag System Indicators

If a problem occurs in the airbag system, the SRS indicator will come on and a message appears on the multi-information display.

■ Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) Indicator



■ **When the power mode is set to ON**
The indicator comes on for a few seconds, then goes off. This tells you the system is working properly.

If the indicator comes on at any other time, or does not come on at all, have the system checked by a dealer as soon as possible. If you don't, your airbags and seat belt tensioners may not work properly when they are needed.

Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) Indicator

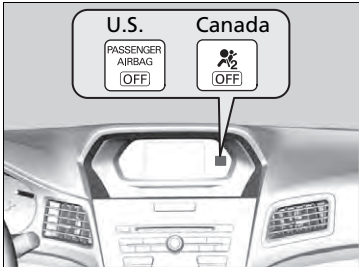
⚠WARNING

Ignoring the SRS indicator can result in serious injury or death if the airbag systems or tensioners do not work properly.

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible if the SRS indicator alerts you to a possible problem.

Continued

■ Passenger Front Airbag Off Indicator



■ When the passenger front airbag off indicator comes on

The indicator comes on to alert you that the passenger's front airbag has been turned off. This occurs when the weight sensors detect about 65 lbs (29 kg) or less, the weight of an infant or small child, on the seat.

Children age 12 or under should always ride properly restrained in a back seat.
➡ **Child Safety** P. 52

Objects placed on the seat can also cause the indicator to come on.

If the front passenger's seat is empty, the passenger's front airbag will not deploy and the indicator will not come on.

Passenger Front Airbag Off Indicator

If the indicator comes on with no front passenger and no objects on the passenger's seat, or with an adult riding there, something may be interfering with the weight sensor, such as:

- An object hanging on the seat or in the seat-back pocket.
- A child seat or other object pressing against the rear of the seat-back.
- A rear passenger pushing or pulling on the back of the front passenger's seat.
- The front seat or seat-back is forced back against an object on the seat or floor behind it.
- An object placed under the front passenger's seat.

If none of these conditions exist, have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

The passenger front airbag off indicator may come on and go off repeatedly if the total weight on the seat is near the airbag cutoff threshold.

Airbag Care

You do not need to, and should not, perform any maintenance on or replace any airbag system components yourself. However, you should have your vehicle inspected by a dealer in the following situations:

■ When the airbags have deployed

If an airbag has inflated, the control unit and other related parts must be replaced. Similarly, once an automatic seat belt tensioner has been activated, it must be replaced.

■ When the vehicle has been in a moderate-to-severe collision

Even if the airbags did not inflate, have your dealer inspect the following: the driver's seat position sensor, weight sensors in the passenger's seat, front seat belt tensioners, and each seat belt that was worn during the crash.

■ Do not remove or modify a front seat without consulting a dealer

This would likely disable or affect the proper operation of the driver's seat position sensor or the weight sensors in the passenger's seat. If it is necessary to remove or modify a front seat to accommodate a person with disabilities, contact an Acura dealer, or for U.S. vehicles, Acura Client Relations at 1-800-382-2238 and for Canadian vehicles, Acura Client Services at 1-888-9-ACURA-9.

Airbag Care

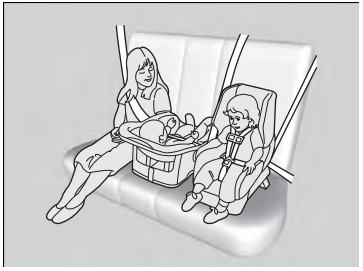
We recommend against the use of salvaged airbag system components, including the airbag, tensioners, sensors, and control unit.

Protecting Child Passengers

Each year, many children are injured or killed in vehicle crashes because they are either unrestrained or not properly restrained. In fact, vehicle crashes are the number one cause of death of children ages 12 and under.

To reduce the number of child deaths and injuries, every state, Canadian province and territory requires that infants and children be properly restrained when they ride in a vehicle.

Children should sit properly restrained in a rear seat. This is because:



- An inflating front or side airbag can injure or kill a child sitting in the front seat.
- A child in the front seat is more likely to interfere with the driver's ability to safely control the vehicle.
- Statistics show that children of all sizes and ages are safer when they are properly restrained in a rear seat.

Protecting Child Passengers

⚠WARNING

Children who are unrestrained or improperly restrained can be seriously injured or killed in a crash.

Any child too small for a seat belt should be properly restrained in a child seat. A larger child should be properly restrained with a seat belt, using a booster seat if necessary.

The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration and Transport Canada recommend that all children ages 12 and under be properly restrained in a rear seat. Some states or provinces/territories have laws restricting where children may ride.

- Any child who is too small to wear a seat belt correctly must be restrained in an approved child seat that is properly secured to the vehicle using either the seat belt or the lower anchors of the LATCH system.
- Never hold a child on your lap because it is impossible to protect them in the event of a collision.
- Never put a seat belt over yourself and a child. During a crash, the belt would likely press deep into the child and cause serious or fatal injuries.
- Never let two children use the same seat belt. Both children could be very seriously injured in a crash.
- Do not allow children to operate the doors, windows or seat adjustments.
- Do not leave children in the vehicle unattended, especially in hot weather when the inside of the vehicle can get hot enough to kill them. They could also activate vehicle controls causing it to move unexpectedly.

Protecting Child Passengers

⚠WARNING

Allowing a child to play with a seat belt or wrap one around their neck can result in serious injury or death.

Instruct children not to play with any seat belt and make sure any unused seat belt a child can reach is buckled, fully retracted, and locked.

To deactivate a lockable retractor, release the buckle and allow the seat belt to wind up all the way.

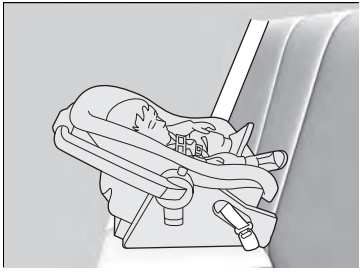
To remind you of the passenger's front airbag hazards and child safety, your vehicle has warning labels on the dashboard (U.S. models) and on the front visors. Please read and follow the instructions on these labels.

Safety Labels P. 66

Safety of Infants and Small Children

■ Protecting Infants

An infant must be properly restrained in a rear-facing, reclining child seat until the infant reaches the seat manufacturer's weight or height limit for the seat, and the infant is at least one year old.



■ Positioning a rear-facing child seat

Child seats must be placed and secured in a rear seating position.

When properly installed, a rear-facing child seat may prevent the driver or a front passenger from moving their seat all the way back, or from locking their seat-back in the desired position. Make sure that there is no contact between the child seat and the seat in front of it.

It can also interfere with proper operation of the passenger's advanced front airbag system.

➡ **Airbags** P. 39

If this occurs, we recommend that you install the child seat directly behind the front passenger's seat, move the seat as far forward as needed, and leave it unoccupied. Or, you may wish to get a smaller rear-facing child seat.

Protecting Infants

⚠WARNING

Placing a rear-facing child seat in the front seat can result in serious injury or death during a crash.

Always place a rear-facing child seat in the rear seat, not the front.

Many experts recommend use of a rear-facing seat for a child up to two years old if the child's height and weight are appropriate for a rear-facing seat.

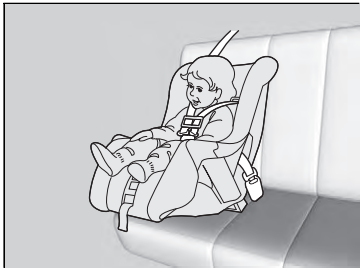
Rear-facing child seats should never be installed in a forward facing position.

Always refer to the child seat manufacturer's instructions before installation.

Do not allow a front seat to rest against a child seat installed in a rear seating position:
The weight sensor in the front seat may not correctly detect the actual weight of the occupant.

■ Protecting Smaller Children

If a child is at least one year old and has exceeded the weight and height limitations of a rearward-facing child seat, the child should be properly restrained in a firmly secured forward-facing child seat until they exceed the weight and height limitations for the forward-facing child seat.



■ Forward-facing child seat placement

We strongly recommend placing a forward-facing child seat in a rear seating position.

Placing a forward-facing child seat in the front seat can be hazardous, even with advanced front airbags that automatically turn the passenger's front airbag off. A rear seat is the safest place for a child.

Protecting Smaller Children

⚠WARNING

Placing a forward-facing child seat in the front seat can result in serious injury or death if the front airbag inflates.

If you must place a forward-facing child seat in front, move the vehicle seat as far back as possible, and properly restrain the child.

Educate yourself about the laws and regulations regarding child seat use where you are driving, and follow the child seat manufacturer's instructions.

Continued

■ Selecting a Child Seat

Most child seats are LATCH-compatible (Lower Anchors and Tethers for CHildren). Some have a rigid-type connector, while others have a flexible-type connector. Both are equally easy to use. Some existing and previously owned child seats can only be installed using the seat belt. Whichever type you choose, follow the child seat manufacturer's use and care instructions including recommended expiration dates as well as the instructions in this manual. Proper installation is key to maximizing your child's safety.

In seating positions and vehicles not equipped with LATCH, a LATCH-compatible child seat can be installed using the seat belt and a top tether for added security. This is because all child seats are required to be designed so that they can be secured with a lap belt or the lap part of a lap/shoulder belt. In addition, the child seat manufacturer may advise that a seat belt be used to attach a LATCH-compatible seat once a child reaches a specified weight. Please read the child seat owner's manual for proper installation instructions.

■ Important consideration when selecting a child seat

Make sure the child seat meets the following three requirements:

- The child seat is the correct type and size for the child.
- The child seat is the correct type for the seating position.
- The child seat is compliant with Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 213 or Canadian Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 213.

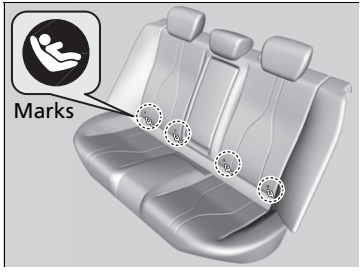
Selecting a Child Seat

Installation of a LATCH-compatible child seat is simple.

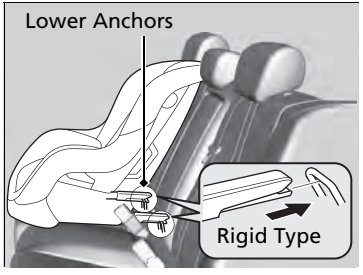
LATCH-compatible child seats have been developed to simplify the installation process and reduce the likelihood of injuries caused by incorrect installation.

Installing a LATCH-Compatible Child Seat

A LATCH-compatible child seat can be installed in either of the two outer rear seats. A child seat is attached to the lower anchors with either the rigid or flexible type of connectors.



1. Locate the lower anchors under the marks.



2. Place the child seat on the vehicle seat, then attach the child seat to the lower anchors according to the instructions that came with the child seat.

▶ When installing the child seat, make sure that the lower anchors are not obstructed by the seat belt or any other object.

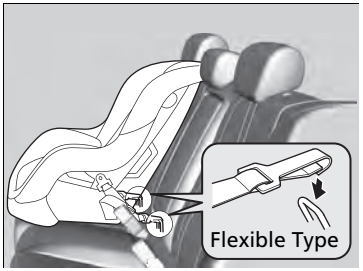
Continued

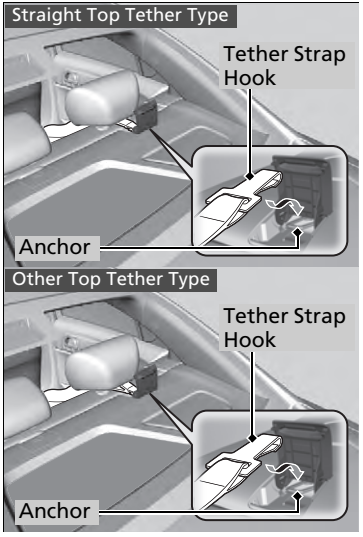
Installing a LATCH-Compatible Child Seat

⚠WARNING

Never attach two child seats to the same anchor. In a collision, one anchor may not be strong enough to hold two child seat attachments and may break, causing serious injury or death.

For your child's safety, when using a child seat installed using the LATCH system, make sure that the child seat is properly secured to the vehicle.
A child seat that is not properly secured will not adequately protect a child in a crash and may cause injury to the child or other vehicle occupants.





3. Open the tether anchor cover behind the head restraint.
4. Raise the head restraint to its highest position, then route the tether strap between the head restraint legs, and secure the tether strap hook to the anchor.
5. Tighten the tether strap as instructed by the child seat manufacturer.
6. Make sure the child seat is firmly secured by rocking it forward and back and side to side; little movement should be felt.
7. Make sure any unused seat belt that a child can reach is buckled, the lockable retractor is activated, and the belt is fully retracted and locked.

Installing a LATCH-Compatible Child Seat

⚠WARNING

Do not use the lower inner anchors of the outer rear seats to secure a LATCH-compatible child seat to the rear center seat, unless the manufacturer's instructions for that system permit the use of inner anchors with the stated spacing.

Installing a LATCH-compatible child seat in the rear center seat

Each outer rear seat is equipped with a pair of lower anchors which are used to secure a LATCH-compatible child seat. The rear center seat, however, is not equipped with anchors of any kind.

The inner and outer anchors are spaced apart at a standard distance of 11 inches (280 mm). The distance between the two inner anchors is 15 inches (380 mm).

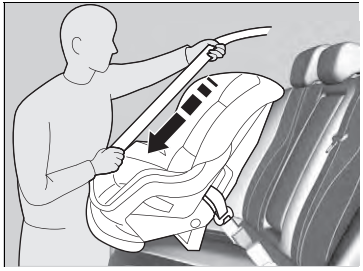
LATCH-compatible restraint systems that are fitted with rigid-type attachments cannot be installed in the rear center seat. However, a system fitted with flexible-type attachments can be installed in the center seat, provided that the manufacturer's instructions for that system permit the use of the inner anchors with the stated spacing.

Before seating a child, make sure that the system is properly attached to both the lower anchors and tether anchors.

Installing a Child Seat with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt

A child seat can be installed with a lap/shoulder belt in any rear seat or, if absolutely necessary, the front passenger seat.



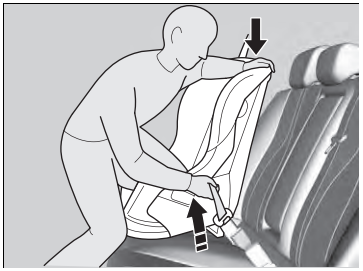


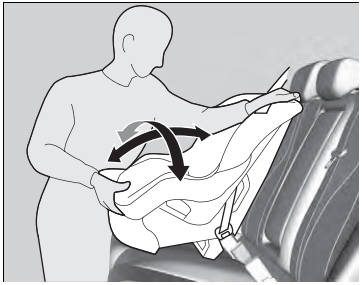
1. Place the child seat on the vehicle seat.
2. Route the seat belt through the child seat according to the seat manufacturer's instructions, and insert the latch plate into the buckle.
   ▶ Insert the latch plate fully until it clicks.
3. Slowly pull the shoulder part of the belt all the way out until it stops. This activates the lockable retractor.
4. Let the seat belt retract a few inches and check that the retractor has switched modes by pulling on the webbing. It should not pull out again until it is reset by removing the latch plate from the buckle.
   ▶ If you are able to pull the shoulder belt out, the lockable retractor is not activated. Slowly pull the seat belt all the way out, and repeat steps 3 – 4.

Continued

Installing a Child Seat with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt

A child seat that is not properly secured will not adequately protect a child in a crash and may cause injury to the child or other vehicle occupants.





5. Grab the shoulder part of the seat belt near the buckle, and pull up to remove any slack from the lap part of the belt.
▶ When doing this, place your weight on the child seat and push it into the vehicle seat.

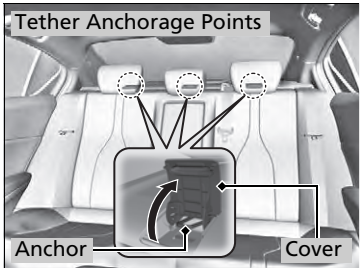
6. Make sure the child seat is firmly secured by rocking it forward and back and side to side; less than one inch of movement should occur near the seat belt.

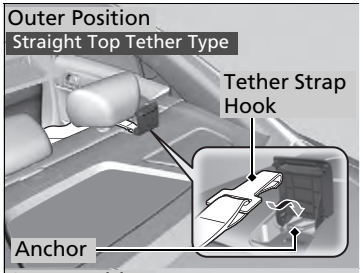
7. Make sure any unused seat belt that a child can reach is buckled, the lockable retractor is activated, and the belt is fully retracted and locked.

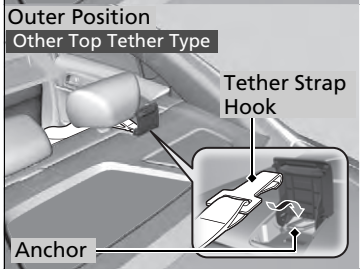
Installing a Child Seat with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt

To deactivate a lockable retractor, release the buckle and allow the seat belt to wind up all the way.

Adding Security with a Tether







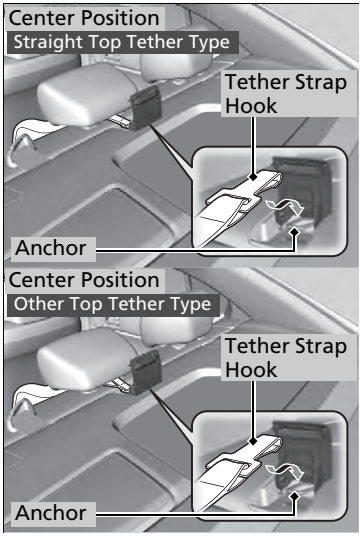
A tether anchorage point is provided behind each rear seating position.
If you have a child seat that comes with a tether but can be installed with a seat belt, the tether may be used for additional security.

1. Locate the appropriate tether anchorage point and lift the cover.
2. Raise the head restraint to its highest position, then route the tether strap through the head restraint legs. Make sure the strap is not twisted.
3. Secure the tether strap hook to the anchor.
4. Tighten the tether strap as instructed by the child seat manufacturer.

Adding Security with a Tether

Always use a tether for forward-facing child seats when using the seat belt or lower anchors.

Continued


Center Position
Straight Top Tether Type
Tether Strap
Hook
Anchor
Center Position
Other Top Tether Type
Tether Strap
Hook
Anchor

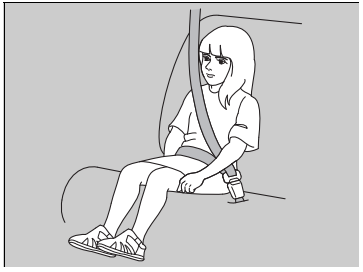
Safety of Larger Children

■ Protecting Larger Children

The following pages give instructions on how to check proper seat belt fit, what kind of booster seat to use if one is needed, and important precautions for a child who must sit in front.

■ Checking Seat Belt Fit

When a child is too big for a child seat, secure the child in a rear seat using the lap/shoulder seat belt. Have the child sit upright and all the way back, then answer the following questions.



■ **Checklist**

- Do the child's knees bend comfortably over the edge of the seat?
- Does the shoulder belt cross between the child's neck and arm?
- Is the lap part of the seat belt as low as possible, touching the child's thighs?
- Will the child be able to stay seated like this for the whole trip?

If you answer yes to all these questions, the child is ready to wear the lap/shoulder seat belt correctly. If you answer no to any question, the child needs to ride on a booster seat until the seat belt fits properly without a booster seat.

Safety of Larger Children

⚠WARNING

Allowing a child age 12 or under to sit in front can result in injury or death if the passenger's front airbag inflates.

If a larger child must ride in front, move the vehicle seat as far to the rear as possible, have the child sit up properly and wear the seat belt properly, using a booster seat if needed.

Continued

■ Booster Seats



If a lap/shoulder seat belt cannot be used properly, position the child in a booster seat in the rear seat. For the child's safety, check that the child meets the booster seat manufacturer's recommendations.

■ Protecting Larger Children Final Checks

Your vehicle has a rear seat where children can be properly restrained. If you ever have to carry a group of children, and a child must ride in front:

- Make sure you read and fully understand the instructions and safety information in this manual.
- Move the front passenger seat as far back as possible.
- Have the child sit upright and well back in the seat.
- Check that the seat belt is properly positioned so that the child is secure in the seat.

■ Monitoring child passengers

We strongly recommend that you keep an eye on child passengers. Even older, more mature children sometimes need to be reminded to fasten their seat belts and sit up properly.

Booster Seats

When installing a booster seat, make sure to read the instructions that came with it, and install the seat accordingly.
There are high- and low-type booster seats. Choose a booster seat that allows the child to wear the seat belt correctly.

Some U.S. states and Canadian provinces and territories require children to use a booster seat until they reach a given age or weight (e.g. 6 years or 60 lbs). Be sure to check current laws in the state or province, or territory where you intend to drive.

Carbon Monoxide Gas

The engine exhaust from this vehicle contains carbon monoxide, a colorless, odorless, and highly toxic gas. As long as you properly maintain your vehicle, carbon monoxide gas will not get into the interior.

■ **Have the exhaust system inspected for leaks whenever**
- The exhaust system is making an unusual noise.
- The exhaust system may have been damaged.
- The vehicle is raised for an oil change.

When you operate a vehicle with the trunk open, airflow can pull exhaust gas into the interior and create a hazardous condition. If you must drive with the trunk open, open all the windows and set the climate control system as shown below.

1. Select the fresh air mode.
2. Select the mode.
3. Set the fan speed to high.
4. Set the temperature control to a comfortable setting.

Adjust the climate control system in the same manner if you sit in your parked vehicle with the engine running.

Carbon Monoxide Gas

⚠WARNING

Carbon monoxide gas is toxic.

Breathing it can cause unconsciousness and even kill you.

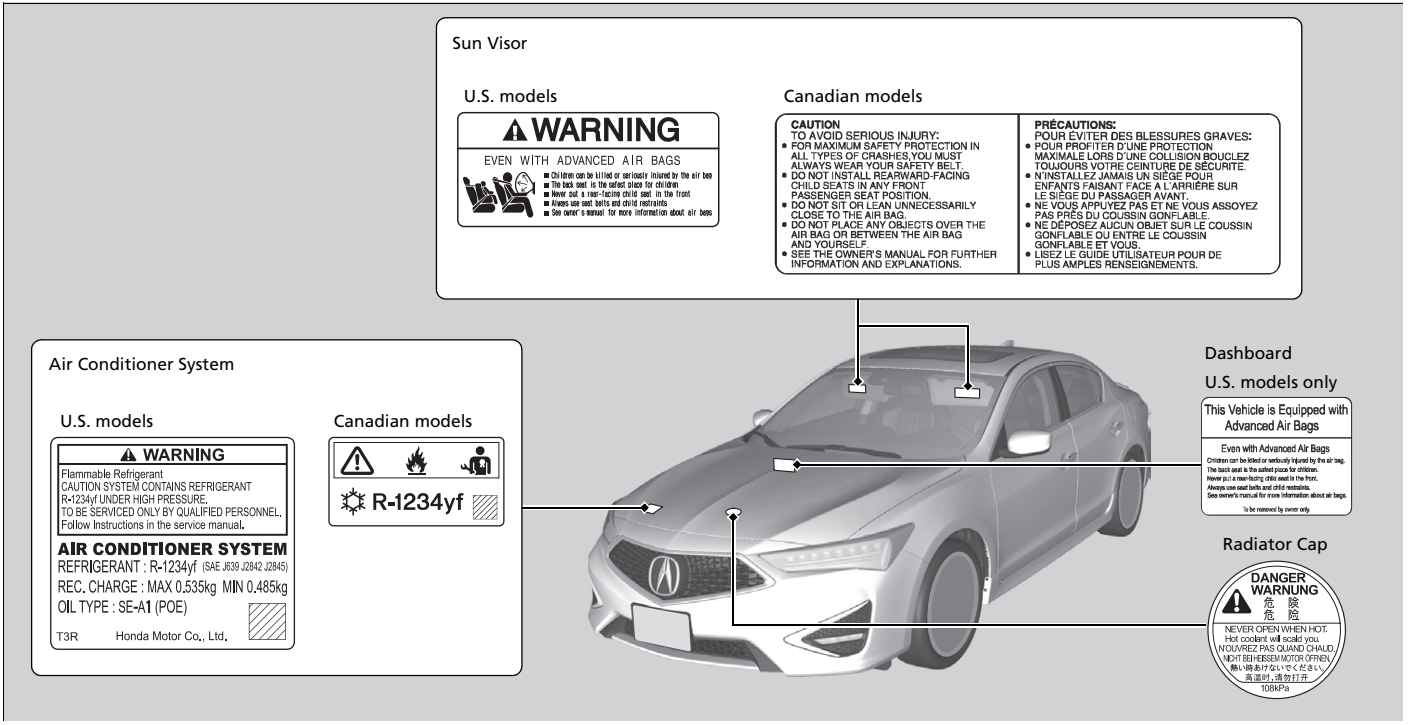
Avoid any enclosed areas or activities that expose you to carbon monoxide.

An enclosed area such as a garage can quickly fill up with carbon monoxide gas.
Do not run the engine with the garage door closed. Even when the garage door is open, drive out of the garage immediately after starting the engine.

Label Locations

These labels are in the locations shown. They warn you of potential hazards that can cause serious injury or death. Read these labels carefully.

If a label comes off or becomes hard to read (except for the U.S. dashboard label which may be removed by the owner), contact a dealer for a replacement.

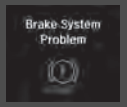
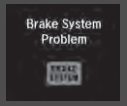
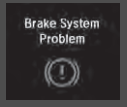


Instrument Panel

This chapter describes the buttons, indicators, and gauges that are used while driving.



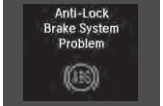
Indicators 68
Multi-Information Display Warning and Information Messages..... 81
Gauges and Multi-Information Display
Gauges..... 88
Multi-Information Display 89

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
U.S. BRAKE Canada 	Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red)	• Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off if the parking brake has been released. • Comes on when the parking brake is applied, and goes off when it is released. • Comes on when the brake fluid level is low. • Comes on if there is a problem with the brake system. • The beeper sounds and the indicator comes on if you drive with the parking brake not fully released.	• **Comes on while driving** - Make sure the parking brake is released. Check the brake fluid level. ➡ **What to do when the indicator comes on while driving** P. 588 • **Comes on along with the ABS indicator** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. ➡ **If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On** P. 588	  
U.S. BRAKE SYSTEM Canada  (Amber)	Brake System Indicator (Amber)	• Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off. • Comes on if there is a problem with a system related to braking other than the conventional brake system.	• **Comes on while driving** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. • With this indicator on, your vehicle still has normal braking ability.	U.S.  Canada 

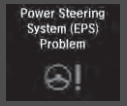
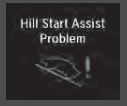
Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Low Oil Pressure Indicator	• Comes on when you set the power mode to ON, and goes off when the engine starts. • Comes on when the engine oil pressure is low.	• **Comes on while driving** - Immediately stop in a safe place. ➡ **If the Low Oil Pressure Indicator Comes On** P. 586	
	Shift Lever Position Indicator	• Indicates the current gear selection.	➡ **Shifting** P. 433	—
	Transmission System Indicator	• Blinks if the transmission system has a problem.	• **Blinks while driving** - Avoid sudden starts and acceleration and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.	
	**M** (sequential mode) Indicator/ Gear Position Indicator	• Comes on when the manual sequential mode is applied.	➡ **Sequential Mode Operation** P. 436	—

Continued

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Malfunction Indicator Lamp	• Comes on when you set the power mode to ON, and goes off either when the engine starts or after several seconds if the engine did not start. If "readiness codes" have not been set, it blinks five times before it goes off. • Comes on if there is a problem with the emissions control system. • Blinks when a misfire in the engine's cylinders is detected.	• Readiness codes are part of the on board diagnostics for the emissions control systems. ➡ **Testing of Readiness Codes** P. 601 • **Comes on while driving** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. • **Blinks while driving** - Stop in a safe place where there are no flammable objects. Stop the engine for 10 minutes or more, and wait for it to cool down. Then, take the vehicle to a dealer. ➡ **If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks** P. 587	
	Charging System Indicator	• Comes on when you set the power mode to ON, and goes off when the engine starts. • Comes on when the battery is not charging.	• **Comes on while driving** - Turn off the climate control system and rear defogger in order to reduce electricity consumption. ➡ **If the Charging System Indicator Comes On** P. 586	

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Seat Belt Reminder Indicator	• Comes on and the beeper sounds if you are not wearing a seat belt when you set the power mode to ON. • If the front passenger is not wearing a seat belt, the indicator comes on a few seconds later. • Blinks while driving if either you and/or the front passenger has not fastened a seat belt. The beeper sounds and the indicator blinks at regular intervals.	• The beeper stops and the indicator goes off when you and the front passenger fasten their seat belts. • **Stays on after you and/or the front passenger has fastened the seat belt(s)** - A detection error may have occurred in the sensor. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. ➡ **Seat Belt Reminder** P. 33	
	Low Fuel Indicator	• Comes on when the fuel reserve is running low (approximately 1.9 U.S. gal./7.5 Liter left). • Blinks if there is a problem with the fuel gauge.	• **Comes on** - Refuel your vehicle as soon as possible. • **Blinks** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	
	Anti-lock Brake System (**ABS**) Indicator	• Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off. • If it comes on at any other time, there is a problem with the ABS.	• **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. With this indicator on, your vehicle still has normal braking ability but no anti-lock function. ➡ **Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)** P. 493	

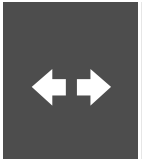
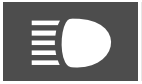
Continued

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Supplemental Restraint System Indicator	• Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off. • Comes on if a problem with any of the following is detected: - Supplemental restraint system - Side airbag system - Side curtain airbag system - Seat belt tensioner	• **Stays on constantly or does not come on at all** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	
	Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator	• Comes on when you set the power mode to ON, and goes off when the engine starts. • Comes on if there is a problem with the EPS system.	• **Stays on constantly or does not come on at all** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. ➡ **If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator Comes On** P. 588	
	Vehicle Stability Assist® (VSA®) System Indicator	• Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off. • Blinks when VSA® is active. • Comes on if there is a problem with the VSA® system or hill start assist system.	• **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. ➡ **Vehicle Stability Assist® (VSA®), aka Electronic Stability Control (ESC), System** P. 437	 

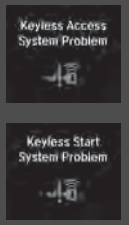
Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Vehicle Stability Assist® (VSA®) OFF Indicator	• Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off. • Comes on when you partially disable VSA®.	➔ **VSA® On and Off** P. 438	—
	Low Tire Pressure/ TPMS Indicator	• Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON. • Comes on if the tire pressure of any of the tires becomes significantly low. • Blinks for about one minute, and then stays on if there is a problem with the TPMS, or when a compact spare tire* is temporarily installed.	• **Comes on while driving** - Stop in a safe place, check tire pressures, and inflate the tire(s) if necessary. • **Blinks and remains on** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. If the vehicle is fitted with a compact spare tire, get your regular tire repaired or replaced and put back on your vehicle as soon as you can.	
	System Message Indicator	• Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off. • Comes on along with a beep when a problem is detected. A system message on the multi-information display appears at the same time.	• While the indicator is on, press the ▲ⓘ/▼ (information) button to see the message again. • Refer to the Indicators information in this chapter when a system message appears on the multi-information display. Take the appropriate action for the message. • The multi-information display does not return to the normal screen unless the warning is canceled, or the ▲ⓘ/▼ button is pressed.	—

* Not available on all models

Continued

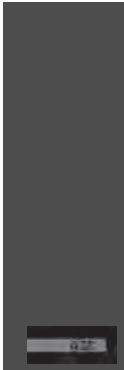
Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Turn Signal Indicators	• Blinks when you operate the turn signal lever. • Blink along with all turn signals when you press the hazard warning button.	• **Does not blink or blinks rapidly** ➡ **Replacing Light Bulbs** P. 525	—
	High Beam Indicator	• Comes on when the high beam headlights are on.	—	—
	Auto High-Beam Indicator	• Comes on when all the operating conditions of the Auto high-beam are met.	➡ **Auto High-Beam** P. 143	—
	Lights On Indicator	• Comes on when the light switch in a position other than **OFF** or when the switch is set to **AUTO** and the exterior lights come on.	• If you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) while the exterior lights are on, a chime sounds when the driver's door is opened.	—
	Fog Light Indicator*	• Comes on when the fog lights are on.	—	—

* Not available on all models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Immobilizer System Indicator	• Comes on briefly when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off. • Comes on if the immobilizer system cannot recognize the key information.	• **Blinks** - You cannot start the engine. Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK), then select the ON mode again. • **Repeatedly blinks** - The system may be malfunctioning. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. • Do not attempt to alter this system or add other devices to it. Electrical problems can occur.	—
	Security System Alarm Indicator	• Blinks when the Security System Alarm has been set.	➔ **Security System Alarm** P. 128	—
	Keyless Access System Indicator	• Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off. • Comes on as soon as a problem is detected in the keyless access system or keyless starting system.	• **Stays on constantly or does not come on at all** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	

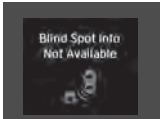
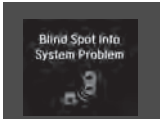
Continued

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Road Departure Mitigation (RDM) Indicator	• Comes on for a few seconds when you change the power mode to ON, then goes off. • Comes on if there is a problem with the RDM system.	• **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	
		• Comes on when the RDM system shuts itself off.	• **Stays on** - The temperature inside the camera is too high. Use the climate control system to cool down the camera. The system activates when the temperature inside the camera cools down. ➡ **Front Sensor Camera** P. 488	
			• **Stays on** - The area around the camera is blocked by dirt, mud, etc. Stop your vehicle in a safe place, and wipe it off with a soft cloth. • Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the indicator and message come back on after you cleaned the area around the camera. ➡ **Front Sensor Camera** P. 488	
	Adaptive Cruise Control (**ACC**) Indicator (Amber)	• Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off. • Comes on if there is a problem with ACC.	• **Comes on while driving** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Adaptive Cruise Control (**ACC**) Indicator (Green)	• Comes on when you press the **MAIN** button.	**Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)** P. 459	—
		• Comes on if anything covers the radar sensor cover and prevents the sensor from detecting a vehicle in front. • May come on when driving in bad weather (rain, snow, fog, etc.) • ACC has been automatically canceled.	• When the radar sensor gets dirty, stop your vehicle in a safe place, and wipe off dirt using a soft cloth. • Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the message does not disappear even after you clean the sensor cover.	
		• Comes on when ACC is in operation, but the temperature inside the front sensor camera is too high. ACC cancels automatically. The beeper sounds simultaneously.	• Use the climate control system to cool down the camera. • **Goes off** - The camera has been cooled down and the system activates normally.	
		• Comes on when the area around the camera is blocked by dirt, mud, etc. Stop your vehicle in a safe place, and wipe it off with a soft cloth. • May come on when driving in bad weather (rain, snow, fog, etc.)	• Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the indicator and message come back on after you cleaned the area around the camera.	

Continued

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Lane Keeping Assist System (**LKAS**) Indicator (Amber)	• Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off. • Comes on if there is a problem with the LKAS.	• **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	
	Lane Keeping Assist System (**LKAS**) Indicator (Green)	• Comes on when you press the **MAIN** button.	➡ **Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)** P. 474	—
		• Comes on when the LKAS is in operation, or the LKAS button is pressed, but the temperature inside the front sensor camera is too high. The LKAS cancels automatically. The beeper sounds simultaneously.	• Use the climate control system to cool down the camera. • **Goes off** - The camera has been cooled down and the system activates normally. ➡ **Front Sensor Camera** P. 488	
		• Comes on when the area around the camera is blocked by dirt, mud, etc. Stop your vehicle in a safe place, and wipe it off with a soft cloth. • May come on when driving in bad weather (rain, snow, fog, etc.)	• Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the indicator and message come back on after you cleaned the area around the camera.	

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Blind spot information System Indicator*	• Comes on for a few seconds when you change the power mode to ON, then goes off. • Stays on while blind spot information system is turned off.	➡ **Customized Features** P. 95	
		• Comes on when mud, snow, or ice accumulates in the vicinity of sensor.	• **Comes on while driving** - Remove the obstacle in the vicinity of sensor. ➡ **Blind spot information System*** P. 439	
		• Comes on if there is a problem with the system.	• **Comes on while driving** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	
	Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™) Indicator	• Comes on for a few seconds when you change the power mode to ON, then goes off. • Comes on when you deactivate the CMBS™. A multi-information display message appears for five seconds. • Comes on if there is a problem with the CMBS™.	• **Stays on constantly without the CMBS™ off** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. ➡ **Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™)** P. 449	 

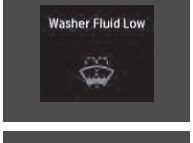
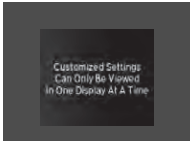
* Not available on all models

Continued

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™) Indicator	• Comes on when the CMBS™ system shuts itself off.	• **Stays on** - The area around the camera is blocked by dirt, mud, etc. Stop your vehicle in a safe place, and wipe it off with a soft cloth. ➡ **Front Sensor Camera** P. 488	
			• When the radar sensor gets dirty, stop your vehicle in a safe place, and wipe off dirt using a soft cloth. • Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the message does not disappear even after you clean the sensor cover. ➡ **Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™)** P. 449	
			• **Stays on** - The temperature inside the camera is too high. Use the climate control system to cool down the camera. The system activates when the temperature inside the camera cools down. ➡ **Front Sensor Camera** P. 488	

Multi-Information Display Warning and Information Messages

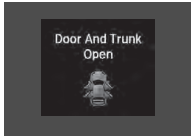
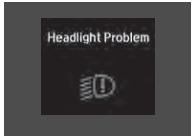
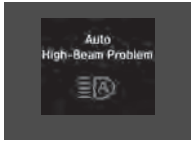
The following messages appear only on the multi-information display. Press the ▲/▼ (information) button to see the message again with the system message indicator on.

Message	Condition	Explanation
	• Appears when the fuel fill cap is loose or is not installed.	➡ **Check/Tighten Fuel Cap Message** P. 587
Canadian models 	• Appears when the washer fluid is low.	• Refill washer fluid. ➡ **Refilling Window Washer Fluid** P. 524
	• Appears when the scheduled maintenance is due soon. • Consequently, **Maintenance Due Now** and **Maintenance Past Due** follow.	➡ **Maintenance Minder Messages on the Multi-Information Display** P. 511
	• Appears while you are customizing the settings and the shift lever is moved out of P.	➡ **Customized Features** P. 95
	• Appears if you try to go to **Vehicle Settings** from the multi-information display while the information screen* shows the same menu.	• Select either display to customize a setting. You cannot have **Vehicle Settings** displayed on the multi-information display and information screen simultaneously. ➡ **Customized Features** P. 95, 310

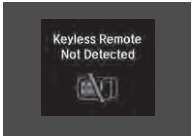
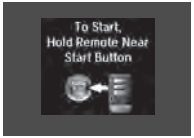
* Not available on all models

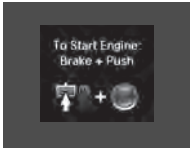
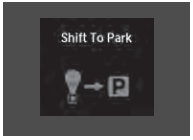
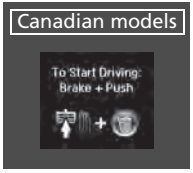
Continued

Message	Condition	Explanation
U.S.  Canada 	• Appears when the starter system has a problem.	• As a temporary measure, press and hold the **ENGINE START/STOP** button for 15 seconds while pressing the brake pedal and manually start the engine. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
	• Appears when the engine coolant temperature gets abnormally high.	➡ **Overheating** P. 584
	• Appears when there is a problem with the sensor on the battery.	• Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. ➡ **Checking the Battery** P. 541
	• Appears along with the battery charging system indicator when the battery is not charging.	• Turn off the climate control system and rear defogger to reduce electricity consumption. ➡ **If the Charging System Indicator Comes On** P. 586

Message	Condition	Explanation
	• Appears when the transmission system temperature is too high. The vehicle no longer moves.	• Immediately stop in a safe place in P. • Let the engine idle until the message disappears.
	• Appears if any door or the trunk is not completely closed. • Appears if any door or the trunk is opened while driving. The beeper sounds.	• Disappears when all doors and the trunk are closed.
	• Appears when there is a problem with the headlights.	• **Appears while driving** - The headlights may not be on. When conditions allow you to drive safely, have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible.
	• Appears if there is a problem with the Auto high-beam.	• Manually operate the headlight switch. • If you are driving with the high-beam headlights when this happens, the headlights are changed to low beams.

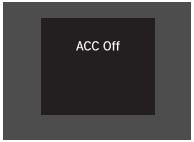
Continued

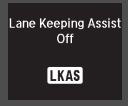
Message	Condition	Explanation
	• Appears when you close the door with the power mode in ON without the keyless access remote inside the vehicle.	• Disappears when you bring the keyless access remote back inside the vehicle and close the door. ➡ **Keyless Access Remote Reminder** P. 137
	• Appears when the keyless access remote battery becomes weak.	➡ **Replacing the Button Battery** P. 542
	• Appears if the keyless access remote's battery is too weak to start the engine or the key is not within operating range to start the engine. A beeper sounds six times.	• Bring the back of the keyless access remote into contact with the **ENGINE START/STOP** button. ➡ **If the Keyless Access Remote Battery is Weak** P. 578
	• Appears after the driver's door is opened when the power mode is in ACCESSORY.	• Change the power mode to VEHICLE OFF. ➡ **ENGINE START/STOP Button** P. 135
	• Appears when the power mode is in ACCESSORY.	—

Message	Condition	Explanation
	• Appears when you set the power mode to ACCESSORY or ON. Canadian models • Appears after you unlock and open the driver's door.	➡ **Starting the Engine** P. 426
	• Appears if you push the **ENGINE START/STOP** button to turn the engine off without the shift lever in P.	• Move the shift lever to P. The power mode changes to VEHICLE OFF.
Canadian models 	• Appears when you unlock and open the driver's door while the engine is running by two-way keyless access remote.	➡ **Remote Engine Start*** P. 428
	• Appears if you press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button while the vehicle is moving.	➡ **Emergency Engine Stop** P. 579

* Not available on all models

Continued

Message	Condition	Explanation
	• Flashes when the system senses a likely collision with a vehicle in front of you.	• Take the appropriate means to prevent a collision (apply the brakes, change lanes, etc.) ➡ **Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™)** P. 449 ➡ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)** P. 459
	• Appears when ACC has been automatically canceled.	• You can resume the set speed after the condition that caused ACC to cancel improves. Press the **RES/ACCEL** button. ➡ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)** P. 459

Message	Condition	Explanation
 	Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) • Appears when the vehicle is driving out of a detected lane. The steering wheel vibrates rapidly.	• Keep the vehicle within the lane you are driving. ➡ **Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)** P. 474
	Road Departure Mitigation (RDM) System • Appears when the vehicle is driving out of a detected lane. When you selected **Warning Only** - The steering wheel vibrates rapidly when the vehicle is drifting out of a detected lane. When you selected **Normal** or **Wide** - The steering wheel vibrates rapidly when the vehicle is drifting out of a detected lane. The system also steers the vehicle to help you remain within your driving lane.	• Keep the vehicle within the lane you are driving. ➡ **Road Departure Mitigation (RDM) System** P. 483 • You can change the setting for the road departure mitigation system. **Normal**, **Wide**, and **Warning Only** can be selected. ➡ **Customized Features** P. 95, 310
	• Blinks when you fail to steer the vehicle. The beeper sounds simultaneously.	• Operate the steering wheel to resume the LKAS.
	• Appears when the LKAS is in operation, or the LKAS button is pressed, but there is a problem with a system related to the LKAS. The LKAS cancels automatically. The beeper sounds simultaneously.	• If any other system indicators come on, such as the VSA®, ABS and brake system, take appropriate action.

Gauges

Gauges include the speedometer, tachometer, fuel gauge, and related indicators. They are displayed when the power mode is in ON.

■ Speedometer

Displays your driving speed in mph or km/h.

■ Tachometer

Shows the number of engine revolutions per minute.

■ Fuel Gauge

Displays the amount of fuel left in the fuel tank.

■ Temperature Gauge

Displays the temperature of the engine coolant.

Fuel Gauge

NOTICE

You should refuel when the needle approaches E. Running out of fuel can cause the engine to misfire, damaging the catalytic converter.

The actual amount of remaining fuel may differ from the fuel gauge reading.

Temperature Gauge

NOTICE

Driving with the temperature gauge pointer in the upper zone can cause serious engine damage. Pull safely to the side of the road and allow engine temperature to return to normal.

Overheating P. 584

Multi-Information Display

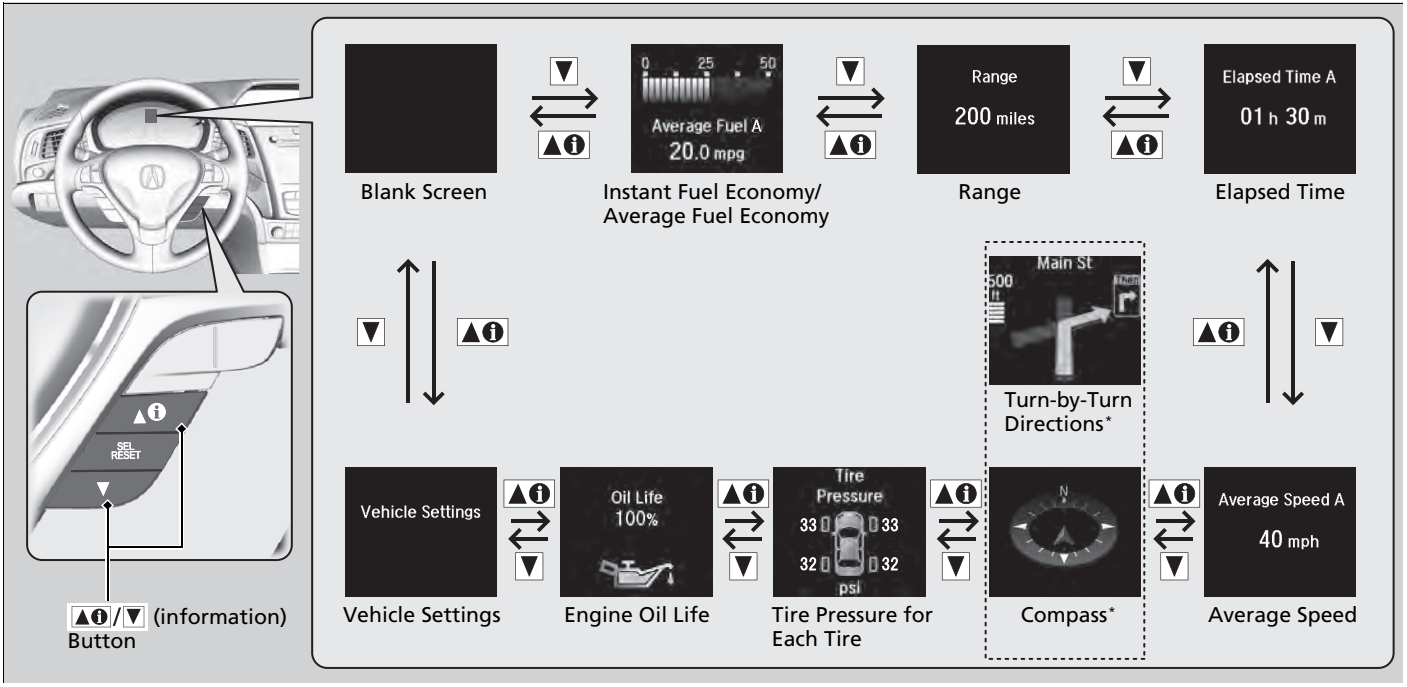
The multi-information display shows the odometer, trip meter, outside temperature indicator, and other gauges. It also displays important messages such as warnings and other helpful information.

Continued

■ Switching the Display

■ Main displays

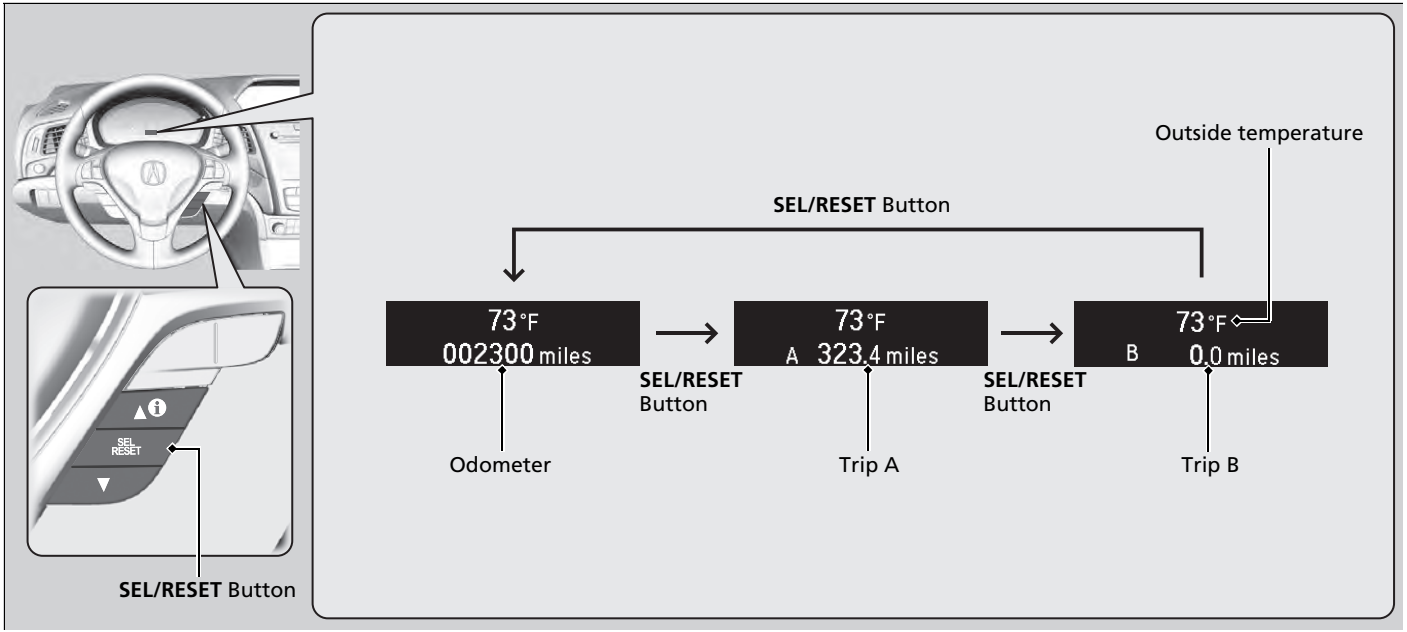
Press the ▲i/▼ (information) button to change the display.



* Not available on all models

■ Lower displays

Press the **SEL/RESET** button to change the display.



Continued

■ Odometer

Shows the total number of miles or kilometers that your vehicle has accumulated.

■ Trip Meter

Shows the total number of miles or kilometers driven since the last reset. Meters A and B can be used to measure two separate trips.

■ Resetting a trip meter

To reset a trip meter, display it, then press and hold the **SEL/RESET** button. The trip meter is reset to **0.0**.

■ Outside Temperature

Shows the outside temperature in Fahrenheit (U.S.) or Celsius (Canada).

■ Adjusting the outside temperature display

Adjust the temperature reading up to ± 5°F (U.S.) or ± 3°C (Canada) if the temperature reading seems incorrect.

■ Average Fuel Economy

Shows the estimated average fuel economy of each trip meter in mpg (U.S.) or l/100 km (Canada). The display is updated at set intervals. When a trip meter is reset, the average fuel economy is also reset.

Trip Meter

Switch between trip meter A and trip meter B by pressing the **SEL/RESET** button.

Outside Temperature

The temperature sensor is in the front bumper. Road heat and exhaust from another vehicle can affect the temperature reading when your vehicle speed is less than 19 mph (30 km/h).

It may take several minutes for the display to be updated after the temperature reading has stabilized.

Use the multi-information display's customized features to correct the temperature.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 95, 310

Average Fuel Economy

You can change when to reset the average fuel economy.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 95, 310

■ Instant Fuel Economy

Shows the instant fuel economy as a bar graph in mpg (U.S.) or l/100 km (Canada).

■ Range

Shows the estimated distance you can travel on the remaining power and fuel. This estimated distance is based on the vehicle's current fuel economy.

■ Elapsed Time

Shows the time elapsed since the Trip A or Trip B was reset.

■ Average Speed

Shows the average speed in mph (U.S.) or km/h (Canada) since the Trip A or Trip B was reset.

■ Turn-by-Turn Directions*

On Demand Multi-Use Display™ shows you turn-by-turn directions to your destination.

Models with navigation system

When the navigation system is not providing driving guidance, an image of a compass appears in the multi-Information display.

➡ **Refer to the Navigation System Manual**

Elapsed Time

You can change when to reset the elapsed time.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 95, 310

Average Speed

You can change when to reset the average speed.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 95, 310

Turn-by-Turn Directions*

Models without navigation system

Turn-by-turn directions will be shown on the multi-information display only when your android phone is connected to Android Auto.

➡ **Android Auto** P. 270

You can select whether the turn-by-turn display comes on or not during the route guidance.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 95, 310

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Tire Pressure Monitor

Shows each tire's pressure.

➔ **Tire Pressure Monitor** P. 443

■ Engine Oil Life

Shows the remaining oil life and Maintenance Minder™.

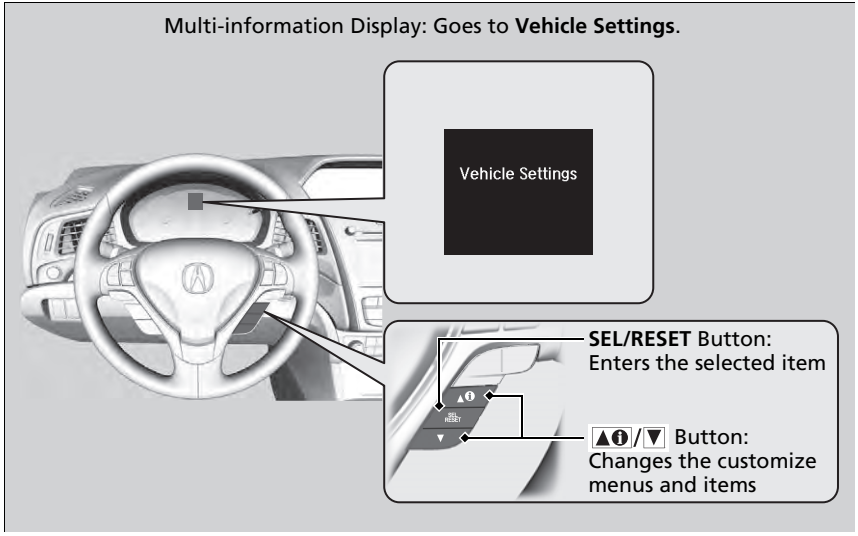
➔ **Maintenance Minder™** P. 509

■ Customized Features

Use the multi-information display to customize certain features.

■ How to customize

Press the ▲i/▼ button to select **Vehicle Settings** and press the **SEL/RESET** button.



Customized Features

To customize other features, press the ▲i/▼ button.

➡ **List of customizable options** P. 98
➡ **Example of customization settings** P. 102

Models with driving position memory system

Customization is possible when you see the driver's ID (**Driver 1** or **Driver 2**) on the screen.
The driver's ID indicates which remote transmitter you have used to unlock the driver's door. The customized settings are recalled every time you unlock the driver's door with that remote.

Put the transmission into P before you attempt to change any customized setting.

Models with On Demand Multi-Use Display™

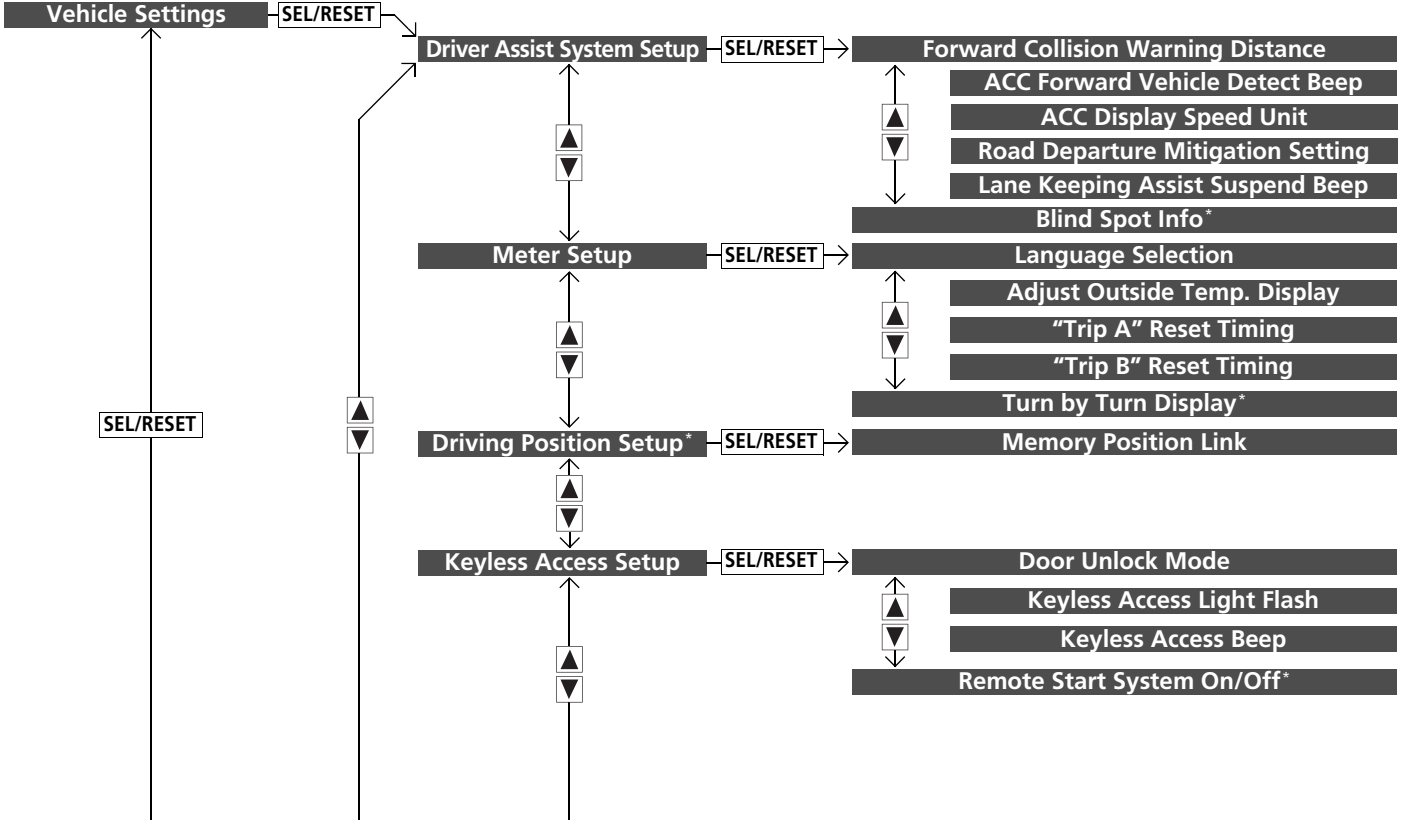
Customizing is also available from the information screen.
You cannot have **Vehicle Settings** displayed on the multi-information display while the information screen shows the same menu.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 310

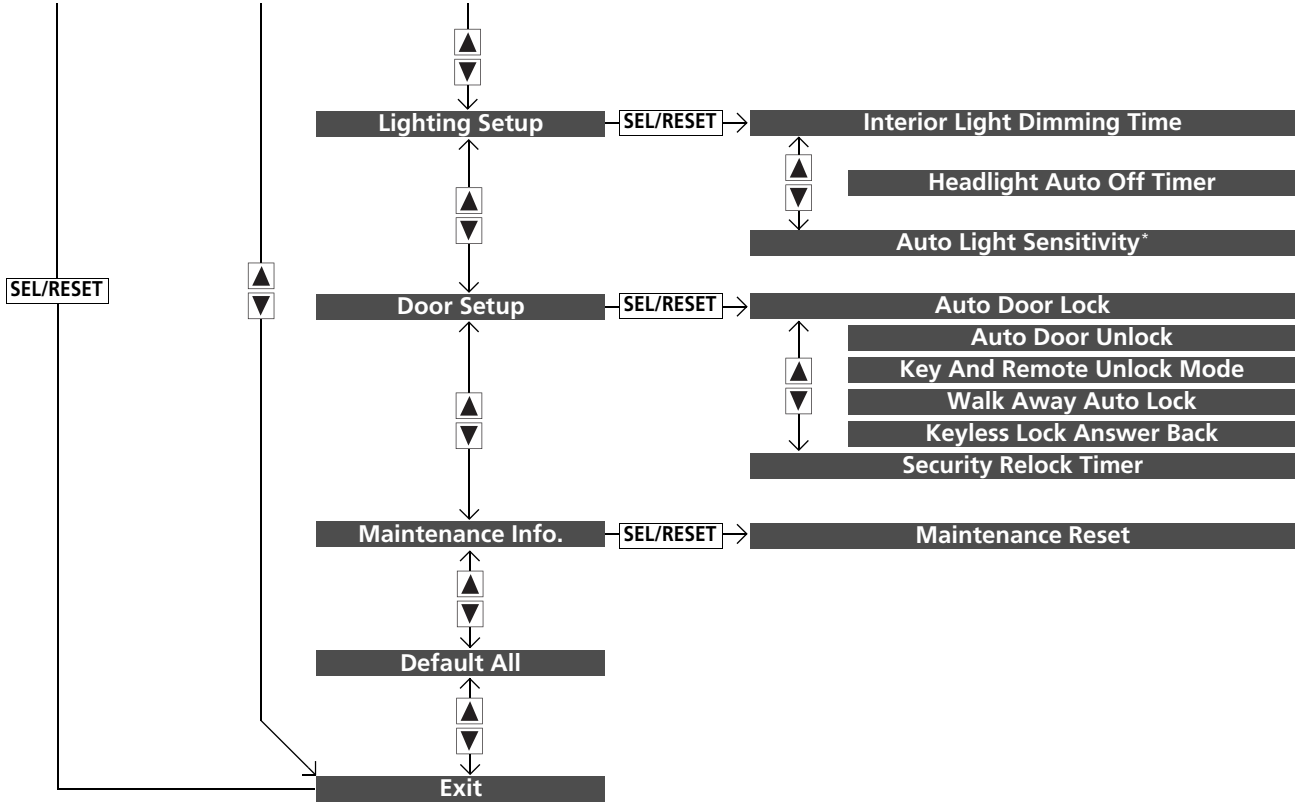
Continued

■ Customization flow

Press the ▲/▼ button to select **Vehicle Settings** and press the **SEL/RESET** button.



* Not available on all models



* Not available on all models

Continued

■ **List of customizable options**

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Driver Assist System Setup	**Forward Collision Warning Distance**	Changes the distance at which CMBS™ alerts.	**Long/Normal***1**/Short**
	ACC Forward Vehicle Detect Beep	Causes the system to beep when the system detects a vehicle, or when the vehicle goes out of the ACC range.	**On/Off***1
	ACC Display Speed Unit	Changes the speed unit for ACC on the multi-information display.	**mph***1**/km/h** (U.S.) **mph/km/h***1 (Canada)
	Road Departure Mitigation Setting	Changes the setting for the road departure mitigation system.	**Normal***1**/Wide/Warning Only**
	Lane Keeping Assist Suspend Beep	Causes the system to beep when the LKAS is suspended.	**On/Off***1
	Blind Spot Info*	Changes the setting for the blind spot information.	**Audible And Visual Alert***1**/Visual Alert/Off**

*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Meter Setup	**Language Selection**	Changes the displayed language.	**English**[*1]**/Français/ Español**
	Adjust Outside Temp. Display	Adjusts the temperature reading by a few degrees.	**-5°F ~ ±0°F**[*1] **~ +5°F** (U.S.) **-3°C ~ ±0°C**[*1] **~ +3°C** (Canada)
	"Trip A" Reset Timing	Changes the setting of how to reset trip meter A, average fuel economy A, average speed A, and elapsed time A.	**When Refueled/IGN Off/ Manually Reset**[*1]
	"Trip B" Reset Timing	Changes the setting of how to reset trip meter B, average fuel economy B, average speed B, and elapsed time B.	**When Refueled/IGN Off/ Manually Reset**[*1]
	Turn by Turn Display[*]	Selects whether the turn-by-turn display comes on during the route guidance.	**On**[*1]**/Off**

*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

Continued

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Driving Position Setup*	**Memory Position Link**	Turns the driving position memory system on and off.	**On*1/Off**
Keyless Access Setup	**Door Unlock Mode**	Changes which doors unlock when you grab the driver's door handle.	**Driver Door Only*1/All Doors**
	Keyless Access Light Flash	Causes some exterior lights to flash when you unlock/lock the doors.	**On*1/Off**
	Keyless Access Beep	Sets the beeper sound or not when you grab either front door handle.	**On*1/Off**
	Remote Start System On/Off*	Turns the remote engine start feature on and off.	**On*1/Off**
Lighting Setup	**Interior Light Dimming Time**	Changes the length of time the interior lights stay on after you close the doors.	**60sec/30sec*1/15sec**
	Headlight Auto Off Timer	Changes the length of time the exterior lights stay on after you close the driver's door.	**60sec/30sec/15sec*1/0sec**
	Auto Light Sensitivity*	Changes the timing for the headlights to come on.	**Max/High/Mid*1/Low/Min**

*1:Default Setting

 * Not available on all models

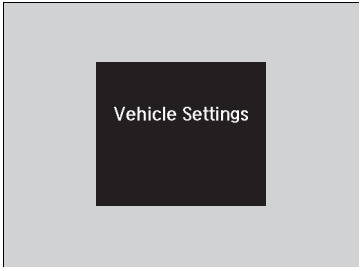
Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Door Setup	**Auto Door Lock**	Changes the setting for when the doors automatically lock.	**With Vehicle Speed**[*1]**/Shift From P/Off**
	Auto Door Unlock	Changes the setting for when the doors automatically unlock.	**All Doors When Driver's Door Opens**[*1]**/All Doors When Shifted To Park/All Doors When Ignition Switched Off/Off**
	Key And Remote Unlock Mode	Sets up either the driver's door or all doors to unlock on the first operation of the remote or built-in key.	**Driver Door**[*1]**/ All Doors**
	Walk Away Auto Lock	Changes the settings for the automatic locking the doors when you walk away from the vehicle while carrying the keyless access remote.	**On/Off**[*1]
	Keyless Lock Answer Back	LOCK/UNLOCK- The exterior lights flash. LOCK (2nd push)- The beeper sounds.	**On**[*1]**/Off**
	Security Relock Timer	Changes the time it takes for the doors to relock and the security system to set after you unlock the vehicle without opening any door.	**90sec/60sec/30sec**[*1]
Maintenance Info.	**Maintenance Reset**	Resets the Maintenance Minder™ display when you have performed the maintenance service.	**Cancel/Reset**
Default All	—	Cancels customized changes you have made or restores them to their default setting.	**Cancel/Set**

*1: Default Setting

Continued

■ **Example of customization settings**

The steps for changing the **"Trip A" Reset Timing** setting to **When Refueled** are shown below. The default setting for **"Trip A" Reset Timing** is **Manually Reset**.



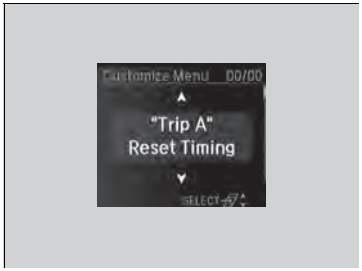
1. Press and release the ▲i/▼ button to select **Vehicle Settings**, then press the **SEL/RESET** button.



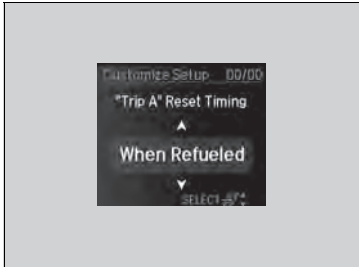
2. Press and release the ▲i/▼ button until **Meter Setup** appears on the display.

3. Press the **SEL/RESET** button.

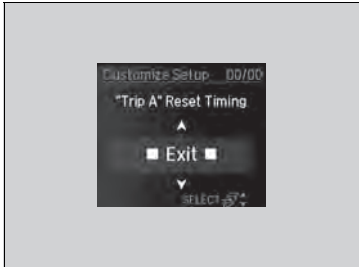
▶ **Language Selection** appears first on the display.



4. Press and release the ▲/▼ button until **"Trip A" Reset Timing** appears on the display, then press the **SEL/RESET** button.
▶ The display switches to the customization setup screen, where you can select **When Refueled**, **IGN Off**, **Manually Reset**, or **Exit**.



5. Press and release the ▲/▼ button select **When Refueled**, then press the **SEL/RESET** button.
▶ The **When Refueled Setup** screen appears, then the display returns to the customization menu screen.

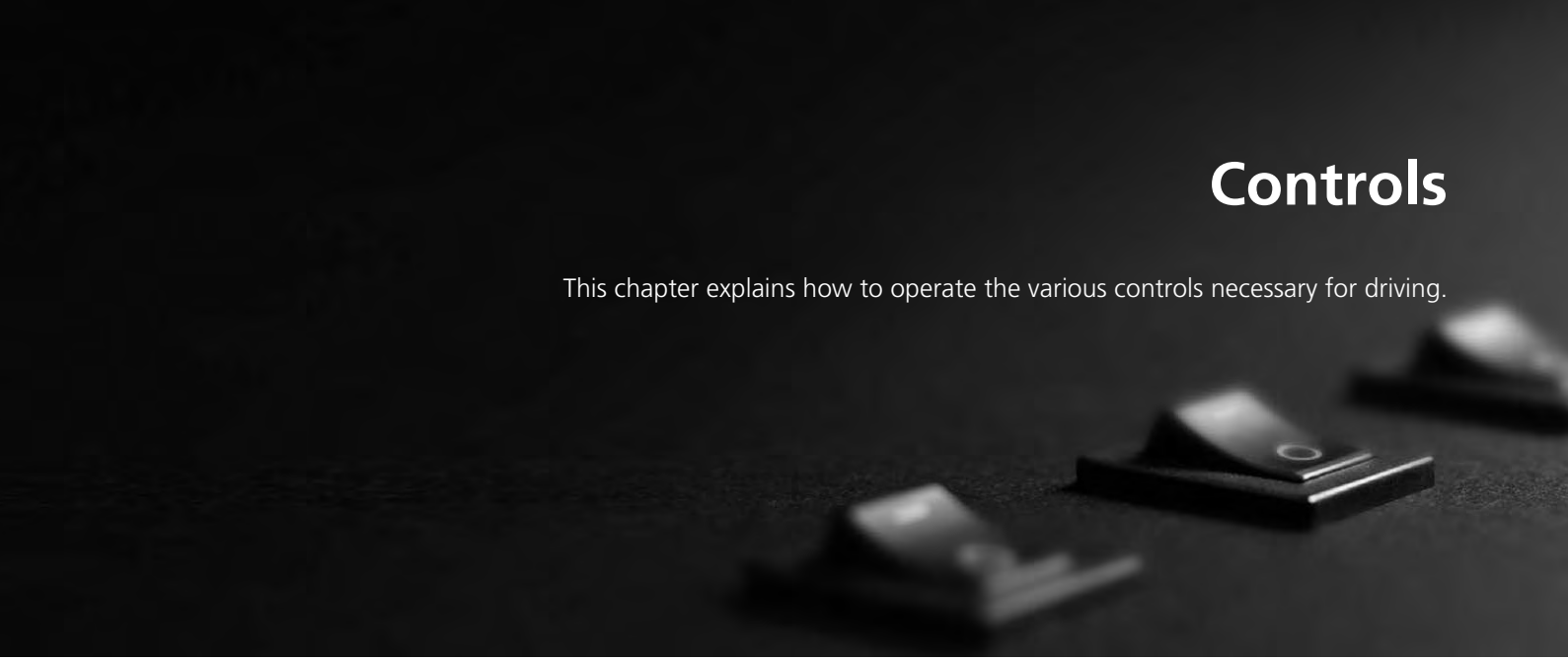


6. Press and release the ▲/▼ button until **Exit** appears on the display, press the **SEL/RESET** button.
7. Repeat Step 6 until you return to the normal screen.

This page intentionally left blank.

Controls

This chapter explains how to operate the various controls necessary for driving.



Clock 106
Locking and Unlocking the Doors
Key Types and Functions 108
Low Keyless Access Remote Signal Strength 110
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside 111
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside 120
Childproof Door Locks 122
Auto Door Locking/Unlocking 123
Opening and Closing the Trunk 124
Security System 128
Immobilizer System 128
Security System Alarm 128
Opening and Closing the Windows 131
Moonroof 134
Operating the Switches Around the Steering Wheel
ENGINE START/STOP Button 135
Turn Signals 138
Light Switches 139
Fog Lights* 142
Daytime Running Lights 142
Auto High-Beam 143
Wipers and Washers 146
Brightness Control 148
Rear Defogger/Heated Door Mirror Button 149
Adjusting the Steering Wheel 149
Driving Position Memory System* 150
Adjusting the Mirrors 152
Interior Rearview Mirror 152
Power Door Mirrors 153
Adjusting the Seats 154
Front Seats 154
Interior Lights/Interior Convenience Items 164
Interior Lights 164
Interior Convenience Items 166
Climate Control System 171
Using Automatic Climate Control 171
Automatic Climate Control Sensors 174

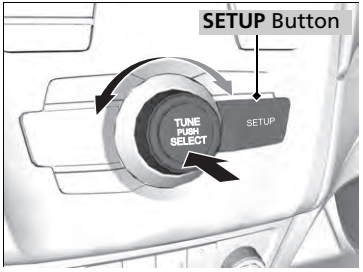
* Not available on all models

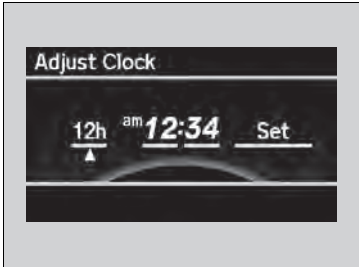
Adjusting the Clock

You can adjust the time in the clock display with the power mode in ON.

■ Adjusting the Time

Models with one display





1. Press the **SETUP** button.
2. Rotate to select **Adjust Clock** on the screen.
3. Press . **Adjust Clock** appears.
4. Rotate to select the item you want to adjust (12/24 hour mode, hour, minute). Then press .
5. Rotate to make the adjustment.
6. Press to enter your selection. The display returns to **Adjust Clock**. Repeat steps 4 to 6 to adjust other items.
7. To enter the selection, rotate and select **Set**, then press .

Clock

Models with navigation system

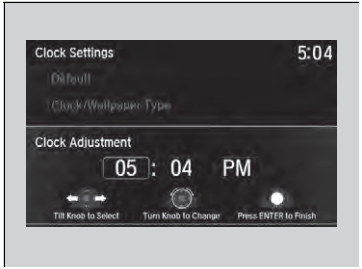
The clock is automatically updated through the audio system.

Adjusting the Clock

Models with one display

These indications are used to show how to operate the selector knob.
Rotate to select.
Press to enter.

Models with two displays



1. Press the **SETTINGS** button.
2. Rotate ↶ to select **Clock Settings**, then press ⊙.
   ▶ Repeat the procedure to select **Clock Adjustment**.
3. Rotate ↶ to change hour, then move ○▷.
4. Rotate ↶ to change minute, then press ⊙.

Adjusting the Clock

Models with two displays

These indications are used to show how to operate the interface dial.
Rotate ↶ to select.
Press ⊙ to enter.
Move ○▷ to select a secondary menu.

You can customize the clock display to show the 12 hour clock or 24 hour clock.
➔ **Customized Features** P. 310

You can turn the clock display in the information screen on and off.
➔ **Customized Features** P. 310

U.S. models with two displays

You cannot adjust the time while the vehicle is moving.

Key Types and Functions

This vehicle comes with the following keys:

Models without two-way keyless access remote



Models with two-way keyless access remote



Use the keys to start and stop the engine, and to lock and unlock all the doors and to open the trunk.

You can also use the remote transmitter to lock and unlock all the doors and to open the trunk.

Key Types and Functions

All the keys have an immobilizer system. The immobilizer system helps to protect against vehicle theft.

➡ **Immobilizer System** P. 128

Follow the advice below to prevent damage to the keys:

- Do not leave the keys in direct sunlight, or in locations with high temperature or high humidity.
- Do not drop the keys or set heavy objects on them.
- Keep the keys away from liquids, dust and sand.
- Do not take the keys apart except for replacing the battery.

If the circuits in the keys are damaged, the engine may not start, and the remote transmitter may not work.

If the keys do not work properly, have them inspected by a dealer.

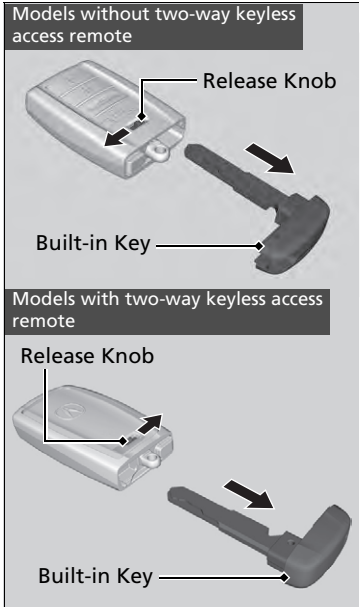
Models with two-way keyless access remote

You can remotely start the engine using the two-way keyless access remote.

➡ **Remote Engine Start*** P. 428

 * Not available on all models

Built-in Key

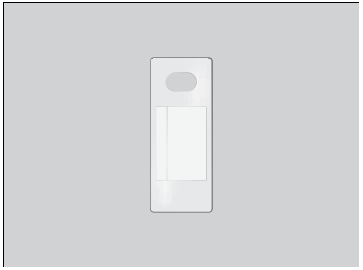


The built-in key can be used to lock/unlock the doors when the keyless access remote battery becomes weak and the power door lock/unlock operation is disabled.

To remove the built-in key, slide the release knob and then pull out the key. To reinstall the built-in key, push the built-in key into the keyless access remote until it clicks.

Continued

■ Key Number Tag



Contains a number that you will need if you purchase a replacement key.

Low Keyless Access Remote Signal Strength

The vehicle transmits radio waves to locate the keyless access remote when locking/unlocking the doors, opening the trunk, or to start the engine.

In the following cases, locking/unlocking the doors, opening the trunk, or starting the engine may be inhibited or operation may be unstable:

- Strong radio waves are being transmitted by nearby equipment.
- You are carrying the keyless access remote together with telecommunications equipment, laptop computers, cell phones, or wireless devices.
- A metallic object is touching or covering the keyless access remote.

Key Number Tag

Keep the key number tag separate from the key in a safe place outside of your vehicle.
If you wish to purchase an additional key, contact a dealer.

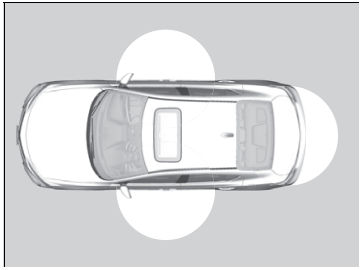
If you lose your key and you cannot start the engine, contact a dealer.

Low Keyless Access Remote Signal Strength

Communication between the keyless access remote and the vehicle consumes the keyless access remote's battery.
Battery life is about two years, but this varies depending on regularity of use.
The battery is consumed whenever the keyless access remote is receiving strong radio waves. Avoid placing it near electrical appliances such as televisions and personal computers.

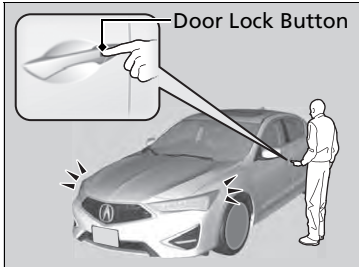
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside

■ Using the Keyless Access System



When you carry the keyless access remote, you can lock/unlock the doors and open the trunk.
You can lock/unlock the doors within a radius of about 32 inches (80 cm) of the outside door handle. You can open the trunk within about 32 inches (80 cm) radius from the trunk release button.

■ Locking the doors



Press the door lock button on the front door.
▶ Some exterior lights flash; the beeper sounds; all the doors lock; and the security system sets.

Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside

If the interior light switch is in the door activated position, the interior light comes on when you unlock the doors.
No doors opened: The light fades out after 30 seconds.
Doors relocked: The light goes off immediately.
➲ **Interior Lights** P. 164

Using the Keyless Access System

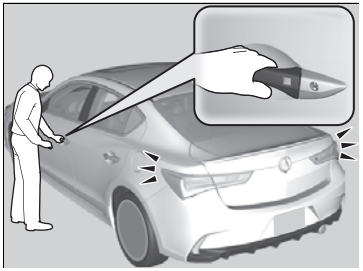
If you do not open a door within 30 seconds of unlocking the vehicle with the keyless access system, the doors will automatically relock.

You can lock or unlock doors using the keyless access system only when the power mode is in VEHICLE OFF.

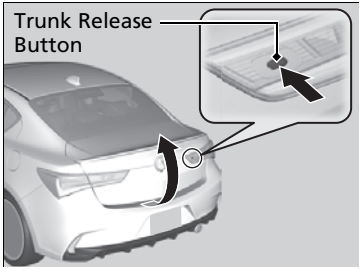
- Do not leave the keyless access remote in the vehicle when you get out. Carry it with you.
- Even if you are not carrying the keyless access remote, you can lock/unlock the doors while someone else with the remote is within range.
- The door may be unlocked if the door handle is covered with water in heavy rain or in a car wash if the keyless access remote is within range.
- If you grip a front door handle wearing gloves, the door sensor may be slow to respond or may not respond by unlocking the doors.

Continued

■ Unlocking the doors and trunk



Grab the driver's door handle:
▶ The driver's door unlocks.
▶ Some exterior lights flash twice and the beeper sounds twice.
Grab the front passenger's door handle:
▶ All doors unlock.
▶ Some exterior lights flash twice and the beeper sounds twice.



Press the trunk release button:
▶ The trunk unlocks and opens.
▶ A beeper will sound.
➡ **Using the Trunk Release Button** P. 125

Using the Keyless Access System

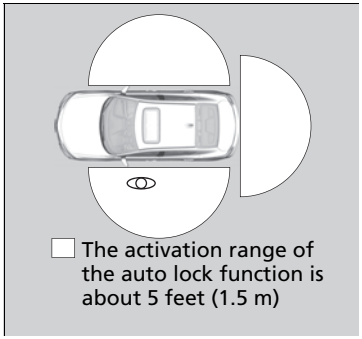
- After locking the door, you have up to two seconds during which you can pull the door handle to confirm whether the door is locked. If you need to unlock the door immediately after locking it, wait at least two seconds before gripping the handle, otherwise the door will not unlock.
- The door might not open if you pull it immediately after gripping the door handle. Grip the handle again and confirm that the door is unlocked before pulling the handle.
- Even within the 32 inches (80 cm) radius, you may not be able to lock/unlock the doors with the keyless access remote if it is above or below the outside handle.
- The keyless access remote may not operate if it is too close to the door and door glass.

Models with one display

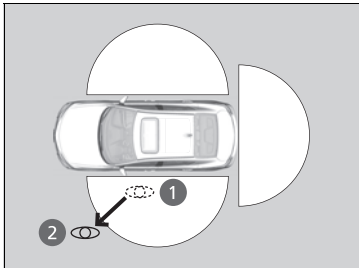
The light flash, beep and door unlock mode settings can be customized using the multi-information display.
➡ **Customized Features** P. 95

Models with two displays

The light flash, beep and door unlock mode settings can be customized using the information screen or multi-information display.
➡ **Customized Features** P. 95, 310



The activation range of the auto lock function is about 5 feet (1.5 m)



■ Locking the doors (Walk away auto lock®)

When you walk away from the vehicle while carrying the keyless access remote, the doors will automatically lock.

The auto lock function activates when all doors are closed, and the keyless access remote is within about 5 feet (1.5 m) radius of the outside door handle.

Exit vehicle while carrying keyless access remote and close door(s).

1. While within about 5 feet (1.5 m) radius of the vehicle.
▶ The beeper sounds; the auto lock function will be activated.

2. Carry the keyless access remote beyond about 5 feet (1.5 m) from the vehicle and remain outside this range for 2 or more seconds.
▶ Some exterior lights flash; the beeper sounds; all doors will then lock.

Locking the doors (Walk away auto lock®)

Models with one display

The auto lock function is set to OFF as the factory default setting. The auto lock function can be set to ON using the multi-information display.

If you set the auto lock function to ON using the multi-information display, only the remote transmitter that was used to unlock the driver's door prior to the setting change can activate auto lock.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 95

Models with two displays

The auto lock function is set to OFF as the factory default setting. The auto lock function can be set to ON using the information screen or multi-information display.

If you set the auto lock function to ON using the information screen or the multi-information display, only the remote transmitter that was used to unlock the driver's door prior to the setting change can activate auto lock.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 95, 310

All models

After the auto lock function has been activated, when you stay within the locking/unlocking operation range, the indicator on the keyless access remote will continue to flash until the doors are locked.

Continued

To temporarily deactivate the function:

1. Set the power mode to OFF.

2. Open the driver's door.

3. Using the master door lock switch, operate the lock as follows:
Lock → Unlock → Lock → Unlock.
▶ The beeper sounds and the function is deactivated.

To restore the function:

- Set the power mode to ON.
- Lock the vehicle without using the auto lock function.
- With the keyless access remote on you, move out of the auto lock function operation range.
- Open any door.

Locking the doors (Walk away auto lock®)

When you stay beside the vehicle within the operation range, the doors will automatically lock approximately 30 seconds after the auto lock function activating beeper sounds.

When you open a door after the auto lock function activating beeper sounds, the auto lock function will be delayed until all doors are closed.

Under the following circumstances, the auto lock function will not activate:

- The keyless access remote is inside the vehicle.
  ▶The beeper will not sound.
- The keyless access remote is taken out of its operational range before all the doors are closed.
  ▶The beeper will sound.

The auto lock function does not operate when any of the following conditions are met.

- The keyless access remote is inside the vehicle.
- A door or the hood is not closed.
- The power mode is set to any mode other than OFF.
- The keyless access remote is not located within a radius of about 5 feet (1.5 m) from the vehicle when you get out of the vehicle and close the doors.

Locking the doors (Walk away auto lock®)

Auto lock function operation stop beeper

After the auto lock function has been activated, the auto lock operation stop beeper sounds for approximately two seconds in the following cases.

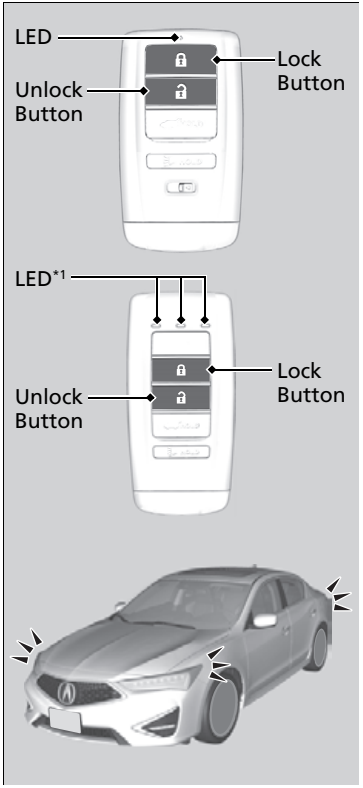
- The keyless access remote is put inside the vehicle through a window.
- You are located too close to the vehicle.
- The keyless access remote is put inside the trunk.

If the warning beeper sounds, check that you are carrying the keyless access remote. Then, open/close a door and confirm the auto lock activation beeper sounds once.

In the case that the keyless access remote is out of operating range when you close a door, a beeper will sound to indicate that the auto lock function has been canceled.

Continued

■ Using the Remote Transmitter



■ Locking the doors

Press the lock button.

Once:

▶ Some exterior lights flash, all the doors lock, and the security system sets.

Twice (within five seconds after the first push):

▶ The beeper sounds and verifies the security system is set.

■ Unlocking the doors

Press the unlock button.

Once:

▶ Some exterior lights flash twice, and the driver's door unlocks.

Twice:

▶ The remaining doors unlock.

1: Checking Door Lock Status P. 119

Using the Remote Transmitter

If you do not open a door within 30 seconds of unlocking the vehicle with the remote transmitter, the doors will automatically relock.
You can change the relock timer setting.
➡ **Customized Features** P. 95, 310

You can lock or unlock doors using the remote transmitter only when the power mode is in VEHICLE OFF.

The remote transmitter uses low-power signals, so the operating range may vary depending on the surroundings.

The remote will not lock the vehicle when a door is open.

If the distance at which the remote transmitter works varies, the battery is probably low.
If the LED does not come on when you press a button, the battery is dead.
➡ **Replacing the Button Battery** P. 542

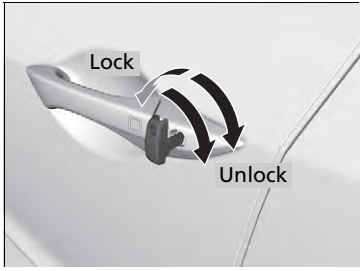
You can customize the door unlock mode setting.
➡ **Customized Features** P. 95, 310

* Not available on all models

■ Locking/Unlocking the Doors Using a Key

If the lock or unlock button of the keyless access remote does not work, use the key instead.

➡ **Replacing the Button Battery** P. 542



Fully insert the key and turn it.

Locking/Unlocking the Doors Using a Key

When you lock the driver's door with a key, all the other doors lock at the same time. When unlocking, the driver's door unlocks first. Turn the key a second time within a few seconds to unlock the remaining doors.

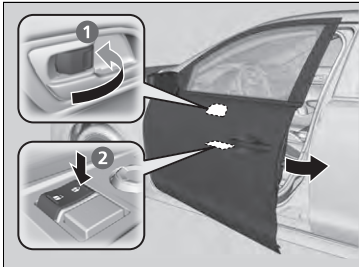
You can customize the door unlock mode setting.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 95, 310

Continued

■ Locking a Door Without Using a Key

If you do not have the key on you, or if for some reason you cannot lock a door using the key, you can lock the door without it.



■ Locking the front doors

Push the lock tab forward ❶ or push the master door lock switch in the lock direction ❷, and close the door.

■ Locking the rear doors

Push the lock tab forward and close the door.

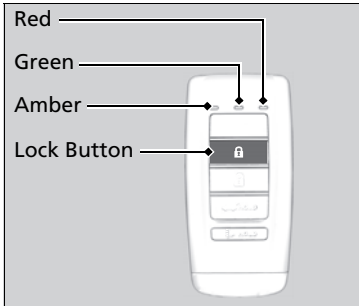
■ Lockout prevention system

The doors cannot be locked when the keyless access remote is inside the vehicle.

Locking a Door Without Using a Key

When you lock the driver's door, all the other doors lock at the same time.
Before locking a door, make sure that the key is not inside the vehicle.

■ Checking Door Lock Status*



You can remotely check if your vehicle's doors are all locked or any are unlocked using the keyless access remote from extended distances.

Press the lock button, the Amber (LEFT) LED blinks once. Then after three seconds one of the following feedback will come:

- Green (center) comes on: Acknowledges that the doors are locked.
- Red (right) comes on: Acknowledges that doors are not locked, or any door is not completely closed.
- Red (right) blinks three times: The remote does not receive the door lock status from the vehicle.

Checking Door Lock Status*

Operate the remote in an open space. If there are buildings or other obstacles between your vehicle and the remote, the remote may not work even within the operable range. However, the range required for unlocking the trunk and all the doors as well as activating the panic function is the same as that required for operating the standard keyless access remote.

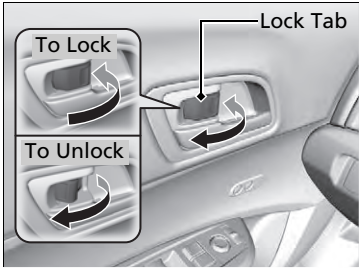
When checking the door lock status, you can also start or stop the engine.

➡ **Remote Engine Start*** P. 428

* Not available on all models

Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside

■ Using the Lock Tab



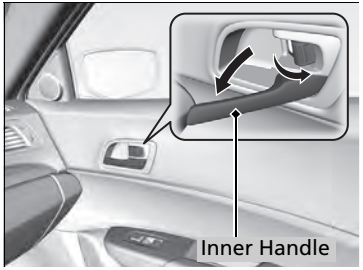
■ Locking a door
Push the lock tab forward.

■ Unlocking a door
Pull the lock tab rearward.

Using the Lock Tab

When you lock the door using the lock tab on the driver's door, all of the other doors lock at the same time.
When you unlock the door using the lock tab on the driver's door, only the driver's door will unlock.

■ Unlocking Using the Front Door Inner Handle



Pull the front door inner handle.

▶ The door unlocks and opens in one motion.

Unlocking and opening the driver's door from the inner handle unlocks all the other doors.

To avoid all the doors to be unlocked, use the lock tab on the driver's door to unlock, then lock again before opening the door.

Models with one display

▶ This setting works for one time only. If you do not want all the doors to be unlocked all the time, customize the **Auto Door Unlock** setting to **Off** using the multi-information display.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 95

Models with two displays

▶ This setting works for one time only. If you do not want all the doors to be unlocked all the time, customize the **Auto Door Unlock** setting to **Off** using the multi-information display or information screen.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 95, 310

Unlocking Using the Front Door Inner Handle

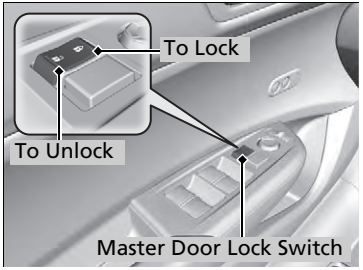
The front door inner handles are designed to allow front seat occupants to open the door in one motion. However, this feature requires that front seat occupants never pull a front door inner handle while the vehicle is in motion.

Children should always ride in a rear seat where childproof door locks are provided.

➡ **Childproof Door Locks** P. 122

Continued

■ Using the Master Door Lock Switch

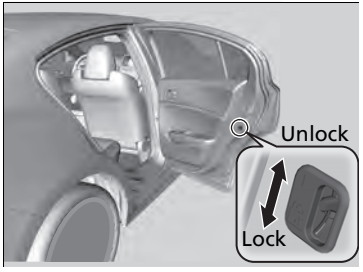


Press the master door lock switch in as shown to lock or unlock all the doors.

Childproof Door Locks

The childproof door locks prevent the rear doors from being opened from the inside regardless of the position of the lock tab.

■ Setting the Childproof Door Locks



Slide the lever in the rear door to the lock position, and close the door.

■ When opening the door

Open the door using the outside door handle.

Using the Master Door Lock Switch

When you lock/unlock either front door using the master door lock switch, all the other doors lock/unlock at the same time.

Childproof Door Locks

To open the door from the inside when the childproof door lock is on, put the lock tab in the unlock position, lower the rear window, put your hand out of the window, and pull the outside door handle.

Auto Door Locking/Unlocking

Your vehicle locks or unlocks all doors automatically when a certain condition is met.

■ Auto Door Locking

■ Drive lock mode

All doors lock when the vehicle's speed reaches about 10 mph (15 km/h).

■ Auto Door Unlocking

■ Driver's door open mode

All doors unlock when the driver's door is opened.

Auto Door Locking/Unlocking

Models with one display

You can turn off or change to another auto door locking/unlocking setting using the multi-information display.

➔ **Customized Features** P. 95

Models with two displays

You can turn off or change to another auto door locking/unlocking setting using the information screen or multi-information display.

➔ **Customized Features** P. 95, 310

Precautions for Opening/Closing the Trunk

■ Opening the trunk

Open the trunk all the way.

▶ If it is not fully opened, the trunk lid may begin to close under its own weight.

■ Closing the trunk

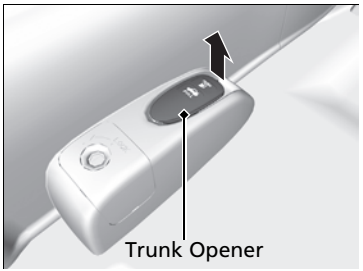
Keep the trunk lid closed while driving to:

▶ Avoid possible damage.

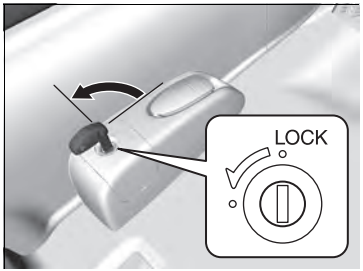
▶ Prevent exhaust gas from leaking into the vehicle.

➔ **Exhaust Gas Hazard** P. 65

Using the Trunk Opener



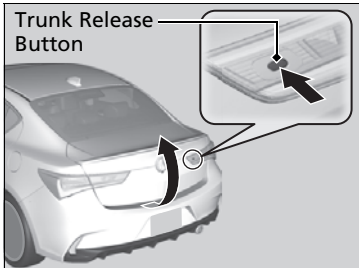
Pulling the trunk opener to the lower left of the driver's seat unlocks and opens the trunk.



■ **Locking the trunk opener**

You can lock the trunk opener with the built-in key.

Using the Trunk Release Button



Press the release button on the trunk lid after the doors are unlocked.

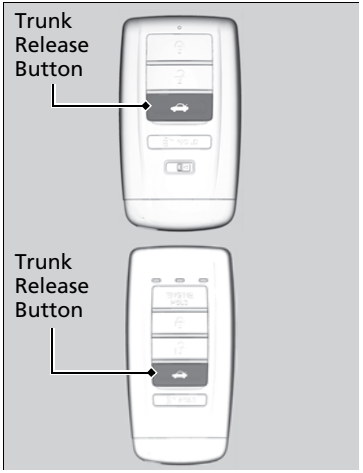
Even if the trunk is locked, you can open the trunk if you carry the keyless access remote.

▶ The beeper sounds.

Using the Trunk Release Button

- If you forget the keyless access remote inside, the beeper will sound and the trunk will not close.
- A person who is not carrying the keyless access remote can unlock the trunk if a person who is carrying it is within range.
- If the beeper sounds after you close the trunk, move the keyless access remote away from the trunk and close again.
- The keyless access remote may not operate if it is too close to the trunk.

Using the Remote Transmitter

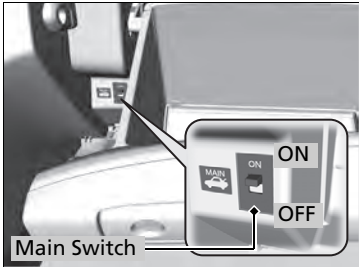


Press the trunk release button for approximately one second to unlock and open the trunk.

Using the Remote Transmitter

If the driver's door is locked, the trunk will automatically lock when you close it. Otherwise, you will have to lock it manually.

Trunk Main Switch



The trunk main switch disables the trunk release button on the remote transmitter and the trunk release button on the trunk lid to protect luggage in the trunk.

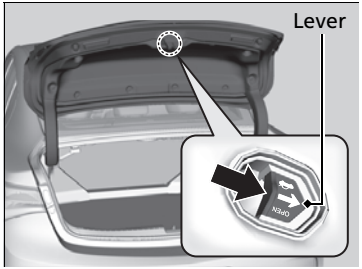
1. Make sure the rear seat-back is not folded down.
2. Turn off the trunk main switch in the glove box.
3. Lock the glove box.
4. Lock the trunk opener.

Using the Trunk Opener P. 124

Trunk Main Switch

If you need to give the key to someone else, remove the built-in key from the keyless access remote by sliding the release knob, and give the remote as a valet key.

Emergency Trunk Opener



The trunk release lever allows you to open the trunk from inside for your safety.

Slide the release lever in the direction of the arrow.

Emergency Trunk Opener

Parents should decide if their children should be shown how to use this feature.

Immobilizer System

The immobilizer system prevents a key that has not been pre-registered from starting the engine. Each key contains electronic transmitters that use electronic signals to verify the key.

Pay attention to the following when pressing the **ENGINE START/STOP** button:

- Do not allow objects that emit strong radio waves near the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.
- Make sure the key is not covered by or touching a metal object.
- Do not bring a key from another vehicle's immobilizer system near the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.
- Do not put the key near magnetic items. Electronic devices, such as televisions and audio systems emit strong magnetic fields. Note that even a key chain can become magnetic.

Immobilizer System

NOTICE

Leaving the key in the vehicle can result in theft or accidental movement of the vehicle.
Always take the key with you whenever you leave the vehicle unattended.

Do not alter the system or add other devices to it. Doing so may damage the system and make your vehicle inoperable.

Security System Alarm

The security system alarm activates when the trunk, hood or doors are forcibly opened. The alarm does not activate if the trunk or doors are opened with the key, remote transmitter or keyless access system.

However, the alarm activates if a door is opened with the key and then the transmission is taken out of P or the hood is opened before the power mode is set to ON.

■ When the security system alarm activates

The horn sounds intermittently and some exterior lights flash.

Security System Alarm

Do not alter the system or add other devices to it. Doing so may damage the system and make your vehicle inoperable.

The security alarm continues for a maximum of two minutes until the security system alarm deactivates.

■ To deactivate the security system alarm
Unlock the vehicle using the key, remote transmitter or keyless access system. The system, along with the horn and flashing lights, is deactivated.

■ Setting the security system alarm
The security system alarm automatically sets when the following conditions have been met:
- The power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).
- The hood is closed.
- All doors and the trunk are locked from outside with the key, remote transmitter or keyless access system.

■ When the security system alarm sets
The security system alarm indicator in the instrument panel blinks. The blinking interval changes after about 15 seconds.

■ To cancel the security system alarm
The security system alarm is canceled when the vehicle is unlocked using the remote transmitter, keyless access system, or the power mode is set to ON. The security system alarm indicator goes off at the same time.

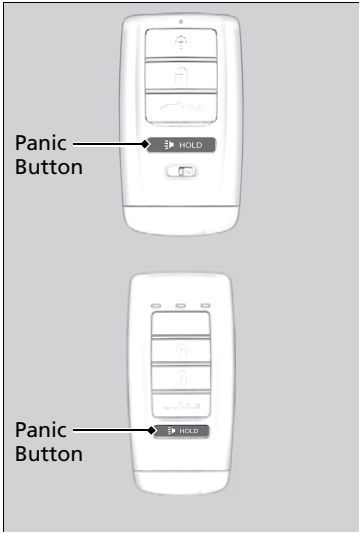
Security System Alarm

Do not set the security system alarm when someone is in the vehicle or a window is open. The system can accidentally activate when:
- Unlocking the door with the lock tab.
- Opening the trunk with the trunk opener or the emergency trunk opener.
- Opening the hood with the hood release.
- Taking the transmission out of P.

If the battery goes dead after you have set the security system alarm, the security alarm may go off once the battery is recharged or replaced.
If this occurs, deactivate the security system alarm by unlocking a door using the key, remote transmitter, or keyless access system.

Continued

■ Panic Mode



■ The panic button on the remote transmitter

If you press the panic button for approximately one second, the following will occur for about 30 seconds:

- The horn sounds.
- Some exterior lights flash.

■ Canceling panic mode

- Press any button on the remote transmitter.
- Set the power mode to ON.

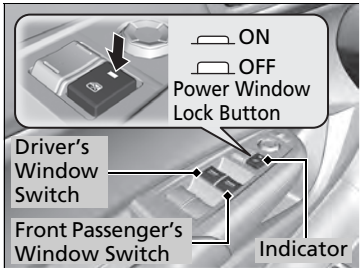
Opening/Closing the Power Windows

The power windows can be opened and closed when the power mode is in ON, using the switches on the doors.

The driver's side switches can be used to open and close all the windows. The power window lock button on the driver's side must be switched off (not pushed in, indicator off) to open and close the windows from anywhere other than the driver's seat.

When the power window lock button is pushed in, the indicator comes on and you can only operate the driver's window. Turn the power window lock button on if a child is in the vehicle.

■ Opening/Closing the Windows with Auto-Open/Close Function



■ Manual operation

To open: Push the switch down lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.
To close: Pull the switch up lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

■ Automatic operation

To open: Push the switch down firmly.
To close: Pull the switch up firmly.

The window opens or closes completely. To stop the window at any time, push or pull the switch briefly.

Continued

Opening/Closing the Power Windows

⚠WARNING

Closing a power window on someone's hands or fingers can cause serious injury.

Make sure your passengers are away from the windows before closing them.

The power windows can be operated for up to 10 minutes after you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).
Opening either front door cancels this function.

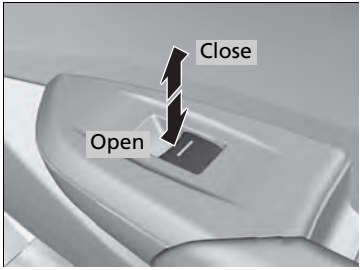
Auto Reverse

If a power window senses resistance when closing automatically, it will stop closing and reverse direction.

The driver's window auto reverse function is disabled when you continuously pull up the switch.

The auto reverse function stops sensing when the window is almost closed to ensure that it fully closes.

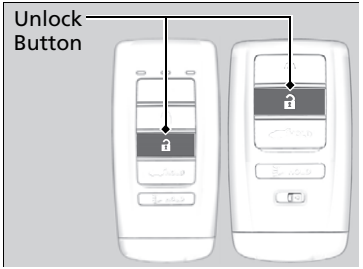
■ Opening/Closing Windows without Auto-Open/Close Function



To open: Push the switch down.
To close: Pull the switch up.

Release the switch when the window reaches the desired position.

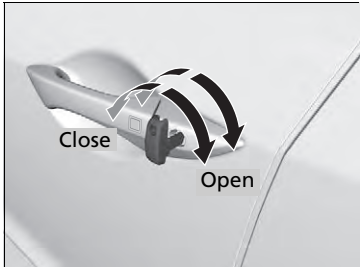
■ Opening the Windows and Moonroof with the Remote



To open: Press the unlock button, and then within 10 seconds, press it again and hold it.

If the windows and moonroof stop midway, repeat the procedure.

■ Opening/Closing the Windows and Moonroof with the Key

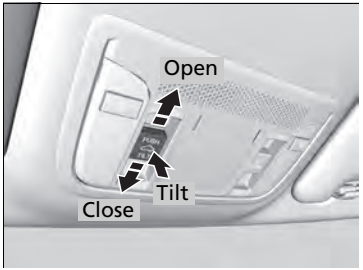


To open: Unlock the driver's door with the key. Within 10 seconds of returning the key to the central position, turn the key in the unlock direction and hold it there.
To close: Lock the driver's door with the key. Within 10 seconds of returning the key to the central position, turn the key in the lock direction and hold it there.

Release the key to stop the windows and moonroof at the desired position. If you want further adjustment, repeat the same operation.

■ Opening/Closing the Moonroof

You can only operate the moonroof when the power mode is in ON. Use the switch in the front of the ceiling to open and close the moonroof.



■ Automatic operation

To open: Pull the switch back firmly.
To close: Push the switch forward firmly.

The moonroof will automatically open or close all the way. To stop the moonroof midway, push the switch briefly.

■ Manual operation

To open: Pull the switch back lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.
To close: Push the switch forward lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

■ Tilting the moonroof up

To tilt: Push on the center of the moonroof switch.
To close: Push the switch forward firmly, then release.

Opening/Closing the Moonroof

⚠WARNING

Opening or closing the moonroof on someone's hands or fingers can cause serious injury.

Make sure all hands and fingers are clear of the moonroof before opening or closing it.

NOTICE

Opening the moonroof in below freezing temperature or when it is covered with snow or ice can damage the moonroof panel or motor.

The power moonroof can be operated for up to 10 minutes after you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).
Opening either front door cancels this function.

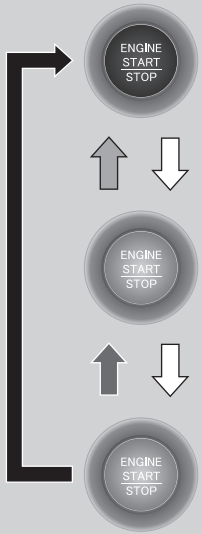
When resistance is detected, the auto reverse function causes the moonroof to change directions, then stop. Auto reverse stops sensing when the moonroof is almost closed to ensure that it fully closes. Make sure that all objects, including fingers, are clear of the moonroof.

You can use the remote transmitter or the key to operate the moonroof.

➡ **Opening the Windows and Moonroof with the Remote** P. 132
➡ **Opening/Closing the Windows and Moonroof with the Key** P. 133

ENGINE START/STOP Button

Changing the Power Mode



VEHICLE OFF (LOCK)
The button is off.
The power to all electrical components is turned off.

ACCESSORY
The button blinks (in red).
Operate the audio system and other accessories in this position.

ON
The button blinks (in red).
All electrical components can be used.

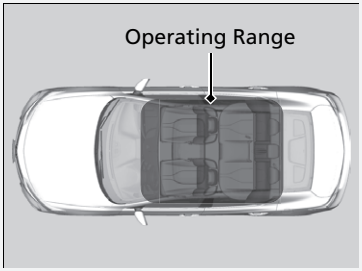
Without pressing the brake pedal

Press the button without the shift lever in P. → Press the button.

Press the button with the shift lever in P. → Shift to P.

ENGINE START/STOP Button

ENGINE START/STOP Button Operating Range



You can start the engine when the keyless access remote is inside the vehicle.
The engine may also run if the keyless access remote is close to the door or window, even if it is outside the vehicle.

ON mode:
The **ENGINE START/STOP** button is on (in red), if the engine is running.

If the battery of the keyless access remote is getting low, the engine may not start when you press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button. If the engine does not start, refer to the following link.

If the Keyless Access Remote Battery is Weak P. 578

Do not leave the power mode in ACCESSORY or ON when you get out.

Continued

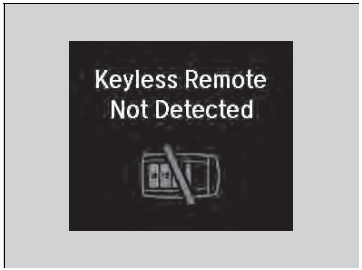
■ Automatic Power Off

If you leave the vehicle for 30 to 60 minutes with the transmission in P and the power mode in ACCESSORY, the vehicle automatically goes into the mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) to avoid draining the battery.

■ Power Mode Reminder

If you open the driver's door when the power mode is set to ACCESSORY, a warning beep sounds.

■ Keyless Access Remote Reminder



Warning buzzers may sound from inside and/or outside the vehicle to remind you that the keyless access remote is out of the vehicle. If the buzzer continues even after the remote is put back inside, place it to be within its operational range.

■ When the power mode is in ON

If the keyless access remote is taken out of the vehicle, and all doors are closed, a warning buzzer sounds from both inside and outside the vehicle. A warning message on the multi-information display notifies the driver inside that the remote is outside of the vehicle.

■ When the power mode is in ACCESSORY

If the keyless access remote is taken out of the vehicle, and all doors are closed, a warning buzzer sounds from outside the vehicle.

Keyless Access Remote Reminder

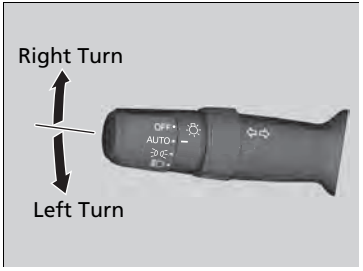
When the keyless access remote is within the system's operational range, and the driver's door is closed, the warning function cancels.

If the keyless access remote is taken out of the vehicle after the engine has been started, you can no longer change the **ENGINE START/STOP** button mode or restart the engine. Always make sure if the remote is in your vehicle when you operate the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.

Removing the keyless access remote from the vehicle through a window does not activate the warning buzzer.

Do not put the keyless access remote on the dashboard or in the glove box. It may cause the warning buzzer to go off. Under some other conditions that can prevent the vehicle from locating the remote, the warning buzzer may also go off even if the remote is within the system's operational range.

Turn Signals



The turn signals can be used when the power mode is in ON.

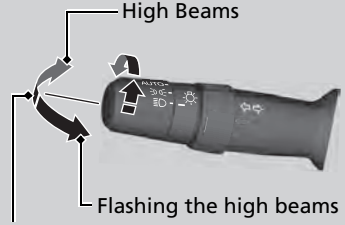
■ **One-touch turn signal**

When you lightly push up or down and release the turn signal lever, the exterior turn signals and turn signal indicator blink three times.

This feature can be used when signaling for a lane change.

Light Switches

■ Manual Operation



Turns on parking, side marker, tail, and rear license plate lights

Turns on headlights, parking, side marker, tail, and rear license plate lights

Rotating the light switch turns the lights on and off, regardless of the power mode setting.

■ High beams

Push the lever forward until you hear a click.

■ Low beams

When in high beams, pull the lever back to return to low beams.

■ Flashing the high beams

Pull the lever back, and release it.

■ Lights off

Turn the lever to **OFF** either when:

- The transmission is in P.
- The parking brake is applied.

To turn the lights on again, turn the lever to **OFF** to cancel the lights off mode. Even if you do not cancel the lights off mode, the lights come on automatically when:

- The transmission is taken out of P and the parking brake is released.
- The vehicle starts to move.

Light Switches

If you leave the power mode in VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) while the lights are on, a chime sounds when the driver's door is opened.

When the lights are on, the lights on indicator in the instrument panel will be on.

Lights On Indicator P. 74

Do not leave the lights on when the engine is off because it will cause the battery to discharge.

If you sense that the level of the headlights is abnormal, have the vehicle inspected by a dealer.

Continued

■ Automatic Operation (automatic lighting control)



Automatic lighting control can be used when the power mode is in ON.

When the light switch is in **AUTO**, the headlights and other exterior lights will switch on and off automatically depending on the ambient brightness.

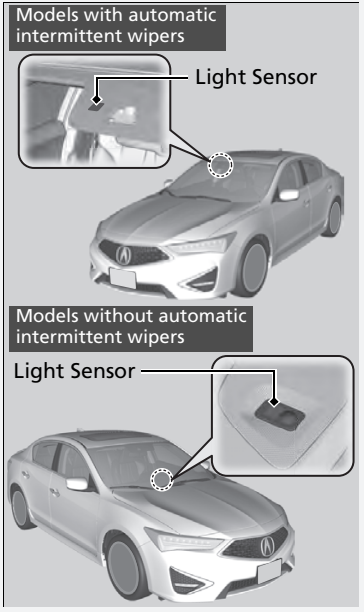
The headlights comes on when you unlock a door in dark areas with the headlight switch in **AUTO**.

▶ Once you lock the door, the headlights will go off.

Automatic Operation (automatic lighting control)

We recommend that you turn on the lights manually when driving at night, in a dense fog, or in dark areas such as long tunnels or parking facilities.

The light sensor is in the location shown below. Do not cover this light sensor with anything; otherwise, the automatic lighting system may not work properly.



■ Headlight Integration with Wiper

The headlights automatically come on when the wipers are used several times within a certain number of intervals with the headlight switch in **AUTO**.
The headlights automatically go off a few minutes later if the wipers are stopped.

■ Automatic Lighting Off Feature

The headlights, all other exterior lights, and the instrument panel lights turn off 15 seconds after you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK), take the remote with you, and close the driver's door.

If you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) with the headlight switch on, but do not open the door, the lights turn off after 10 minutes (3 minutes, if the switch is in the **AUTO** position).

The lights turn on again when you unlock or open the driver's door. If you unlock the door, but do not open it within 15 seconds, the lights go off. If you open the driver's door, you will hear a lights on reminder chime.

Automatic Operation (automatic lighting control)

U.S. models

You can adjust the auto light sensitivity as follows:

Setting	The exterior lights come on when the ambient light is at
Max	Bright
High	
Mid	
Low	
Min	Dark

➡ **Customized Features** P. 95, 310

Headlight Integration with Wiper

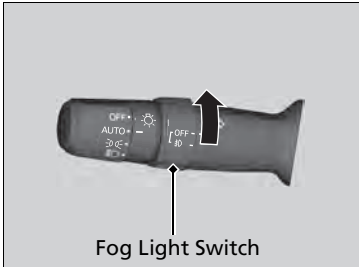
This feature activates while the headlights are off in **AUTO**.
The instrument panel brightness does not change when the headlights come on.

At dark ambient light levels, the automatic lighting control feature turns on the headlights, regardless of the number of wiper sweeps.

Automatic Lighting Off Feature

You can change the headlight auto off timer setting.
➡ **Customized Features** P. 95, 310

Fog Lights*



Fog Light Switch

When the low beam headlights are on, turn the fog light switch on to use the fog lights.

Daytime Running Lights

The parking/daytime running lights come on when the following conditions have been met:

- The power mode is in ON.
- The headlight switch is in **AUTO**.
- The parking brake is released.

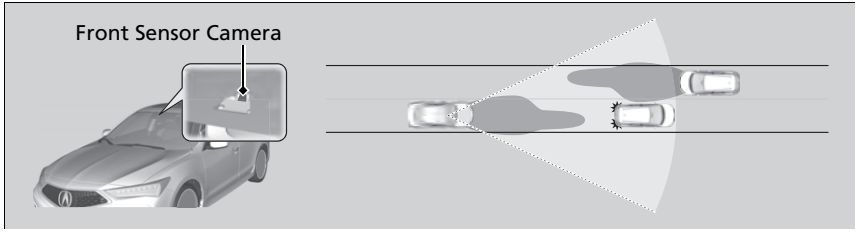
The lights remain on even if you set the parking brake.
Setting the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) will turn off the daytime running lights.

The daytime running lights are off once the headlight switch is turned on, or when the headlight switch is in **AUTO** and it is getting darker outside.

 * Not available on all models

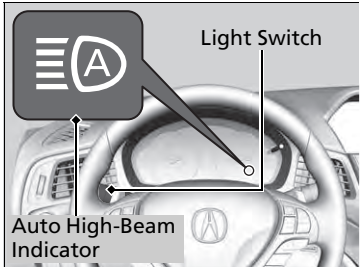
Auto High-Beam

The front sensor camera detects the light sources ahead of the vehicle such as the lights of a preceding or oncoming vehicle, or street lights. When you are driving at night, the system automatically switches the headlights between low beam and high beam depending on the situation.



How to Use the Auto High-Beam

When all of the following conditions have been met, the auto high-beam indicator comes on and the auto high-beam is activated.



- The power mode is in ON.
- The light switch is in **AUTO**.
- The lever is in the low beam position.
- The headlights have been automatically activated.
- It is dark outside the vehicle.

If the auto high-beam indicator does not come on even when all the conditions have been met, carry out the following procedure and the indicator will come on.

- Pull the lever toward you for flashing the high beams then release it while driving.

Continued

Auto High-Beam

The auto high-beam system does not always operate in every situation. This system is just for assisting the driver. Always observe your surroundings and switch the headlights between high beam and low beam manually if necessary.

If you find the timing of beam changes inconvenient for driving, change the headlight beams manually.

The range and the distance at which the camera can recognize varies depending on conditions surrounding your vehicle.

Regarding the handling of the camera mounted to the inside of the windshield, refer to the following.

Front Sensor Camera P. 488

For the auto high-beam to work properly:

- Do not place an object that reflects light on the dashboard.
- Keep the windshield around the camera clean.
- When cleaning the windshield, be careful not to apply the windshield cleanser to the camera lens.
- Do not attach an object, sticker or film to the area around the camera.
- Do not touch the camera lens.

If the camera receives a strong impact, or repairing of the area near the camera is required, consult a dealer.

■ Automatic switching between high-beam and low-beam

When auto-high beam is active, the headlights switch between high beam and low beam based on the following conditions.

Switching to high beam:		Switching to low beam:
All of the following conditions must be met before the high beams turn on. • Your vehicle speed is 45mph (72 km/h) or more. • There are no preceding or oncoming vehicle with headlights or taillights turned on. • There are few street lights on the road ahead.	⟷	One of the following conditions must be met before the low beams turn on. • Your vehicle speed is 30 mph (48 km/h) or less. • There is a preceding or oncoming vehicle with headlights or taillights turned on. • There are many street lights on the road ahead.

■ Manual switching between high-beam and low-beam

If you want to manually switch the headlights between high beam and low beam, follow either of the procedures below. Note that when you do this, the auto high-beam indicator will turn off and the auto high-beam will be deactivated.

Using the lever:

Pull the lever toward you for flashing the high beams then release it within about one second while driving.

▶ To reactivate the auto high-beam, pull the lever toward you for flashing the high beams then release it while driving. The auto high-beam indicator will come on.

Using the light switch:

Turn the light switch to ≡D.

▶ To reactivate the auto high-beam, turn the light switch to **AUTO** when the lever is in the low beam position, the auto high-beam indicator will come on.

How to Use the Auto High-Beam

In the following cases, the auto high-beam system may not switch the headlights properly or the switching timing may be changed. In case of the automatic switching operation does not fit for your driving habits, please switch the headlights manually.

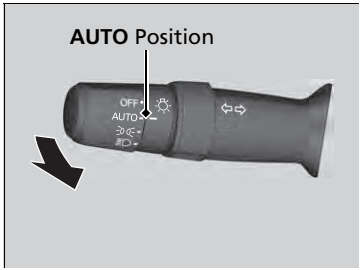
- The brightness of the lights from the preceding or oncoming vehicle is intense or poor.
- Visibility is poor due to the weather (rain, snow, fog, windshield frost, etc.).
- Surrounding light sources, such as street lights, electric billboards and traffic lights are illuminating the road ahead.
- The brightness level of the road ahead constantly changes.
- The road is bumpy or has many curves.
- A vehicle suddenly appears in front of you, or a vehicle in front of you is not in the preceding or oncoming direction.
- Your vehicle is tilted with a heavy load in the rear.
- A traffic sign, mirror, or other reflective object ahead is reflecting strong light toward the vehicle.
- The oncoming vehicle frequently disappears under roadside trees or behind median barriers.
- The preceding or oncoming vehicle is a motorcycle, bicycle, mobility scooter, or other small vehicle.

The auto high-beam system keeps the headlight low beam when:

- Windshield wipers are operating.
- The camera has been detected a dense fog.

How to Turn Off the Auto High-Beam

You can turn the auto high-beam system off. If you want to turn the system off or on, set the power mode to ON, then carry out the following procedures while the vehicle is stationary.



To turn the system off:
With the light switch is in **AUTO**, pull the lever toward you and hold it for at least 40 seconds. After the auto high-beam indicator light blinks twice, release the lever.

To turn the system on:
With the light switch is in **AUTO**, pull the lever toward you and hold it for at least 30 seconds. After the auto high-beam indicator light blinks once, release the lever.

How to Use the Auto High-Beam

If the **Some Driver Assist Systems Cannot Operate: Camera Temperature Too High** message appears:

- Use the climate control system to cool down the interior and, if necessary, also use defroster mode with the airflow directed toward the camera.
- Start driving the vehicle to lower the windshield temperature, which cools down the area around the camera.

If the **Some Driver Assist Systems Cannot Operate: Clean Front Windshield** message appears:

- Park your vehicle in a safe place, and clean the windshield. If the message does not disappear after you have cleaned the windshield and driven for a while, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

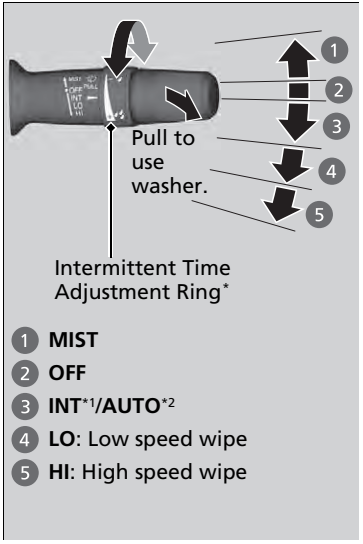
How to Turn Off the Auto High-Beam

If you turn the auto high-beam system off, the system does not operate until you turn the system on.

Park in a safe place before turning the system off or on.

Wipers and Washers

■ Windshield Wipers/Washers



The windshield wipers and washers can be used when the power mode is in ON.

■ MIST

The wipers run at high speed until you release the lever.

■ Wiper switch (OFF, INT*1/AUTO*2, LO, HI)

Move the lever up or down to change the wiper settings.

■ Adjusting wiper operation*

Turn the adjustment ring to adjust the wiper operation.



Lower speed, fewer sweeps

Higher speed, more sweeps

■ Washer

Sprays while you pull the lever toward you. When you release the lever for more than one second, the spray stops, the wipers sweep two or three more times to clear the windshield, then stop.

*1: Models with manual intermittent operation

*2: Models with automatic intermittent operation

* Not available on all models

Wipers and Washers

NOTICE

Do not use the wipers when the windshield is dry. The windshield will get scratched, or the rubber blades will get damaged.

NOTICE

Turn the washers off if no washer fluid comes out. The pump may get damaged.

The wiper motor may stop motor operation temporarily to prevent an overload. Wiper operation will return to normal within a few minutes, once the circuit has returned to normal.

Models with intermittent time adjustment ring

If the vehicle speeds up while the wipers are operating intermittently, the length of the wipe interval shortens.

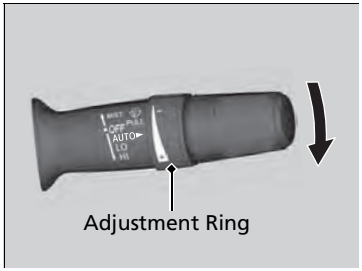
When the vehicle speeds up, the wiper operation's shortest delay setting () and the **LO** setting become the same.

NOTICE

In cold weather, the blades may freeze to the windshield.

Operating the wipers in this condition may damage the wipers. Use the defogger to warm the windshield, then turn the wipers on.

■ Automatic Intermittent Wipers*



When you push the lever down to **AUTO**, the windshield wipers sweep once, and go into the automatic mode.

The wipers operate intermittently, at low speed, or at high speed and stops in accordance with the amount of rainfall the rainfall sensor detects.

■ AUTO sensitivity adjustment

When the wiper function is set to **AUTO**, you can adjust the sensitivity of the rainfall sensor (using the adjustment ring) so that wipers will operate in accordance with your preference.

Sensor sensitivity



Low sensitivity

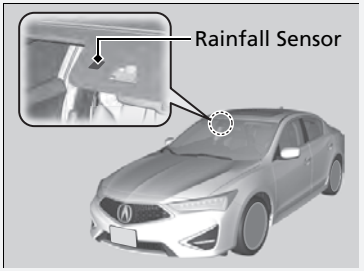
High sensitivity

Wipers and Washers

If the wipers stop operating due to an obstacle such as the build-up of snow, park the vehicle in a safe place.
Rotate the wiper switch to **OFF**, and set the power mode to ACCESSORY or VEHICLE OFF (LOCK), then remove the obstacle.

Automatic Intermittent Wipers*

The rainfall sensor is in the location shown below.



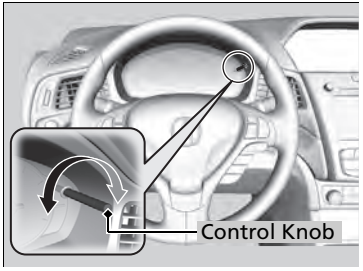
NOTICE

AUTO should always be turned **OFF** before the following situations in order to prevent severe damage to the wiper system:

- Cleaning the windshield
- Driving through a car wash
- No rain present

* Not available on all models

Brightness Control



When the power mode is in ON, you can use the brightness control knob to adjust instrument panel brightness.
Brighten: Turn the knob to the right.
Dim: Turn the knob to the left.

You will hear a beep when the brightness reaches minimum or maximum. Several seconds after adjusting the brightness, you will be returned to the previous display.



■ Brightness level indicator

The brightness level is shown on the display while you are adjusting it.

Brightness Control

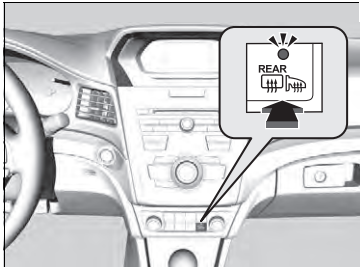
Instrument panel brightness varies, depending on whether the exterior lights are on or off. The instrument panel dims to reduce glare when they are on.

When the light switch is in a position other than **OFF** and it is dark outside, the instrument panel is dimmed to reduce glare.

To cancel the reduced instrument panel brightness when the exterior lights are on, turn the knob to the right until the brightness display is up to max, the beeper sounds.

The brightness can be set differently for when the exterior lights are on, and when they are off.

Rear Defogger/Heated Door Mirror Button



Press the rear defogger and heated door mirror button to defog the rear window and mirrors when the power mode is in ON.

The rear defogger and heated door mirrors automatically switch off after 10-30 minutes depending on the outside temperature. However, if the outside temperature is 32°F (0°C) or below, it does not automatically switch off.

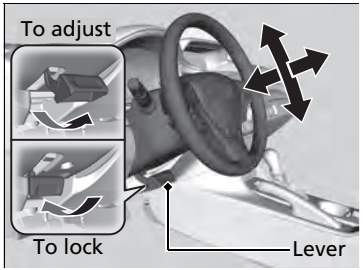
Rear Defogger/Heated Door Mirror Button

This system consumes a lot of power, so turn it off when the window has been defogged.
Also, do not use the system for a long time while the engine is idling. This may weaken the battery, making it difficult to start the engine.

When the power mode is set to ON and the outside temperature is below 41°F (5°C), the heated door mirror may automatically activate for 10 minutes.

Adjusting the Steering Wheel

The steering wheel height and distance from your body can be adjusted so that you can comfortably grip the steering wheel in an appropriate driving posture.



1. Pull the steering wheel adjustment lever up.
   ▶ The steering wheel adjustment lever is under the steering column.
2. Move the steering wheel up or down, and in or out.
   ▶ Make sure you can see the instrument panel gauges and indicators.
3. Push the steering wheel adjustment lever down to lock the steering wheel in position.
   ▶ After adjusting the position, make sure you have securely locked the steering wheel in place by trying to move it up, down, in, and out.

Adjusting the Steering Wheel

⚠WARNING

Adjusting the steering wheel position while driving may cause you to lose control of the vehicle and be seriously injured in a crash.

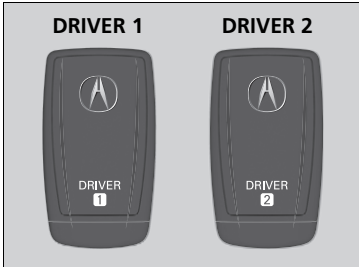
Adjust the steering wheel only when the vehicle is stopped.

Driving Position Memory System*

You can store two driver's seat (except for power lumbar) positions with the driving position memory system.
When you unlock and open the driver's door with a remote transmitter, or keyless access system, the seat adjust automatically to one of the two preset positions.

When you enter the vehicle, the multi-information display briefly shows you which remote transmitter you used to unlock the vehicle.

- **DRIVER 1** transmitter is linked to memory button 1.
- **DRIVER 2** transmitter is linked to memory button 2.



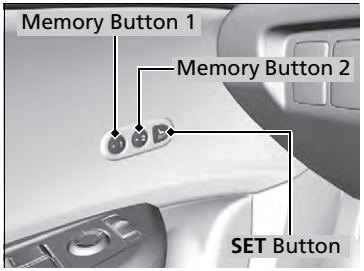
Driving Position Memory System*

Using the information screen or multi-information display, you can disable the automatic seat adjustment function.

Customized Features P. 95, 310

 * Not available on all models

■ Storing a Position in Memory

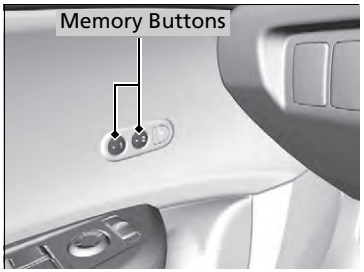


1. Set the power mode to ON. Adjust the driver's seat to the desired position.
2. Press the **SET** button.
▶ You will hear the beep, and the memory button indicator light will blink.
3. Press and hold memory button 1 or 2 within five seconds of pressing the **SET** button.
▶ Once the seat positions have been memorized, the indicator light on the button you pressed stays on and you will hear the double-beep.

Storing a Position in Memory

After you press the **SET** button, the storing operation will be canceled when:
- You do not press the memory button within five seconds.
- You readjust the seat position before the double-beep.
- You set the power mode to any position except ON.

■ Recalling the Stored Position



1. Put the transmission into P.
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Press a memory button (1 or 2).
▶ You will hear the beep, and the indicator light will blink.

The seat will automatically move to the memorized positions. When it has finished moving, you will hear the beep, and the indicator light stays on.

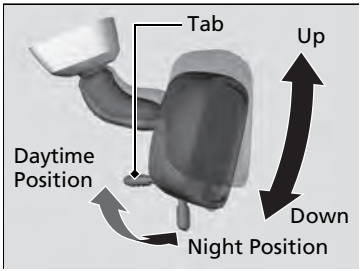
Recalling the Stored Position

The seat will stop moving if you:
- Press the **SET** button or memory button 1 or 2.
- Adjust the seat position.
- Put the transmission into a position other than P.

Interior Rearview Mirror

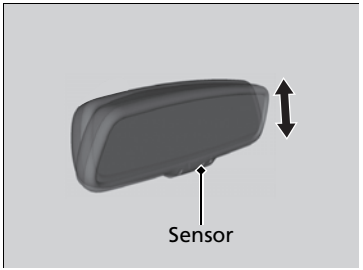
Adjust the angle of the rearview mirror when you are sitting in the correct driving position.

■ Rearview Mirror with Day and Night Positions*



Flip the tab to switch the position.
The night position will help to reduce the glare from headlights behind you when driving after dark.

■ Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror*



When you are driving after dark, the automatic dimming rearview mirror reduces the glare from headlights behind you, based on inputs from the mirror sensor. This feature is always active.

Adjusting the Mirrors

Keep the inside and outside mirrors clean and adjusted for best visibility.

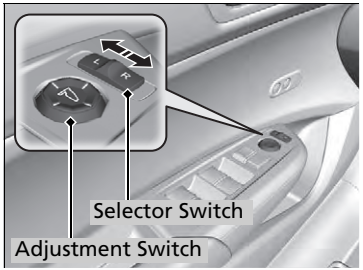
Adjust the mirrors before you start driving.
➡ **Front Seats** P. 154

Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror*

The auto dimming function cancels when the transmission is in R.

 * Not available on all models

Power Door Mirrors



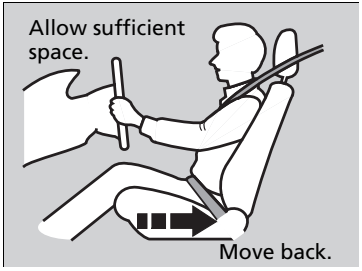
You can adjust the door mirrors when the power mode is in ON.

■ **Mirror position adjustment**

L/R selector switch: Select the left or right mirror. After adjusting the mirror, return the switch to the center position.

Mirror position adjustment switch: Press the switch left, right, up, or down to move the mirror.

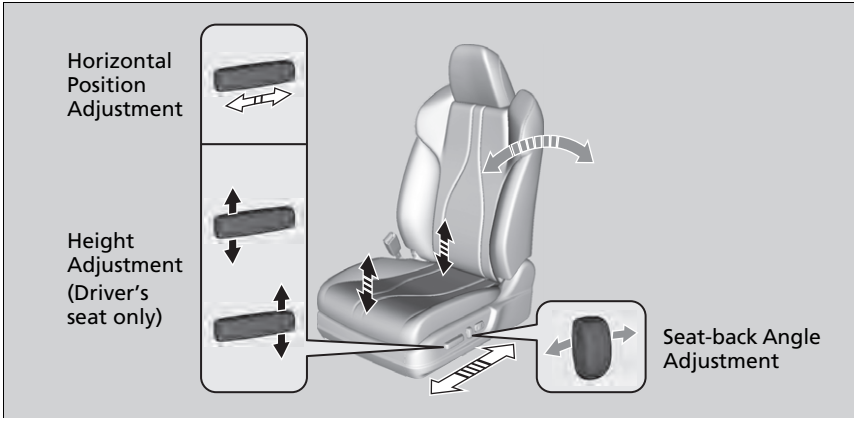
Front Seats



Adjust the driver's seat as far back as possible while allowing you to maintain full control of the vehicle. You should be able to sit upright, well back in the seat and be able to adequately press the pedals without leaning forward, and grip the steering wheel comfortably. The passenger's seat should be adjusted in a similar manner, so that it is as far back from the front airbag in the dashboard as possible.

■ Adjusting the Seat Positions

■ Adjusting the front power seat(s*)



Adjusting the Seats

⚠WARNING

Sitting too close to a front airbag can result in serious injury or death if the front airbags inflate.

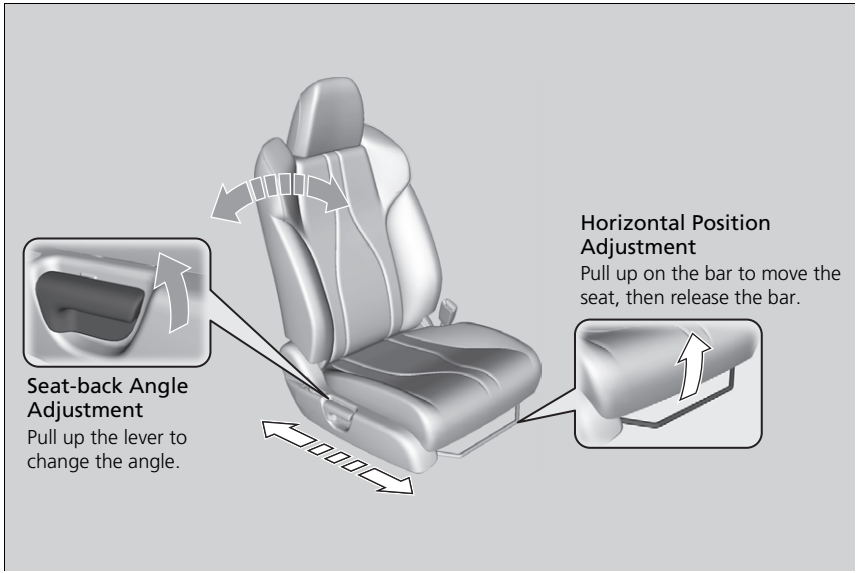
Always sit as far back from the front airbags as possible while maintaining control of the vehicle.

The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration and Transport Canada recommend that drivers allow at least 10 inches (25 cm) between the center of the steering wheel and the chest.

Always make seat adjustments before driving.

* Not available on all models

■ Adjusting the front manual seat*

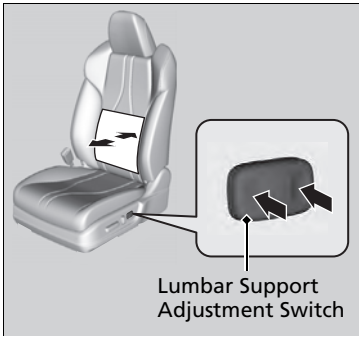


Adjusting the front manual seat*

Once a seat is adjusted correctly, rock it back and forth to make sure it is locked in position.

* Not available on all models

Continued

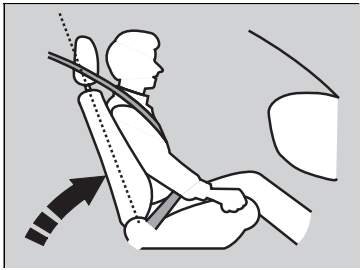


■ **Lumbar Support Adjustment Switch**

Press the front: To increase the entire lumbar support.

Press the rear: To decrease the entire lumbar support.

Adjusting the Seat-Backs



Adjust the driver's seat-back to a comfortable, upright position, leaving ample space between your chest and the airbag cover in the center of the steering wheel.

The front seat passenger should also adjust their seat-back to a comfortable, upright position.

Reclining a seat-back so that the shoulder part of the belt no longer rests against the occupant's chest reduces the protective capability of the belt. It also increases the chance of sliding under the belt in a crash and being seriously injured. The farther a seat-back is reclined, the greater the risk of injury.

Adjusting the Seat-Backs

⚠WARNING

Reclining the seat-back too far can result in serious injury or death in a crash.

Adjust the seat-back to an upright position, and sit well back in the seat.

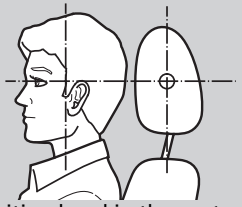
Do not put a cushion, or other object, between the seat-back and your back. Doing so may interfere with proper seat belt or airbag operation.

If you cannot get far enough away from the steering wheel and still reach the controls, we recommend that you investigate whether some type of adaptive equipment may help.

Head Restraints

Your vehicle is equipped with head restraints in all seating positions.

■ Adjusting the Front and Rear Outer Head Restraint Positions



Position head in the center of the head restraint.

Head restraints are most effective for protection against whiplash and other rear-impact crash injuries when the center of the back of the occupant's head rests against the center of the restraint. The tops of the occupant's ears should be level with the center height of the restraint.

Head Restraints

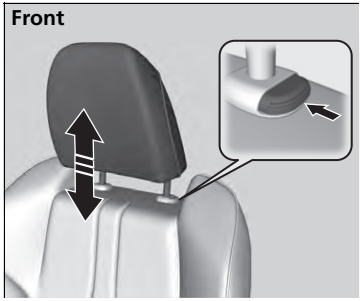
⚠WARNING

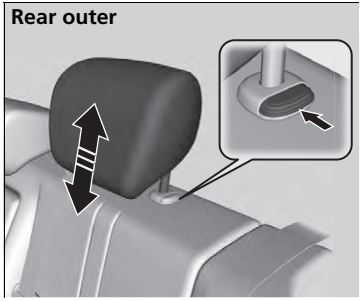
Improperly positioning head restraints reduces their effectiveness and increases the likelihood of serious injury in a crash.

Make sure head restraints are in place and positioned properly before driving.

In order for the head restraint system to work properly:

- Do not hang any items on the head restraints, or from the restraint legs.
- Do not place any objects between an occupant and the seat-back.
- Install each restraint in its proper location.

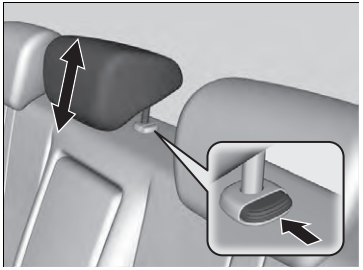




To raise the head restraint: Pull it upward.
To lower the head restraint: Push it down while pressing the release button.

Continued

■ Changing the Rear Center Seat Head Restraint Positions



A passenger sitting in the center back seating position should adjust the height of their head restraint to an appropriate position before the vehicle begins moving.

To raise the head restraint:
Pull it upward.

To lower the head restraint:
Push it down while pressing the release button.

■ Removing and Reinstalling the Head Restraints

Head restraints can be removed for cleaning or repair.

To remove a head restraint:
Pull the restraint up as far as it will go. Then push the release button, and pull the restraint up and out.

To reinstall a head restraint:
Insert the legs back in place, then adjust the head restraint to an appropriate height while pressing the release button. Pull up on the restraint to make sure it is locked in position.

Removing and Reinstalling the Head Restraints

⚠WARNING

Failure to reinstall, or correctly reinstall, the head restraints can result in severe injury during a crash.

Always replace the head restraints before driving.

Maintain a Proper Sitting Position

After all occupants have adjusted their seats and head restraints, and put on their seat belts, it is very important that they continue to sit upright, well back in their seats, with their feet on the floor, until the vehicle is safely parked and the engine is off.

Sitting improperly can increase the chance of injury during a crash. For example, if an occupant slouches, lies down, turns sideways, sits forward, leans forward or sideways, or puts one or both feet up, the chance of injury during a crash is greatly increased.

In addition, an occupant who is out of position in the front seat can be seriously or fatally injured in a crash by striking interior parts of the vehicle or being struck by an inflating front airbag.

Maintain a Proper Sitting Position

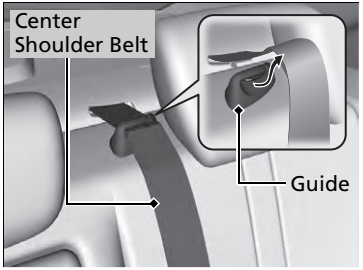
⚠WARNING

Sitting improperly or out of position can result in serious injury or death in a crash.

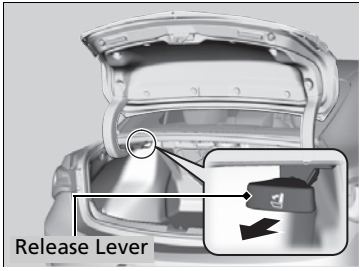
Always sit upright, well back in the seat, with your feet on the floor.

Rear Seat

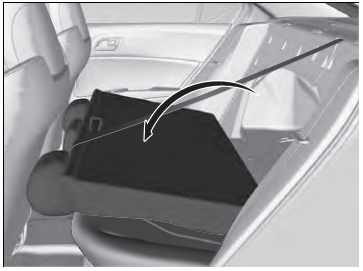
■ Folding Down the Rear Seat



1. Remove the center shoulder belt from the guide.



2. Pull the release lever in the trunk to release the lock.



3. Fold the seat-back down.

If the rear head restraints get caught on the front seat-backs, remove the head restraints.

➡ **Removing and Reinstalling the Head Restraints** P. 160

Folding Down the Rear Seat

The rear seat-backs can be folded down to accommodate bulkier items in the trunk.

Never drive with the seat-back folded down and the trunk lid open.

➡ **Exhaust Gas Hazard** P. 65

To lock the seat-back upright, push it backwards until it locks.
When returning a seat-back to its original position, push it firmly back. Also, make sure all rear shoulder belts are positioned in front of the seat-back, and the center shoulder belt is re-positioned in the guide.

Make sure that the folded seat-back does not press against the front passenger seat, as this can cause the weight sensors in the front passenger seat to work improperly.

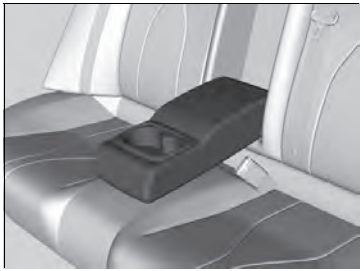
➡ **Passenger Front Airbag Off Indicator** P. 50

Also make sure all items in the trunk or items extending through the opening into the rear seat is properly secured. Loose items can fly forward if you have to brake hard.

The front seat(s) must be far enough forward so they do not interfere with the rear seats as they fold down.

Armrest

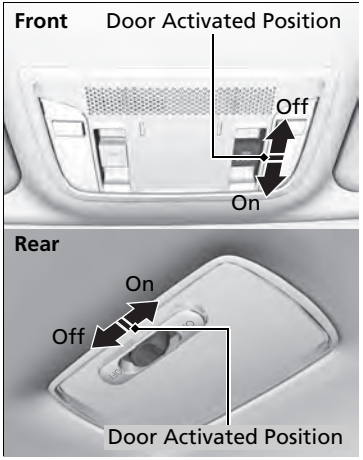
■ Using the Rear Seat Armrest



Pull down the armrest in the center backrest.

Interior Lights

■ Interior Light Switches



■ ON

The interior lights come on regardless of whether the doors are open or closed.

■ Door activated

The interior lights come on in the following situations:

- When any of the doors are opened.
- You unlock the driver's door.
- When the power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).

■ OFF

The interior lights remain off regardless of whether the doors are open or closed.

Interior Light Switches

In the door activated position, the interior lights fade out and go off about 30 seconds after the doors are closed.

The lights go off after about 30 seconds in the following situations:

- When you unlock the driver's door but do not open it.
- When you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) but do not open a door.

You can change the interior lights dimming time.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 95, 310

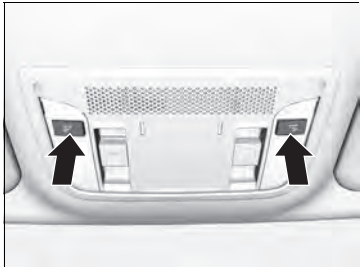
The interior lights go off immediately in the following situations:

- When you lock the driver's door.
- When you close the driver's door in ACCESSORY mode.
- When you set the power mode to ON.

To avoid draining the battery, do not leave the interior light on for an extended length of time when the engine is off.

If you leave any of the doors open in VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) mode, the interior lights go off after about 15 minutes.

Map Lights



The map lights can be turned on and off by pressing the (map light) button.

Map Lights

When the front interior light switch is in the door activated position and any door is open, the map light will not go off when you press the button.

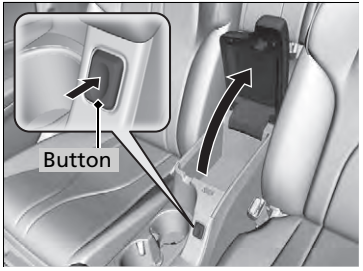
Interior Convenience Items

■ Glove Box



Pull the handle to open the glove box. You can lock the glove box with the built-in key.

■ Console Compartment



Press the button to open the console compartment.

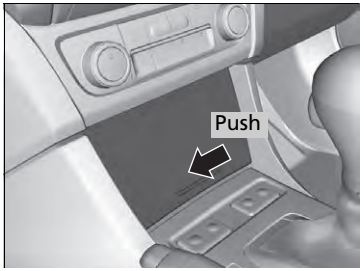
Glove Box

⚠WARNING

An open glove box can cause serious injury to your passenger in a crash, even if the passenger is wearing the seat belt.

Always keep the glove box closed while driving.

■ Center Pocket



Push the lid to open the pocket.

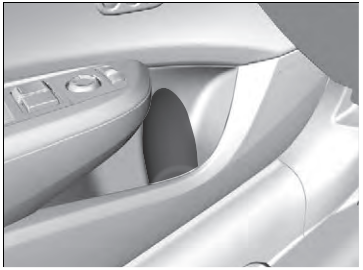
Continued

■ Beverage Holders



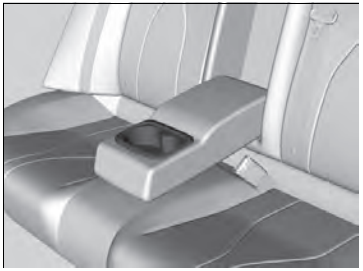
■ Front seat beverage holders

Are located in the console between the front seats.



■ Front door side beverage holders

Are located on the both of the front door side pockets.



■ Rear seat beverage holders

Fold the armrest down to use the rear seat beverage holders.

Beverage Holders

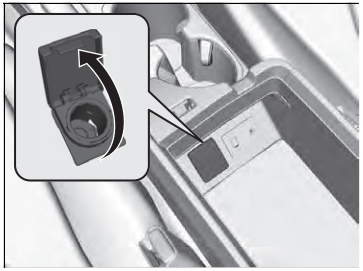
NOTICE

Spilled liquids can damage the upholstery, carpeting, and electrical components in the interior.

Be careful when you are using the beverage holders. Hot liquid can scald you.

■ Accessory Power Socket

The accessory power socket can be used when the power mode is in ACCESSORY or ON.



■ Accessory power socket (console compartment)

Open the console lid and the cover to use it.

Accessory Power Socket

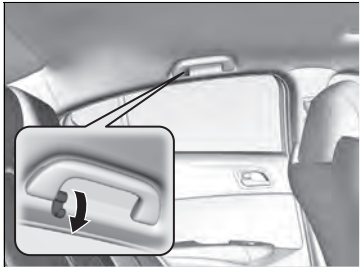
NOTICE

Do not insert an automotive type cigarette lighter element. This can overheat the power socket.

The accessory power socket is designed to supply power for 12-volt DC accessories that are rated 180 watts (15 amps) or less.

To prevent battery drain, only use the power socket with the engine running.

■ Coat Hook



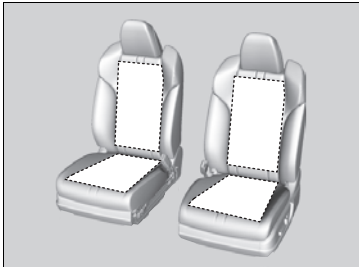
There is a coat hook on the rear left grab handle. Pull it down to use it.

Coat Hook

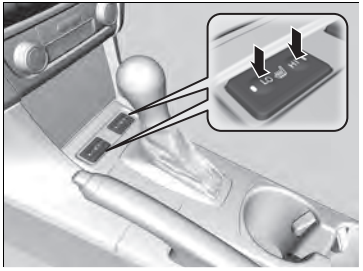
The coat hook is not designed for large or heavy items.

Continued

■ Seat Heaters



The power mode must be in ON to use the seat heaters. The **HI** setting heats the seats faster than the **LO** setting.



While in **HI**, the heater cycles on and off.

▶ The appropriate indicator will be on while the seat heater is on. Briefly press the switch on the opposite side to turn the heater off. The indicator will be off. When a comfortable temperature is reached, select **LO** to keep the seat warm.

Seat Heaters

⚠WARNING

Heat induced burns are possible when using seat heaters.

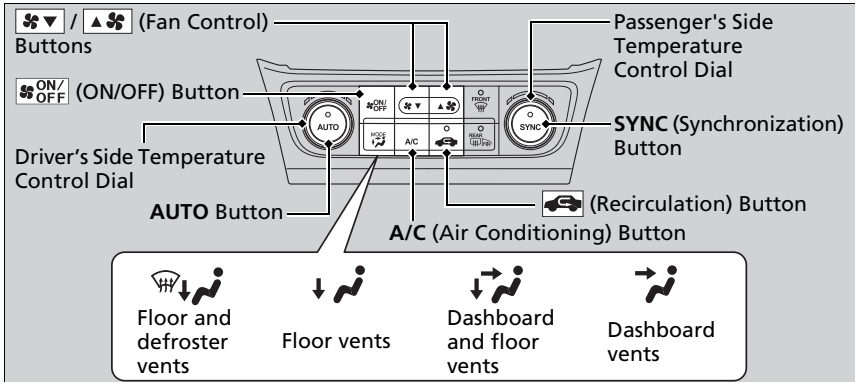
Persons with a diminished ability to sense temperature (e.g., persons with diabetes, lower-limb nerve damage, or paralysis) or with sensitive skin should not use seat heaters.

Do not use the seat heaters even in **LO** when the engine is off. Under such conditions, the battery may be weakened, making the engine difficult to start.

In the **LO** setting, the heater runs continuously and does not automatically turn off.

Using Automatic Climate Control

The automatic climate control system maintains the interior temperature you select. The system also selects the proper mix of heated or cooled air that raises or lowers the interior temperature to your preference as quickly as possible.



Use the system when the engine is running.

1. Press the **AUTO** button.
2. Adjust the interior temperature using the driver's side or passenger's side temperature control dial.
3. Press the ON/OFF (ON/OFF) button to cancel.

■ Switching between the recirculation and fresh air modes

Press the (recirculation) button and switch the mode depending on environmental conditions.

Recirculation Mode (indicator on): Recirculates air from the vehicle's interior through the system.

Fresh Air Mode (indicator off): Maintains outside ventilation. Keep the system in fresh air mode in normal situations.

Continued

Using Automatic Climate Control

If any buttons are pressed while using the climate control system in auto, the function of the button that was pressed will take priority.
The **AUTO** indicator will go off, but functions unrelated to the button that was pressed will be controlled automatically.

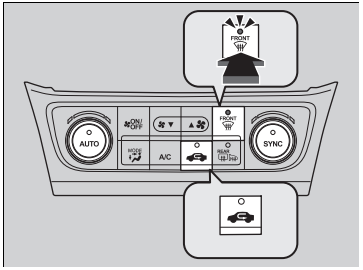
To prevent cold air from blowing in from outside, the fan may not start immediately when the **AUTO** button is pressed.

If the interior is very warm, you can cool it down more rapidly by partially opening the windows, turning the system on auto, and setting the temperature to low. Change the fresh air mode to recirculation mode until the temperature cools down.

When you set the temperature to the lower or upper limit, **Lo** or **Hi** is displayed.

Pressing the ON/OFF button switches the climate control system between on and off. When turned on, the system returns to your last selection.

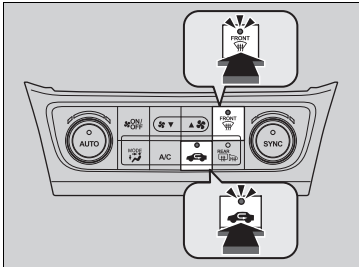
■ Defrosting the Windshield and Windows



Pressing the FRONT button turns the air conditioning system on and automatically switches the system to fresh air mode.

Press the FRONT button again to turn off, the system returns to the previous settings.

■ To rapidly defrost the windows



1. Press the FRONT button.
2. Press the button.

Defrosting the Windshield and Windows

For your safety, make sure you have a clear view through all the windows before driving.

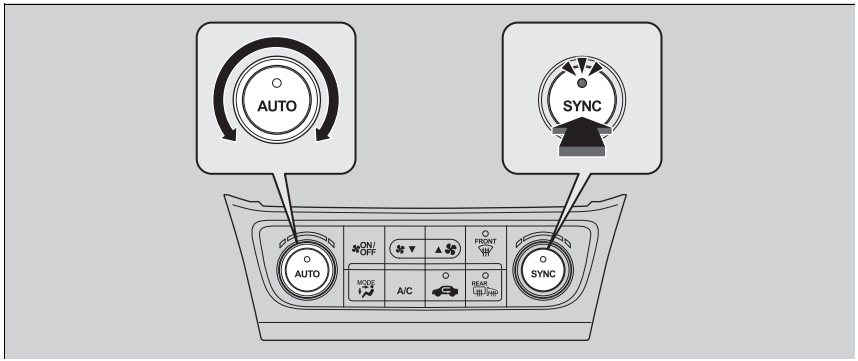
Do not set the temperature near the upper or lower limit.
When cold air hits the windshield, the outside of the windshield may fog up.

If the side windows fog up, adjust the vents so that the air hits the side windows.

To rapidly defrost the windows

After defrosting the windows, switch over to fresh air mode.
If you keep the system in recirculation mode, the windows may fog up from humidity. This impedes visibility.

■ Synchronization Mode



You can set the temperature synchronously for the driver's side and the passenger's side in synchronization mode.

1. Press the **SYNC** button.
▶ The system will switch to the synchronization mode.
2. Adjust the temperature using the driver's side temperature control dial.

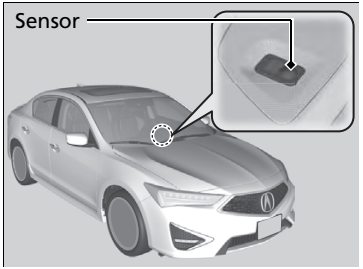
Press the **SYNC** button or adjust the interior temperature using the passenger's side temperature control dial to return to dual mode.

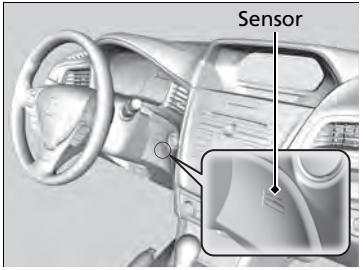
Synchronization Mode

When you press the FRONT button, the system changes to synchronization mode.

When the system is in dual mode, the driver's side temperature and the passenger's side temperature can be set separately.

Automatic Climate Control Sensors





The automatic climate control system is equipped with sensors. Do not cover or spill any liquid on them.



Features

This chapter describes how to operate technology features.

Audio System 176
Auxiliary Input Jack 177
USB Adapter Cable* 178
USB Port* 179
Audio System Theft Protection 180
Audio Remote Controls 181
Models with one display
Audio System Basic Operation 183
Audio/Information Screen 184
Playing AM/FM Radio 190
Playing a CD 192
Playing an iPod 195
Playing Pandora®*1 198
Playing a USB Flash Drive 201
Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio 204
Models with two displays
Audio System Basic Operation 206
On Demand Multi-Use Display™ 207
Information Screen 211
Display Setup 217
Playing AM/FM Radio 221
Playing SiriusXM® Radio 224
Playing a CD 235
Playing Hard Disk Drive (HDD) Audio 238
Playing an iPod 251
Song By Voice™ (SBV) 254
Playing Pandora®*1 258
Playing a USB Flash Drive 260
Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio 263
Siri Eyes Free 265
Apple CarPlay 266
Android Auto 270
Audio Error Messages 275
General Information on the Audio System 286
HomeLink® Universal Transceiver* 336
Customized Features 304, 310
***Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink®** 339, 368
AcuraLink®* 410

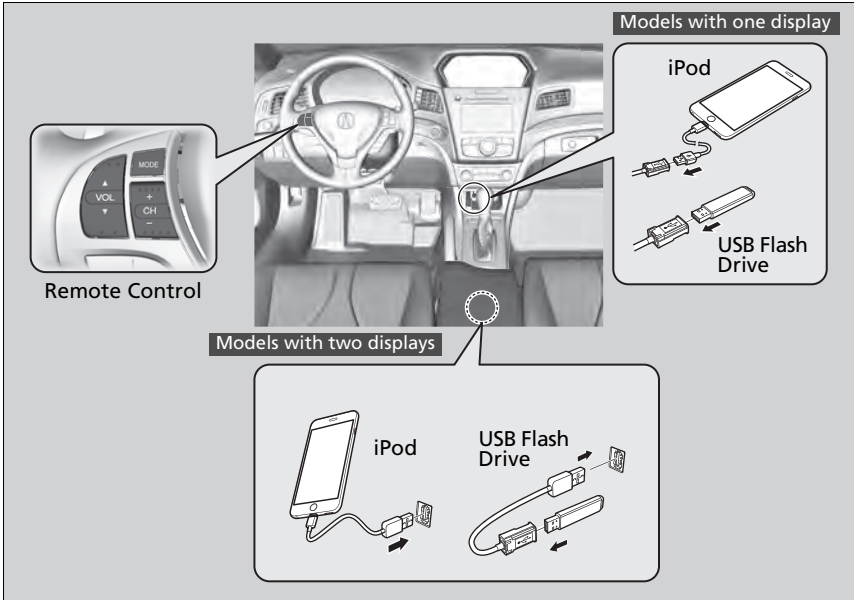
*1: Available only on U.S. models.

* Not available on all models

About Your Audio System

The audio system features AM/FM radio and the SiriusXM® Radio service*. It can also play audio CDs, WMA/MP3/AAC files, Hard Disk Drive (HDD) audio*, USB flash drives, and iPod, iPhone and *Bluetooth*® devices.

You can operate the audio system from the buttons and switches on the panel, the icons on the On Demand Multi-Use Display™, or the remote controls on the steering wheel.



About Your Audio System

SiriusXM® Radio* is available on a subscription basis only.
For more information on SiriusXM® Radio*, contact a dealer.

General Information on the Audio System
P. 286

SiriusXM® Radio* is available in the United States and Canada, except Hawaii, Alaska, and Puerto Rico.

SiriusXM® is a registered trademark of SiriusXM Radio, Inc.

Video CDs, DVDs, and 3-inch (8-cm) mini CDs are not supported.

iPod, iPhone and iTunes are trademarks of Apple Inc.

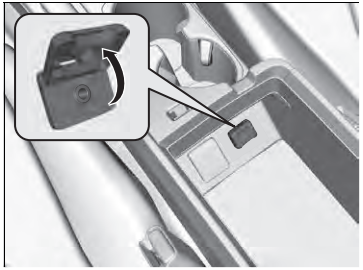
State or local laws may prohibit the operation of handheld electronic devices while operating a vehicle.

* Not available on all models

Auxiliary Input Jack

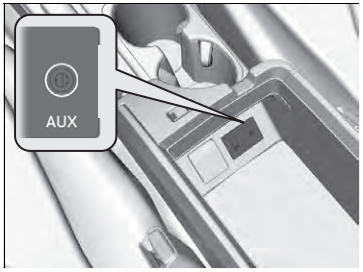
Use the jack to connect standard audio devices.

Models with one display



1. Open the AUX cover.
2. Connect a standard audio device to the input jack using a 1/8 inch (3.5 mm) stereo miniplug.
   ▶ The audio system automatically switches to the AUX mode.

Models with two displays



Connect a standard audio device to the input jack using a 1/8 inch (3.5 mm) stereo miniplug.
▶ The audio system automatically switches to the AUX mode.

Auxiliary Input Jack

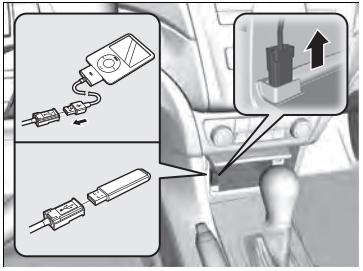
Models with one display

To switch the mode, press any of the audio mode buttons. You can return to the AUX mode by pressing the **AUX** button.

Models with two displays

You can return to the AUX mode by selecting **Source** on the On Demand Multi-Use Display™.

USB Adapter Cable*



1. Unclip the USB connector and loosen the adapter cable.
2. Install the iPod USB connector or the USB flash drive to the USB connector.

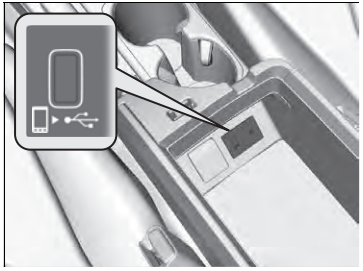
USB Adapter Cable*

- Do not leave the iPod or USB flash drive in the vehicle. Direct sunlight and high temperatures may damage it.
- Do not use an extension cable with the USB adapter cable.
- Do not connect the iPod or USB flash drive using a hub.
- Do not use a device such as a card reader or hard disk drive, as the device or your files may be damaged.
- We recommend backing up your data before using the device in your vehicle.
- Displayed messages may vary depending on the device model and software version.

If the audio system does not recognize the iPod, try reconnecting it a few times or reboot the device. To reboot, follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the iPod or visit *www.apple.com/ipod*.

 * Not available on all models

USB Port*



Install the device USB connector or the USB flash drive to the USB port.

▶ To prevent any potential issues, be sure to use an Apple MFi Certified Lightning Connector for Apple CarPlay, and for Android Auto, the USB cables should be certified by USB-IF to be compliant with USB 2.0 Standard.

USB Port*

- Do not leave the iPod or USB flash drive in the vehicle. Direct sunlight and high temperatures may damage it.
- We recommend using an extension cable with the USB port.
- Do not connect the iPod or USB flash drive using a hub.
- Do not use a device such as a card reader or hard disk drive, as the device or your files may be damaged.
- We recommend backing up your data before using the device in your vehicle.
- Displayed messages may vary depending on the device model and software version.

If the audio system does not recognize the iPod, try reconnecting it a few times or reboot the device. To reboot, follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the iPod or visit *www.apple.com/ipod*.

* Not available on all models

Audio System Theft Protection

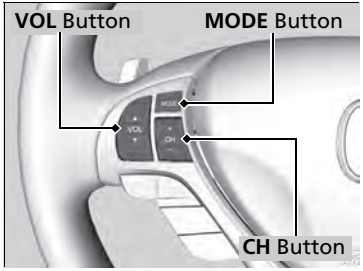
The audio system is disabled when it is disconnected from the power source, such as when the battery is disconnected or goes dead. In certain conditions, the system may display a code entry screen. If this occurs, reactivate the audio system.

■ Reactivating the audio system

1. Set the power mode to ON.
2. Turn on the audio system.
3. Press and hold the audio system power button for more than two seconds.
▶ The audio system is reactivated when the audio control unit establishes a connection with the vehicle control unit. If the control unit fails to recognize the audio unit, you must go to a dealer and have the audio unit checked.

Audio Remote Controls

Allow you to operate the audio system while driving. The information is shown on the multi-information display.



MODE Button

Cycles through the audio modes as follows:

Models with one display

FM1→FM2→AM→CD→AUX

Models with two displays

FM→AM→SiriusXM®→CD→HDD*→ USB/iPod/Apple CarPlay/Android Auto→ *Bluetooth*® Audio→Pandora®*→AUX

VOL (Volume) Button

Press ▲: To Increase the volume.

Press ▼: To decrease the volume.

CH (Channel) Button

- When listening to the radio
  Press +: To select the next preset radio station.
  Press −: To select the previous preset radio station.
  Press and hold +: To select the next strong station.
  To select the next channel. (SiriusXM®* only)
  Press and hold −: To select the previous strong station.
  To select the previous channel. (SiriusXM®* only)
- When listening to a CD, HDD*, iPod, USB flash drive, or *Bluetooth*® Audio
  Press +: To skip to the next song.
  Press −: To go back to the beginning of the current or previous song.
- When listening to a CD, HDD*, USB flash drive, or *Bluetooth*® Audio
  Press and hold +: To skip to the next folder.
  Press and hold −: To go back to the previous folder.

Audio Remote Controls

Some mode appears only when an appropriate device or medium is used.

Depending on the *Bluetooth*® device you connect, some functions may not be operated.

* Not available on all models

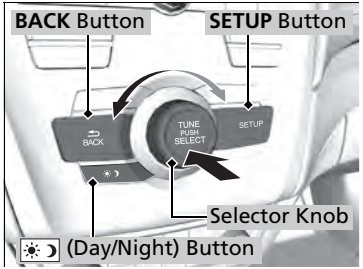
Continued

- When listening to Pandora®*
  Press [+]: To skip to the next track.
  Press and hold [+]: To select the next station.
  Press and hold [−]: To select the previous station.

 * Not available on all models

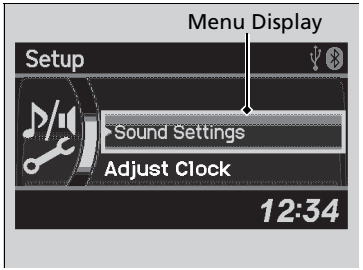
Models with one display

To use the audio system function, the power mode must be in ACCESSORY or ON.



Use the selector knob or **SETUP** button to access some audio functions.

Press to switch between the normal and extended display for some functions.



Selector knob: Rotate left or right to scroll through the available choices. Press to set your selection.

SETUP button: Press to select any mode such as the **RDS Information**, **Sound Settings**, **Play Mode**, **Resume/Pause**, or **Adjust Clock**.

BACK button: Press to go back to the previous display.

(Day/Night) button: Press to change the audio/ information screen brightness. The brightness can be set differently for the day time and night time.

Pressing the button switches the modes between daytime and night time.

Adjust the brightness using .

Audio System Basic Operation

These indications are used to show how to operate the selector knob.

Rotate to select.

Press to enter.

Press the **MODE**, +, −, ▲ or ▼ button on the steering wheel to change any audio setting.

Audio Remote Controls P. 181

Setup Menu Items

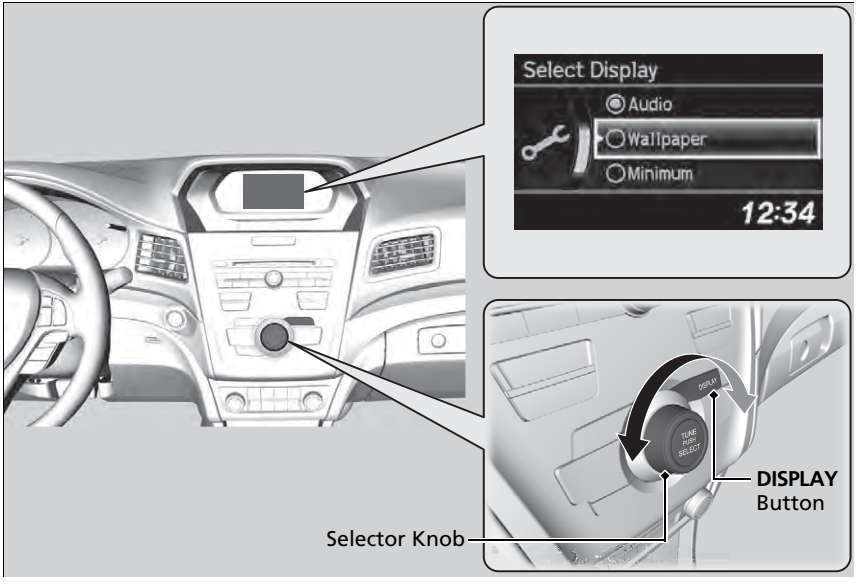
RDS Information P. 191
Sound Settings P. 188
Play Mode P. 194, 197, 203
Resume/Pause P. 205
Adjust Clock P. 106

Audio/Information Screen

Displays the audio status and wallpaper. From this screen, you can go to various setup options.

■ Switching the Display

Press **DISPLAY** button. Rotate and select the mode from the three display modes.
Press .



■ **Audio display**
Shows the current audio information.
Audio System Basic Operation P. 183

■ **Wallpaper**
Shows a clock screen or an image you import.
Wallpaper Setup P. 186

■ **Minimum display**
Minimizes the display by only showing the clock and audio status on the display.

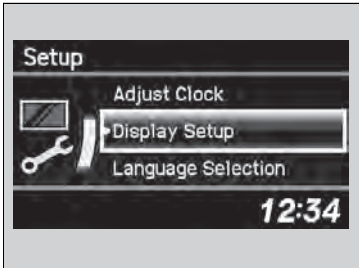
Continued

■ Wallpaper Setup

You can change, store and delete the wallpaper on the audio/information screen.

■ Import wallpaper

You can import up to three images, one at a time, for wallpaper from a USB flash drive.



1. Connect the USB flash drive to the adapter cable.
   USB Adapter Cable* P. 178
2. Press the **SETUP** button.
3. Rotate to select **Display Setup**, then press.
4. Rotate to select **Wallpaper**, then press.
5. Rotate to select **Import**, then press.
6. Rotate to select a desired picture, then press.
   ▶ The preview of the imported data is displayed.

Wallpaper Setup

- When importing wallpaper files, the image must be in the USB flash drive's root directory. Images in a folder cannot be imported.
- The file format of the image that can be imported is BMP (bmp) or JPEG (jpg).
- Each image file can be up to 2 MB.
- The maximum image size is 1,680 x 936 pixels. If the image size is less than 420 x 234 pixels, the image is displayed in the middle of the screen with the extra area appearing in black.
- Up to 255 files can be selected.

If the USB flash drive does not have any pictures, **No compatible images were found. See Owner's Manual.** will appear.

 * Not available on all models



7. Press to save the data.
▶ The confirmation message will appear. Then the display will return to the import wallpaper list.

8. Rotate to select the place to save the data, then press .
▶ The confirmation message will appear.

■ Select wallpaper

1. Rotate to select **Select** on the wallpaper setup menu, then press .
▶ The screen will change to the wallpaper list.

2. Rotate to select desired wallpaper and press .
▶ When the scroll is stopped, the thumbnail is displayed.

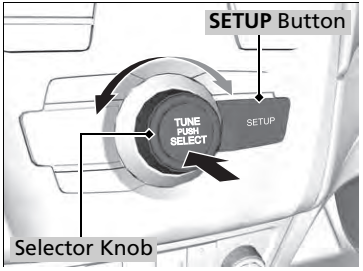
■ Delete wallpaper

1. Rotate to select **Delete** on the wallpaper setup menu, then press .
▶ The screen will change to the delete wallpaper list.

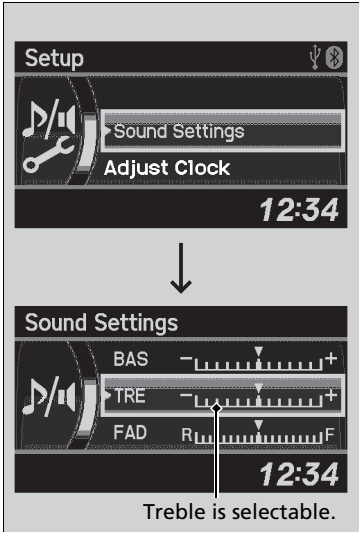
2. Rotate to select wallpaper that you want to delete and press .
▶ The confirmation message will appear.

3. Rotate to select **Yes**, then press to delete completely.

Adjusting the Sound



Press the **SETUP** button, and rotate to select **Sound Settings**, then press . Rotate to scroll through the following choices:



- **BAS** — Bass
- **TRE** — Treble
- **FAD** — Fader
- **BAL** — Balance
- **SVC** — Speed-sensitive Volume Compensation

Adjusting the Sound

The **SVC** has four modes: **Off**, **Low**, **Mid**, and **High**. **SVC** adjusts the volume level based on the vehicle speed. As you go faster, audio volume increases. As you slow down, audio volume decreases.

Display Setup

You can change the brightness or color theme of the audio/information screen.

Changing the Screen Brightness



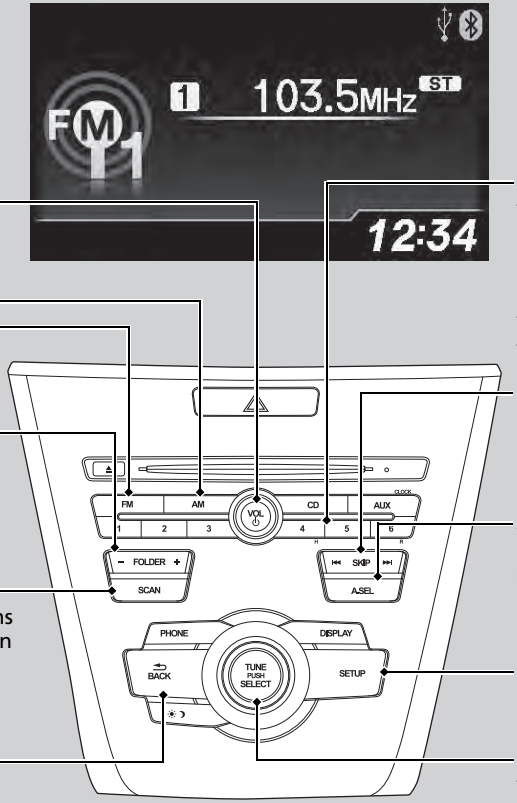
1. Press the **SETUP** button.
2. Rotate to select **Display Setup**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Brightness**, then press .
4. Rotate to adjust the setting, then press .

Changing the Screen's Color Theme



1. Press the **SETUP** button.
2. Rotate to select **Display Setup**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Color Theme**, then press .
4. Rotate to select the setting you want, then press .

Playing AM/FM Radio



VOL/ (Volume/Power) Knob
Press to turn the audio system on and off.
Turn to adjust the volume.

AM Button

FM Button
Press to select a band.

FOLDER Bar
Press either side to display and select an RDS category.

SCAN Button
Press to sample each of the strongest stations on the selected band for 10 seconds. To turn off scan, press the button again.

BACK Button
Press to go back to the previous display.

Preset Buttons (1-6)
To store a station:
1. Tune to the desired station.
2. Pick a preset button and hold it until you hear a beep.

To listen to a stored station, select a band, then press the preset button.

SKIP Bar
Press to search up and down the selected band for a station with a strong signal.

A.SEL (Auto Select) Button
Press to scan both bands and store the strongest station in each preset. To turn off auto select, press the button again. This restores the presets you originally set.

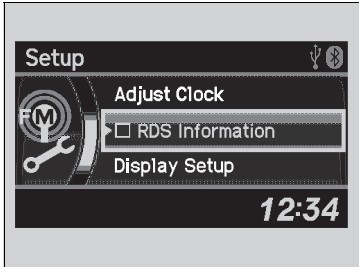
SETUP Button
Press to display menu items.

Selector Knob
Turn to tune the radio frequency.

■ Radio Data System (RDS)

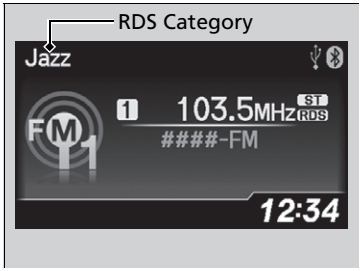
Provides text data information related to your selected RDS-capable FM station.

■ RDS Information



1. Press the **SETUP** button and rotate to select **RDS Information**.
2. Each time you press , the RDS Information switches between on and off.

■ To find an RDS station from your selected program category



1. Press the **FOLDER** bar to display and select an RDS category.
2. Use **SKIP** or **SCAN** to select an RDS station.

Playing AM/FM Radio

The **ST** indicator appears on the display indicating stereo FM broadcasts.
Stereo reproduction in AM is not available.

Switching the Audio Mode
Press the **MODE** button on the steering wheel.
➡ **Audio Remote Controls** P. 181

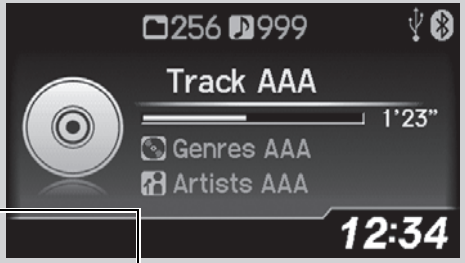
You can store 6 AM stations and 12 FM stations into the preset button memory. FM1 and FM2 let you store 6 stations each.

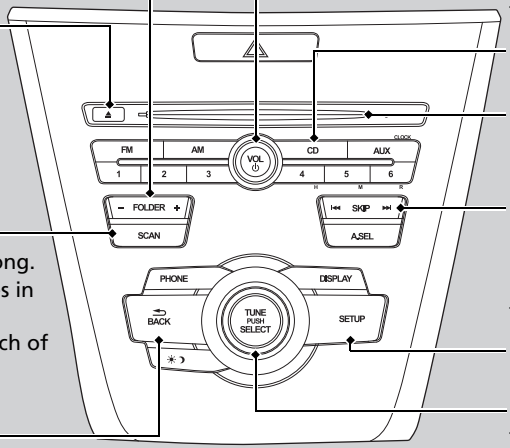
Auto Select function scans and stores up to 6 AM stations and 12 FM stations with a strong signal into the preset button memory.

If you do not like the stations auto select has stored, you can manually store your preferred frequencies.

Playing a CD

Your audio system supports audio CDs, CD-Rs and CD-RWs in either MP3, WMA or AAC format. With the CD loaded, press the **CD** button.





FOLDER Bar
Press + to skip to the next folder, and − to skip to the beginning of the previous folder in MP3, WMA or AAC.

⏏ (CD Eject) Button
Press to eject a CD.

SCAN Button
You will get a 10-second sampling of each song.
- Press to sample all tracks on the CD (all files in the current folder in MP3, WMA or AAC).
- Press and hold to sample the first file in each of the main folders (MP3, WMA or AAC).
- To turn off scan, press the button.

BACK Button
Press to go back to the previous display.

VOL/⏻ (Volume/Power) Knob
Press to turn the audio system on and off.
Turn to adjust the volume.

CD Button
Press to play a CD.

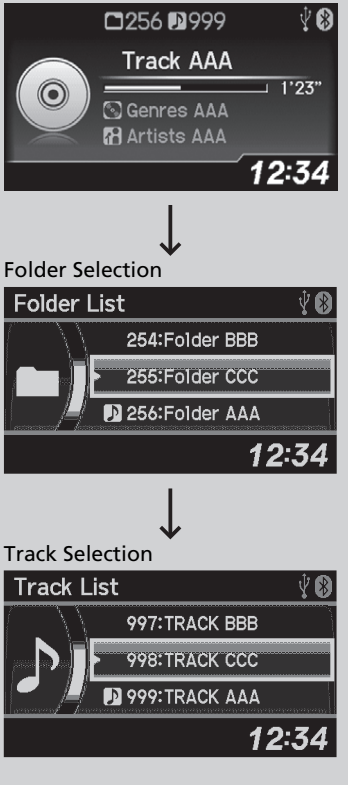
CD Slot
Insert a CD about halfway into the CD slot.

SKIP Bar
Press ⏮ or ⏭ to change tracks (files in MP3, WMA or AAC).
Press and hold to move rapidly within a track/file

SETUP Button
Press to display menu items.

Selector Knob
Turn to change tracks/files. Turn to select an item, then press to set your selection.

How to Select a File from a Folder with the Selector Knob (MP3/WMA/AAC)



1. Press to switch the display to a folder list.

2. Rotate to select a folder.

3. Press to change the display to a list of files in that folder.

4. Rotate to select a file, then press.

Continued

Playing a CD

NOTICE

Do not use CDs with adhesive labels. The label can cause the CD to jam in the unit.

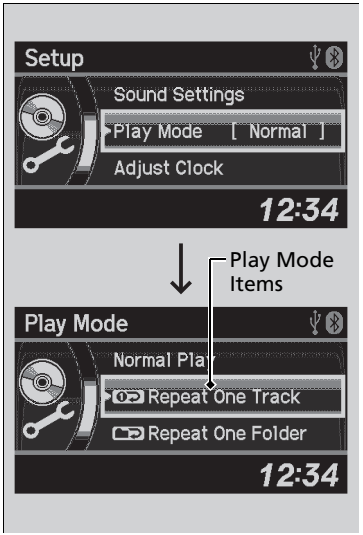
WMA files protected by digital rights management (DRM) cannot be played.
The audio system displays **Unplayable File**, then skips to the next file.

Text data appears on the display under the following circumstances:
- When you select a new folder, file, or track.
- When you change the audio mode to CD.
- When you insert a CD.

If you eject the CD but do not remove it from the slot, the system reloads the CD automatically after several seconds.

■ How to Select a Play Mode

You can select repeat and random modes when playing a track or file.



1. Press the **SETUP** button.

2. Rotate to select **Play Mode**, then press .

3. Rotate to select a mode, then press .

■ To turn off a play mode

1. Press the **SETUP** button.

2. Rotate to select **Play Mode**, then press .

3. Rotate to select **Normal Play**, then press .

How to Select a Play Mode

Press the **BACK** button to go back to the previous display, and press the **SETUP** button to cancel this setting mode.

Play Mode Menu Items

Normal Play

Repeat One Track: Repeats the current track/file(s).

Repeat One Folder (MP3/WMA/AAC): Repeats all files in the current folder.

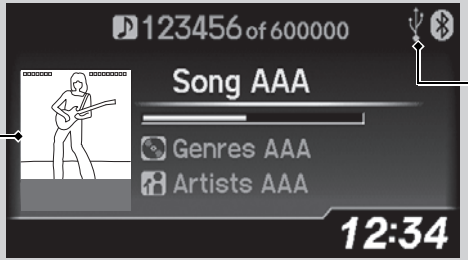
Random in Folder (MP3/WMA/AAC): Plays all files in the current folder in random order.

Random All: Plays all tracks/files in random order.

Playing an iPod

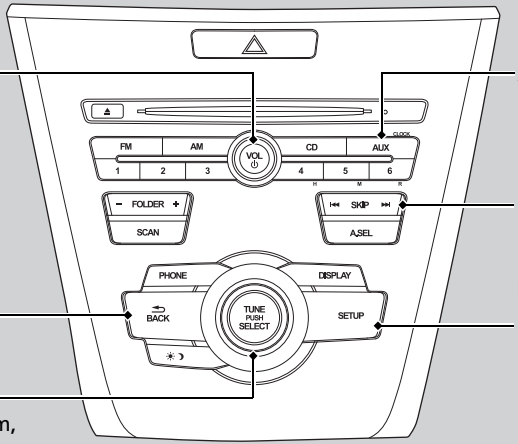
Connect the iPod using your USB connector to the USB adapter cable, then press the **AUX** button.

USB Adapter Cable* P. 178



Album Art

USB Indicator
Appears when an iPod is connected.



VOL/ (Volume/Power) Knob
Press to turn the audio system on and off.
Turn to adjust the volume.

AUX Button
Press to select iPod (if connected).

SKIP Bar
Press ⏮ or ⏭ to change songs.
Press and hold to move rapidly within a song.

BACK Button
Press to go back to the previous display.

SETUP Button
Press to display menu items.

Selector Knob
Turn to change songs. Turn to select an item, then press to set your selection.

* Not available on all models

Continued

How to Select a File from the iPod Menu



1. Press to display the iPod menu.

2. Rotate to select a menu.

3. Press to display the items on that menu.

4. Rotate to select an item, then press.

Playing an iPod

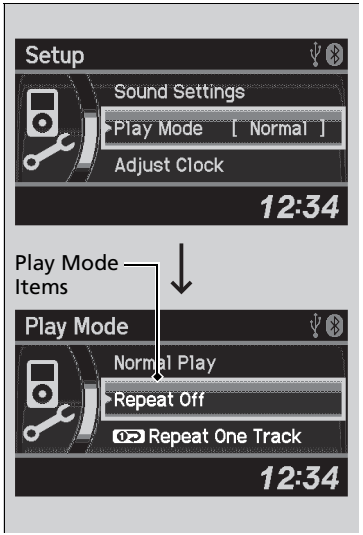
Available operating functions vary on models or versions. Some functions may not be available on the vehicle's audio system.

If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.

iPod/USB Flash Drive P. 278

How to Select a Play Mode

You can select repeat and shuffle modes when playing a file.



1. Press the **SETUP** button.

2. Rotate to select **Play Mode**, then press .

3. Rotate to select a mode, then press .

To turn off a play mode

1. Press the **SETUP** button.

2. Rotate to select **Play Mode**, then press .

3. Rotate to select **Normal Play**, then press .

How to Select a Play Mode

Play Mode Menu Items

Normal Play

Repeat Off: Turns off the repeat mode.

Repeat One Track: Repeats the current track.

Shuffle Off: Turns off the shuffle mode.

Shuffle: Plays all available files in a selected list (playlists, artists, albums, songs, genres, or composers) in random order.

Shuffle Albums: Plays all available albums in a selected list (playlists, artists, albums, songs, genres, or composers) in random order.

iPhone use only

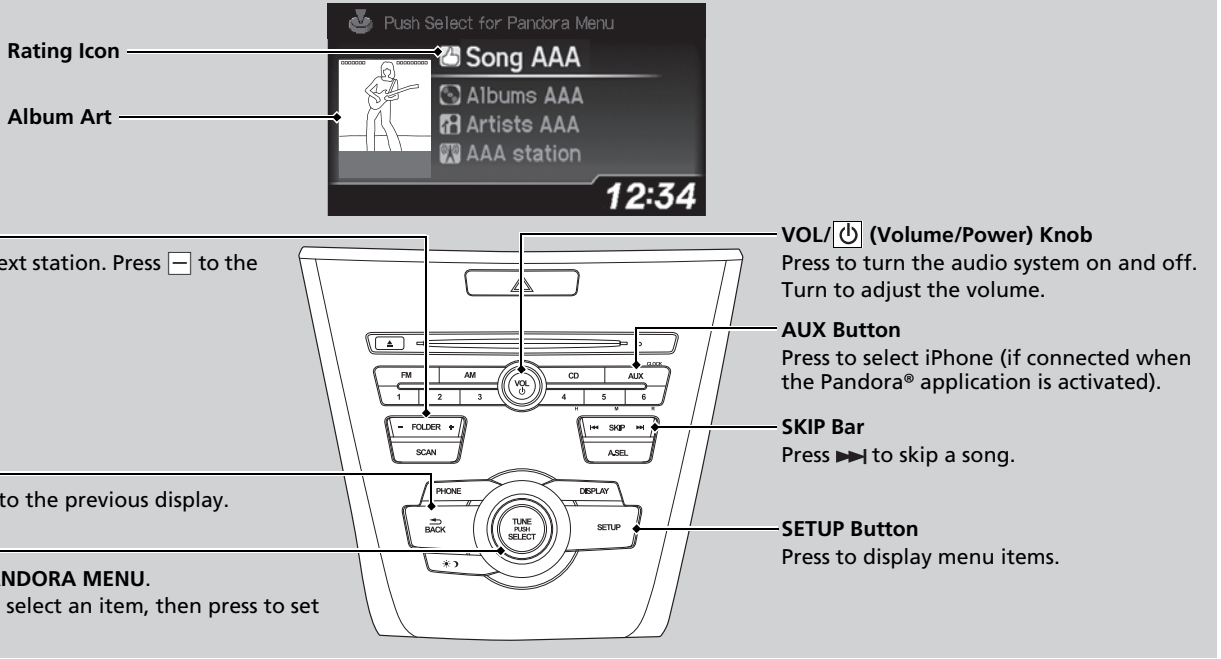
Playing Pandora®*1

Activate Pandora®, and connect the iPhone using your USB connector to the USB adapter cable, then press the **AUX** button.

USB Adapter Cable* P. 178

Playing Pandora®*1

Pandora®, the Pandora logo, and the Pandora trade dress are trademarks or registered trademarks of Pandora Media, Inc., used with permission. Pandora is currently available exclusively in the United States.



*1:Available only on U.S. models.

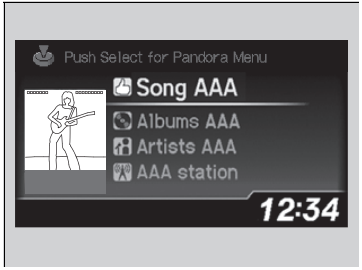
* Not available on all models

■ Pandora® Menu

You can operate some of the Pandora menu items from your vehicle's audio system. The available items are:

- **Station List** (**QuickMix** is also available)
- **Like**
- **Dislike**
- **Resume/Pause**
- **SKIP**
- **Bookmark This Song**
- **Bookmark This Artist**

■ Operating a menu item



1. Press to display the **Pandora Menu**.
2. Rotate to select a menu.
3. Press to display the items on that menu.

Playing Pandora®*1

To find out if your phone is compatible with this feature, visit *www.handsfreelink.com/Acura*, or call 1-888-528-7876.

To use this service in your vehicle, the Pandora® app must first be installed on your phone. Visit *www.pandora.com*. for more information.

Pandora® is free, personalized radio that plays music and comedy you'll love. Just start with the name of one of your favorite artists, songs, comedians or composers and Pandora® will create a custom station that plays similar tracks. Pandora® also features hundreds of genre stations ranging from Dubstep to Smooth Jazz to Power Workout.

If you cannot operate Pandora® through the audio system, it may be streaming through *Bluetooth*® Audio. Make sure Pandora® mode on your audio system is selected.

Continued

Pandora® Menu

Available operating functions vary on software versions. Some functions may not be available on the vehicle's audio system.

If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.

Pandora® P. 281

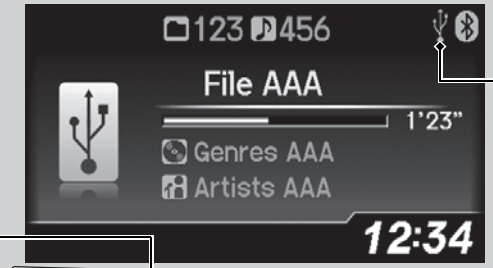
Pandora® may limit the total number of skips allowed on the service. If you dislike a track after the skip limit has been reached, your feedback will be saved but the current track will continue to play.

Playing a USB Flash Drive

Your audio system reads and plays sound files on a USB flash drive in either MP3, WMA or AAC*1 format.

Connect your USB flash drive to the USB adapter cable, then press the **AUX** button.

USB Adapter Cable* P. 178



USB Indicator
Appears when a USB flash drive is connected.

FOLDER Bar
Press + to skip to the next folder, and − to skip to the beginning of the previous folder.

VOL/⏻ (Volume/Power) Knob
Press to turn the audio system on and off.
Turn to adjust the volume.

AUX Button
Press to select USB flash drive (if connected).

SKIP Bar
Press ⏮ or ⏭ to change files.
Press and hold to move rapidly within a file.

SCAN Button
You will get a 10-second sampling of each file.
- Press to sample all files in the current folder.
- Press and hold to sample the first file in each of the main folders.
- To turn off scan, press the button.

SETUP Button
Press to display menu items.

BACK Button
Press to go back to the previous display.

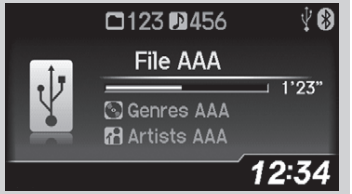
Selector Knob
Press and turn to select a file, then press to set your selection.

*1:Only AAC format files recorded with iTunes are playable on this unit.

* Not available on all models

Continued

How to Select a File from a Folder with the Selector Knob



Folder Selection



Track Selection



1. Press to switch the display to a folder list.

2. Rotate to select a folder.

3. Press to change the display to a list of files in that folder.

4. Rotate to select a file, then press.

Playing a USB Flash Drive

Use the recommended USB flash drives.

➡ **General Information on the Audio System** P. 286

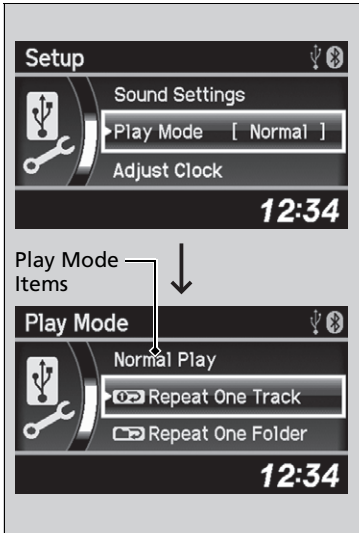
WMA files protected by digital rights management (DRM) cannot be played.
The audio system displays **Unplayable File**, then skips to the next file.

If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.

➡ **iPod/USB Flash Drive** P. 278

How to Select a Play Mode

You can select repeat and random modes when playing a file(s).



1. Press the **SETUP** button.

2. Rotate to select **Play Mode**, then press .

3. Rotate to select a mode, then press .

To turn off a play mode

1. Press the **SETUP** button.

2. Rotate to select **Play Mode**, then press .

3. Rotate to select **Normal Play**, then press .

How to Select a Play Mode

Play Mode Menu Items

Normal Play

Repeat One Track: Repeats the current file.

Repeat One Folder: Repeats all files in the current folder.

Random in Folder: Plays all files in the current folder in random order.

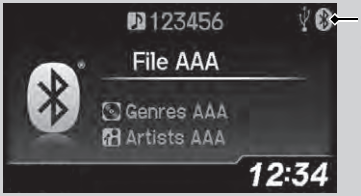
Random All: Plays all files in random order.

Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio

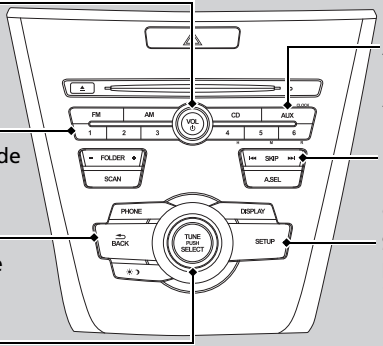
Your audio system allows you to listen to music from your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone.

This function is available when the phone is paired and linked to the vehicle's *Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink® (HFL) system.

Phone Setup P. 346



Bluetooth Indicator
Comes on when your phone is connected to HFL.



VOL/ (Volume/Power) Knob
Press to turn the audio system on and off.

Preset 1 Button
Press to switch the mode between pause and resume.

BACK Button
Press to go back to the previous display.

Selector Knob
Turn to change files.
Turn to select an item, then press to set your selection.
Press to display the device's name.

AUX Button
Press to *Bluetooth*® Audio.

SKIP Bar
Press ⏮ or ⏭ to change files.

SETUP Button
Press to display menu items.

Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio

Not all Bluetooth-enabled phones with streaming audio capabilities are compatible with the system. For a list of compatible phones:

- U.S.: Visit *www.handsfreelink.com/Acura*, or call 1-888-528-7876.
- Canada: For more information on smartphone compatibility, call 1-855-490-7351.

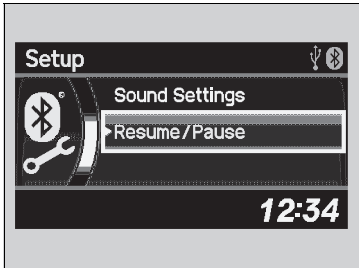
In some states, it may be illegal to perform some data device functions while driving.

If more than one phone is paired to the HFL system, there will be a delay before the system begins to play.

In some cases, the name of the artist, album, or track may not appear correctly.

Some functions may not be available on some devices.

To Play *Bluetooth*® Audio Files



1. Make sure that your phone is paired and linked to HFL.
2. Press the **AUX** button.

If the phone is not recognized, another HFL-compatible phone, which is not compatible for *Bluetooth*® Audio, may already be connected.

To pause or resume a file

1. Press the **SETUP** button.
2. Rotate to select **Resume/Pause**, then press.
Each time you press, the setting switches between pause and resume.

To Play *Bluetooth*® Audio Files

To play the audio files, you may need to operate your phone. If so, follow the phone maker's operating instructions.

The pause function may not be available on some phones.

If any audio device is connected to the auxiliary input jack, you may need to press the **AUX** button repeatedly to select the *Bluetooth*® Audio system.

Switching to another mode pauses the music playing from your phone.

Models with two displays

To use the audio system, the power mode must be in ACCESSORY or ON.



Use the interface dial or **ENTER/MENU** button to access phone, information or smartphone functions.

Interface dial (ENTER/MENU button):
Rotate left or right to scroll through the available choices. Press to set your selection. Move right, left, up or down to select a secondary menu.
Press to switch the display to the **Information Menu** screen while the trip computer screen or clock/wallpaper screen is displayed.

BACK button: Press to go back to the previous display.

(Day/Night) button: Press to change the information screen brightness.
Press once and make an adjustment using the interface dial.

▶ Each time you press , the mode switches between the daytime mode, nighttime mode and off mode.

Audio System Basic Operation

Voice Control System*
The navigation/audio system is voice operable.
Voice Control Operation P. 218

These indications are used to show how to operate the interface dial.
Rotate to select.
Press to enter.
Move , , or to select a secondary menu.

Audio function items
Preset Memory P. 222, 226
Radio Text P. 223
Music Search P. 236, 240, 252, 261
Scan P. 223, 234, 237, 241, 262
Random/Repeat P. 237, 242, 253, 262

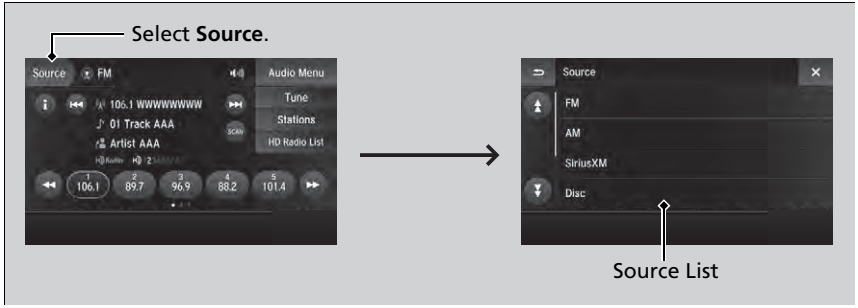
When you unlock the doors with your remote, the driver's ID (**Driver 1** or **Driver 2**) is detected, and the audio system settings and preset memory are turned to the respective mode automatically when you set the power mode to ON.

* Not available on all models

On Demand Multi-Use Display™

Use the On Demand Multi-Use Display™ to operate the audio system.

■ Selecting an Audio Source



Select **Source**, then select an item on the source list to switch the audio source.

On Demand Multi-Use Display™

Icons that appear on the screen vary by the source selected.

Select [↩] or [X] to go back to the previous screen.

Use the [▲▲]/[▼▼] icons to turn the page.

Selecting an Audio Source

You can change the order of source list displayed.

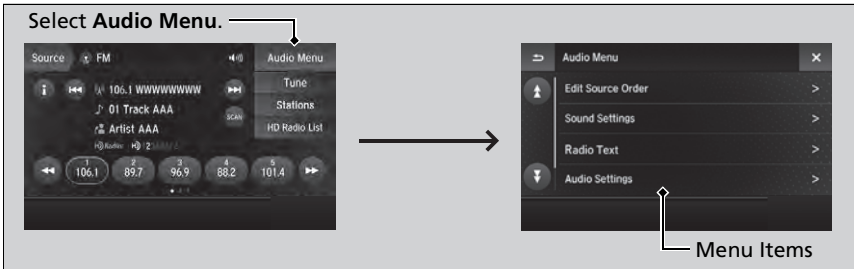


1. Select **Audio Menu**, then **Edit Source Order**.
2. Select [▲] or [▼].

You can also change the source order by pressing and holding the source on the source list for two seconds.

Continued

■ Displaying the Menu Items



Select **Audio Menu** to display the menu items.

The following items are available:

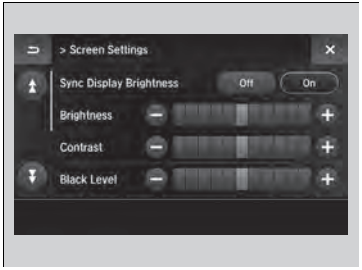
- **Edit Source Order**: Displays the **Edit Source Order** screen.
  ➡ **Selecting an Audio Source** P. 207
- **Sound Settings**: Displays the **Sound Settings** screen.
  ➡ **Adjusting the Sound** P. 216
- **Edit/Delete HDD Music** (HDD mode)*: Displays the **Edit/Delete HDD Music** screen.
  ➡ **Editing an Album or Playlist** P. 244
- **Radio Text** (FM mode): Displays the text information broadcast by the current RDS station.
  ➡ **Radio text** P. 223

 * Not available on all models

- **SportsFlash** (SiriusXM® mode): Displays the SportsFlash™ list. If the favorite sport team is not registered, the setup screen of SportsFlash™ is displayed.
  ➡ **Live Sports Alert** P. 230
  ➡ **Customized Features** P. 310
- **Traffic & Weather Now** (SiriusXM® mode): Displays to the Traffic & Weather Now screen.
  ➡ **Traffic and Weather Information** P. 232
- **View Channel Schedule** (SiriusXM® mode): Displays the SiriusXM® channel schedule.
- **Audio Settings**: Displays the **Audio Settings** screen.
  ➡ **Customized Features** P. 310
- **Screen Settings**: Displays the **Screen Settings** screen.
  ➡ **Changing the Screen Settings** P. 210

Continued

■ Changing the Screen Settings



1. Select **Audio Menu**, then select **Screen Settings**.
2. Use +, − or other icons to adjust the setting.

Changing the Screen Settings

The following are adjustable screen settings:

- **Sync Display Brightness**
  Selects whether the screen brightness synchronizes with the instruments panel brightness.
- **Brightness**
- **Contrast**
- **Black Level**
- **Beep**
  Mutes a beep that sounds every time you touch the screen.
- **Keyboard**
  Changes the on-screen keyboard from the alphabetical order to the qwerty type.

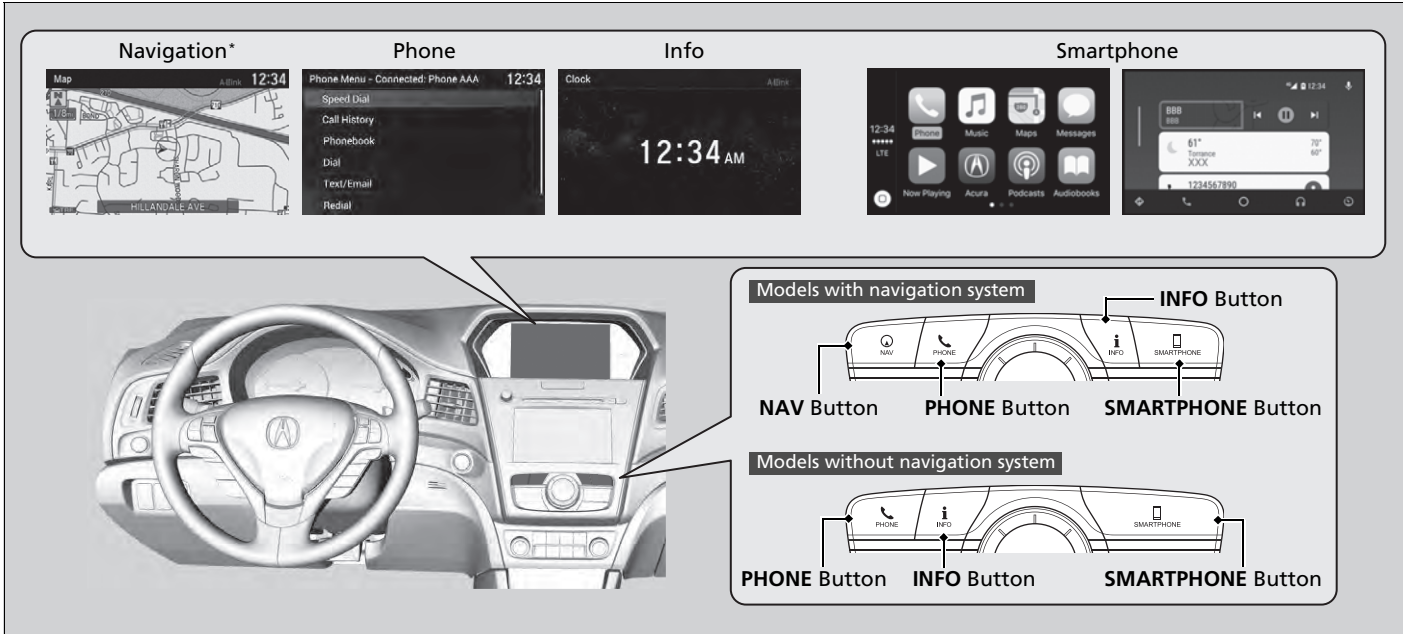
Instead of using +, − or icons, you can also touch the point where your desired setting is.

Information Screen

Displays the navigation*, HFL information, clock/wallpaper, trip computer, Apple CarPlay and Android Auto. From this screen, you can go to various setup options.

■ Switching the Display

Press the **NAV***, **PHONE**, **INFO** and **SMARTPHONE** buttons to go to the corresponding display.



* Not available on all models

Continued

■ **Navigation***
Shows the navigation screen.
➡ **Refer to the Navigation System Manual**

■ **Phone**
Shows the HFL information.
➡ ***Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink®** P. 368

■ **Info**
Shows the **AcuraLink/Messages***, **Trip Computer**, **Clock**, **Traffic Incidents*** or **Voice Recognition Guide***. Press ⟲ or **INFO** button to display the **Information Menu** screen.

AcuraLink/Messages*:
Shows a AcuraLink® message menu list.
➡ **AcuraLink®*** P. 410

Trip Computer:
Current Drive
Shows the range and instant and average fuel economy of the current trip, as well as the average fuel economy from your last trip.

History of Trip A
Shows the range, average fuel economy and distances traveled for the current trip, as well as the average fuel economy and distances traveled during the last three driving cycles.
Each time you reset the trip meter A, the information on the display updates. The history of the previous three driving cycles is kept.

 * Not available on all models

Deleting the history manually

1. Press ⟲ on the **History of Trip A** screen to select **Delete History**.

2. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Rotate ⟲ to select **Yes**, then press ⟲.

Clock:

Shows a clock screen and an image you import.

Traffic Incidents*:

Shows a traffic incidents list.

➡ **Refer to the Navigation System Manual**

Voice Recognition Guide*:

Shows a voice recognition guide screen.

■ **Smartphone**

Displays the Apple CarPlay or Android Auto.

➡ **Apple CarPlay** P. 266

➡ **Android Auto** P. 270

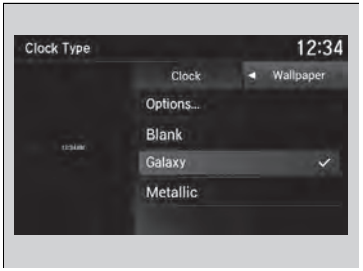
* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Wallpaper Setup

You can change, store, and delete the wallpaper on the information screen.

■ Import wallpaper



1. Connect the USB flash drive to the USB port.
USB Port* P. 179

2. Press the **SETTINGS** button.

3. Rotate ⟲ to select **Clock Settings**, then press ⊙.
▶ Repeat the procedure to select **Clock/ Wallpaper Type**.

4. Move ○▷ to select **Wallpaper** tab.
▶ The screen will change to the wallpaper list.

5. Rotate ⟲ to select **Options...**, then press ⊙.
▶ Repeat the procedure to select, **Add New Wallpaper**.



6. Rotate ⟲ to select a desired picture.
▶ The preview is displayed on the left side on the screen.

7. Rotate ⟲ to select **Start Import**, then press ⊙ to save the data.
▶ The display will return to the wallpaper list.

Wallpaper Setup

Models without navigation system

- When importing wallpaper files, the image must be in the USB flash drive's root directory. Images in a folder cannot be imported.
- The file name must be fewer than 255 characters.
- The file format of the image that can be imported is BMP (bmp) or JPEG (jpg).
- The individual file size limit is 2 MB.
- The maximum image size is 1,680 x 936 pixels.
- Up to three files can be saved.
- If the USB flash drive does not have any pictures, the **No files detected** message appears.

Models with navigation system

- When importing wallpaper files, the image must be in the USB flash drive's root directory. Images in a folder cannot be imported.
- The file name must be fewer than 210 characters.
- The file format of the image that can be imported is BMP (bmp) or JPEG (jpg).
- The individual file size limit is 10 MB.
- The maximum image size is 5,800 x 5,800 pixels.
- Up to 10 files can be saved for each driver (Driver 1 and Driver 2).
- If the USB flash drive does not have any pictures, the **No files detected** message appears.

* Not available on all models

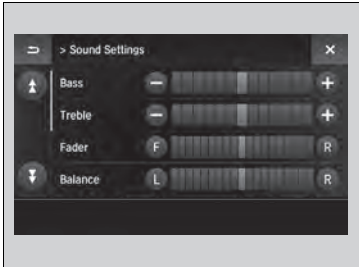
■ **Select wallpaper**

1. Press the **SETTINGS** button.
2. Rotate to select **Clock Settings**, then press .
▶ Repeat the procedure to select **Clock/Wallpaper Type**.
3. Move to select **Wallpaper**.
▶ The screen changes to the wallpaper list.
4. Rotate to select a desired wallpaper, then press .
▶ The preview is displayed on the left side on the screen.
▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
5. Rotate to select **Set**, then press .
▶ The display will return to the **Clock Settings** screen.

■ **Delete wallpaper**

1. Press the **SETTINGS** button.
2. Rotate to select **Clock Settings**, then press .
▶ Repeat the procedure to select **Clock/Wallpaper Type**.
3. Move to select **Wallpaper**.
▶ The screen changes to the wallpaper list.
4. Rotate to select a wallpaper that you want to delete, then press .
▶ The preview is displayed on the left side on the screen.
▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
5. Rotate to select **Delete**, then press .
▶ The confirmation message will appear.
6. Rotate to select **Yes**, then press to delete completely.
▶ The display will return to the wallpaper list.

Adjusting the Sound



1. Select **Audio Menu**, then select **Sound Settings**.
2. Select the **Bass**, **Treble**, **Fader**, **Balance**, **Center***, **Subwoofer**, **SVC** (Speed-sensitive Volume Compensation) or **DTS Neural Surround***.
3. Use [+], [−] or other icons to adjust the setting.

Adjusting the Sound

The SVC has four modes: **Off**, **Low**, **Mid**, and **High**. SVC adjusts the volume level based on the vehicle speed. As you go faster, audio volume increases. As you slow down, audio volume decreases.

DTS Neural Surround is a trademark of DTS, Inc.

Instead of using [+], [−] or icons, you can also touch the point where your desired setting is.

 * Not available on all models

Display Setup

You can change the brightness of the information screen and On Demand Multi-Use Display™.

■ Changing the Screen Brightness

Information Screen



1. Press the **SETTINGS** button.
2. Rotate ⟲ to select **System Settings**, then press ⊛.
3. Rotate ⟲ to select **Brightness**, then press ⊛.
4. Rotate ⟲ to adjust the setting.
5. Press ⊛.
   ▶ The display will return to the **System Settings** screen.

On Demand Multi-Use Display™



1. Select **Audio Menu**, then select **Screen Settings**.
2. Use +, − to adjust the setting.

Changing the Screen Brightness

You can change the **Contrast** and **Black Level** settings in the same manner.

Models with navigation system

Voice Control Operation

Your vehicle has a voice control system that allows hands-free operation.
The voice control system uses the (Talk) and (hang-up/back) buttons on the steering wheel and a microphone near the map lights in the ceiling.

■ Voice Recognition

To achieve optimum voice recognition when using the voice control system:

- Make sure the correct screen is displayed for the voice command that you are using.
  The system recognizes only certain commands.
  Available voice command P. 219
- Close the windows and moonroof.
- Adjust the dashboard and side vents so air does not blow onto the microphone in the ceiling.
- Speak clearly in a natural speaking voice without pausing between words.
- Reduce any background noise if possible. The system may misinterpret your command if more than one person is speaking at the same time.

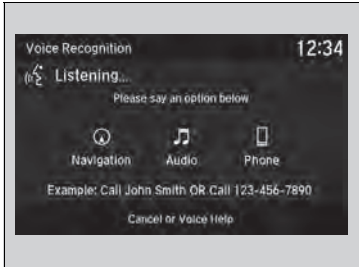
Voice Control Operation

When you press the button, a helpful prompt asks what you would like to do. Press and release the button again to bypass this prompt and give a command.

Voice Recognition

The voice control system can only be used from the driver's seat because the microphone unit removes noises from the front passenger's side.

Voice Portal Screen



When the (Talk) button is pressed, available voice commands appear on the screen.
For a complete list of commands, say "*Voice Help*" after the beep.

The system only recognizes the commands on the following pages, at certain screens. Free form voice commands are not recognized.

Navigation

Refer to the Navigation System Manual

Audio

When the system recognizes the Audio command, the screen will change the dedicated screen for the voice recognition of the audio.

- *Tune to FM <87.7-107.9>*
- *Tune to AM <530-1710>*
- *SiriusXM Channel <0-999>*
- *SXM Channel <0-999>*
- *More*
- *Back*
- *Cancel*
- *Play Artist <Artist>*
- *Play <Artist>*
- *Play Album <Album>*
- *Play <Album>*
- *Play Song <Song>*
- *Play <Song>*
- *Play Composer <Composer>*
- *Play <Composer>*
- *Play Genre <Genre>*
- *Play <Genre>*
- *Play Playlist <Playlist>*
- *Play <Playlist>*
- *List Artist <Artist>*
- *List <Artist>*
- *List Album <Album>*
- *List <Album>*
- *List Composer <Composer>*
- *List <Composer>*
- *List Genre <Genre>*
- *List <Genre>*
- *List Playlist <Playlist>*
- *List <Playlist>*

Continued

■ Phone

This can be only used when the phone is connected. When the system recognizes the Phone command, the screen will change the dedicated screen for the voice recognition of the phone.

- *Dial by Number*
- *Redial*
- *Back*
- *Cancel*
- *Call <Your Contact Name>*
- *Dial <Your Contact Name>*
- *Call <Your Contact Name> <Type>*
- *Dial <Your Contact Name> <Type>*
- *Call <Voice Tag>*
- *Dial <Voice Tag>*

Phone commands are not available if using Apple CarPlay.

■ Voice Help

You can see a list of the available commands on the screen.

- *Phone Commands*
- *Audio Commands*
- *Navigation Commands*
- *Voice Settings*
- *Voice Recognition Guide*

Playing AM/FM Radio

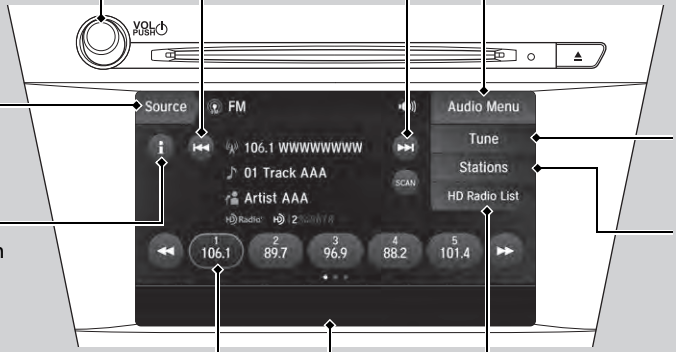
Skip/Seek Icons
Select |◀◀ or ▶▶| to search up and down the selected band for a station with a strong signal.

VOL/⏻ (Volume/Power) Knob
Press to turn the audio system on and off.
Turn to adjust the volume.

Source
Select to change a band or change an audio source.

ⓘ (Information) Icon
Select to display the current station details.
Select ⮌ to display the previous screen.

Preset Icons
Tune the preset radio frequency. Select and hold the preset icon to store that station.
Select ◀◀ or ▶▶ to display preset 6 onwards.



Audio Menu
Select to display the menu items.

Tune
Select to display the manual input screen of radio frequency.

Stations
Select to display the station list screen.

Models with HD Radio™ feature

HD Radio List
Select to display the sub-channel list screen.

On Demand Multi-Use Display™

Continued

■ Preset Memory

To store a station:
1. Tune to the selected station.
2. Select and hold the preset number you want to store that station.

■ Radio Data System (RDS)

Provides text data information related to your selected RDS-capable FM station.

■ To find an RDS station from Station List

1. Select **Stations**.
2. Select station on the list.

■ Manual update

Updates your available station list at any time.
1. Select **Stations**.
2. Select **Refresh** on the list.

Playing AM/FM Radio

You can control the AM/FM radio using voice commands*.
➡ **Voice Control Operation** P. 218

The **ST** indicator appears on the display indicating stereo FM broadcasts.
Stereo reproduction in AM is not available.

Switching the Audio Mode
Press the **MODE** button on the steering wheel.
➡ **Audio Remote Controls** P. 181

You can store 6 AM stations and 12 FM stations into the preset memory.

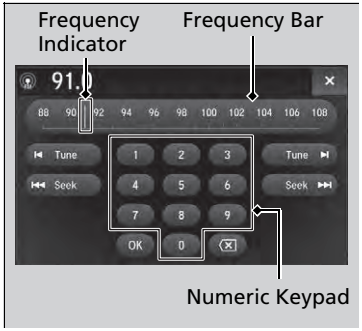
Models with HD Radio™ feature

HD Radio Technology manufactured under license from iBiquity Digital Corporation. U.S. and Foreign Patents. HD Radio™ and the HD, HD Radio, and "Arc" logos are proprietary trademarks of iBiquity Digital Corp.



 * Not available on all models

■ Radio frequency manual tune screen



1. Select **Tune**.
2. Enter the desired radio frequency using the numeric keypad.
3. Select **OK** to tune into the frequency.

You can also tune into the radio frequency of your choice following the procedures below instead of inputting its frequency value.
1. Touch the desired frequency value on the frequency bar.
2. Select and hold the frequency indicator, then slide it to the desired frequency value on the frequency bar.

Radio frequency manual tune screen

You can tune the range of FM frequency between 87.7 to 107.9MHz and range of AM frequency between 530 to 1710kHz.

Tune icons:
Select |◀ or ▶| to tune the radio frequency.

Seek icons:
Select |◀◀ or ▶▶| to search the selected band up or down for a station with a strong signal.

■ Radio text

Display the radio text information of the selected RDS station.
1. Select **Audio Menu**.
2. Select **Radio Text**.

Radio text

The text indicator comes on when you received a text message. The indicator stays on until you read the message.

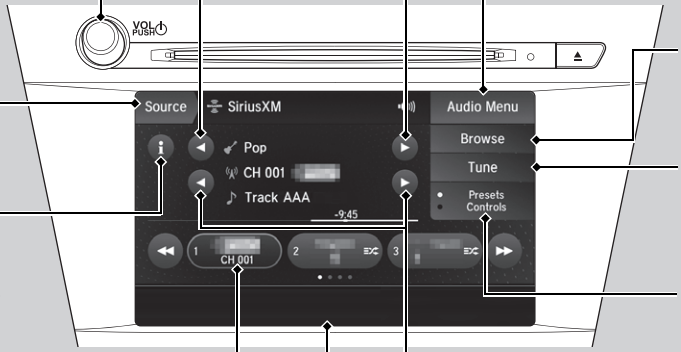
The radio text information is not updated automatically. If you want to display the latest information, return to the previous screen and select **Radio Text** again.

■ Scan

Samples each of the strongest stations on the selected band for 10 seconds.

Select **SCAN**.
To turn off scan, select **Stop Scan**.

Playing SiriusXM® Radio



Category Up/Down Icons
Select ◀ or ▶ to display and select a SiriusXM® Radio category.

VOL/⏻ (Volume/Power) Knob
Press to turn the audio system on and off.
Turn to adjust the volume.

Source
Select to change an audio source.

ⓘ (Information) Icon
Select to display the current channel details.
Select ⮌ to display the previous screen.

Preset Icons
Tune the preset channel. Select and hold the preset icon to store that channel. Select ◀◀ or ▶▶ to display preset 4 onwards.

On Demand Multi-Use Display™

Audio Menu
Select to display the menu items.

Browse
Select to display the channel list of **Categories**, **Channels** or **Featured Channels** types.

Tune
Select to display the channel number input screen.

Presets/Controls
Select to change between the **Presets** mode and **Controls** mode of the Replay function.

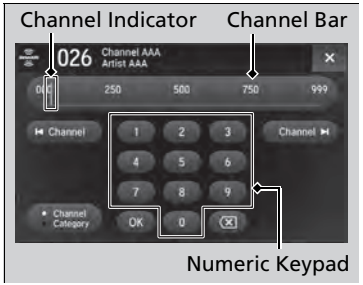
Channel Up/Down Icons
Select ◀ or ▶ to the previous or next channel.
Select and hold to rapidly skip 10 channels at a time.

To Play SiriusXM® Radio

1. Select the SiriusXM® mode.
- **Audio Remote Controls** P. 181
- **On Demand Multi-Use Display™** P. 207

2. Select a channel using the ◀, ▶ icons or the preset numbers (**1**-**12**) on the preset mode screen.

SiriusXM® channel manual tune screen



1. Select **Tune**.
2. Enter the desired channel number using the numeric keypad.
3. Select **OK** to tune into the channel.

You can also tune into the channel of your choice following the procedures below instead of inputting its channel number.
1. Touch the desired channel number on the channel bar.
2. Select and hold the channel indicator, then slide it to the desired channel number on the channel bar.

Playing SiriusXM® Radio

You can control the SiriusXM® radio using voice commands*.
- **Voice Control Operation** P. 218

In the channel mode, all available channels are selectable. In the category mode, you can select a channel within a category (Jazz, Rock, Classical, etc.).

There may be instances when SiriusXM® Radio does not broadcast all the data fields (artist name, title). This does not indicate a problem with your audio system.

SiriusXM® Radio stations load in ascending order, which can take about a minute. Once they have loaded you will be able to scroll up or down to make your selections.

Tune Start:
When you change a channel, a song being played on that channel restarts from the beginning with this function. This can be turned on or off from the **Play the Song from the Beginning** setting.
- **Customized Features** P. 310

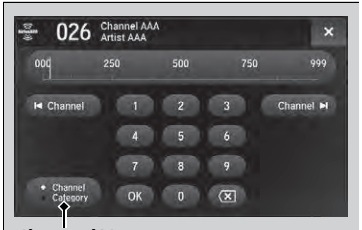
SiriusXM® channel manual tune screen

Channel icons:
Select |◀| or |▶| to the previous or next channel. Select and hold to rapidly skip 10 channels at a time.

* Not available on all models

Continued

To change the tune mode:



Channel/Category Icon

1. Select **Tune**.
2. Select **Channel/Category** icon.

■ Preset Memory

To store a station:
1. Tune to the selected channel.
2. Select **Presets/Controls** icon to set the **Presets**.
3. Select and hold the preset number you want to store that channel.

Playing SiriusXM® Radio

You can store 12 SiriusXM® stations into the preset memory.

■ TuneMix™ (Multi-channel preset)

You can store up to 10 of your preferred music channels and listen to them randomly.



1. Tune a channel.
2. Select and hold the preset number you want to store that channel.

3. Select **Add**.
4. Select **Done** to return the previous screen.

To delete a multi-channel preset:
1. Select and hold the preset number you want to delete that channel.
2. Select the channel icon.
3. Select **Delete**.
4. Select **Done** to return the previous screen.

TuneMix™ (Multi-channel preset)

TuneMix™ is registered trademarks of SiriusXM® Radio, Inc.

To store a multi-channel preset, you need to setup the **TuneMix** setting to **On**.
➡ **Customized Features** P. 310

TuneMix™ is available for music channels only.

Continued

■ Listening to Featured Channels

Suggested channel listing received from SiriusXM® can be displayed and selected.

1. Select **Browse**.
2. Select **Featured Channels**.
3. Select a channel.

■ Displaying a Channel Schedule

You can check a channel schedule by selected channel list on the On Demand Multi-Use Display™.

1. Select **Audio Menu**.
2. Select **View Channel Schedule**.

You can also check the other channel by the following procedure.

3. Select **Categories**, **Channels** or **Presets**.
4. Select a channel.

Listening to Featured Channels

Up to three featured channels by SiriusXM® can be displayed.

■ Replay Function

The system constantly records up to the last 60 minutes of your currently tuned channel and all the preset channel broadcast, starting from the moment you turn the power mode to ON. You can rewind and replay the last 60 minutes of each broadcast.



1. Select **Presets/Controls** to set the **Controls**.
2. Select an option.

The following items are available:
▶/❚❚: Pauses or plays a storing broadcast.
LIVE: Returns to real-time broadcast.
|◀◀: Skips to the previously stored channel.
▶▶|: Skips to the next channel.
15: Select to skip back 15 seconds in the current selection. Select and hold to fast-rewind the current selection.
15: Select to skip forward 15 seconds in the current selection. Select and hold to fast-forward the current selection.

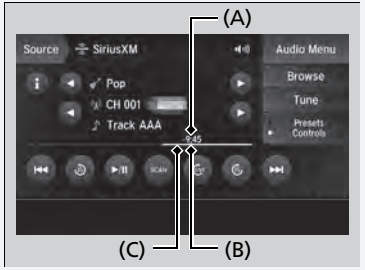
■ Returning to real-time broadcast

Select LIVE while listening to the playback channel.

Replay Function

The system starts storing broadcast in memory when the power mode is turned ON. You can go back to the program from that point.

You can no longer replay any program once the power mode is turned OFF as it erases memory. You can check how long the program has been stored in memory from the On Demand Multi-Use Display™.



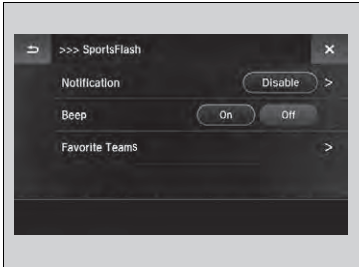
(A): Shows how much time the replayed segment is behind the real-time broadcast
(B): Replayed segment
(C): Length stored in memory

Continued

■ Live Sports Alert

While listening to other channels you can receive sports alerts such as scores from your favorite teams.

■ To set up a sports alert



1. Select **Audio Menu**.
2. Select **Audio Settings**.
3. Select **SiriusXM**.
4. Select **SportsFlash**.
5. Select **Notification**, then select **Enable**.
6. Select **Favorite Teams**, then select a team.

Live Sports Alert

The sports alert function at SiriusXM® mode only.

To set up a sports alert

Sports alerts cut in only when SiriusXM® mode is on. Selecting **Enable once** from customized settings disables the alert feature next time you turn the power mode to ON.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 310

■ **Receiving a sports alert**

1. A pop-up appears and notifies you of a sports alert.
2. Select **Listen Now**.



The following items are available:
: Pauses or plays a current sports alert.
: Returns to real-time broadcast.
: Skips to the previously stored sports alert.
: Skips to the next stored sports alert.
: Select to skip back 15 seconds to the current sports alert. Select and hold to fast-rewind the current sports alert.
: Select to skip forward 15 seconds to the current sports alert. Select and hold to fast-forward the current sports alert.
Back: Returns to previous channel.

■ **Listening to a missed sports alert**

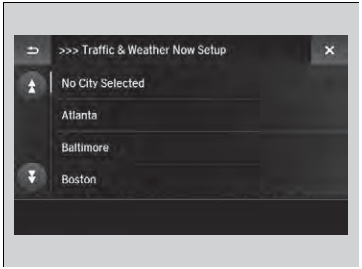
1. Select **Audio Menu**.
2. Select **SportsFlash**.
3. Select an item.

Continued

■ Traffic and Weather Information

You can receive the SiriusXM® traffic and weather information service in SiriusXM® mode.

■ To set up a traffic & weather information



1. Select **Audio Menu**.
2. Select **Audio Settings**.
3. Select **SiriusXM**.
4. Select **Traffic & Weather Now Setup**.
5. Select the region.
   ▶ When you do not want to receive the information, select **No City Selected**.

Traffic and Weather Information

The traffic and weather information function in SiriusXM® mode only.

Traffic & Weather Now are registered trademarks of SiriusXM® Radio, Inc.

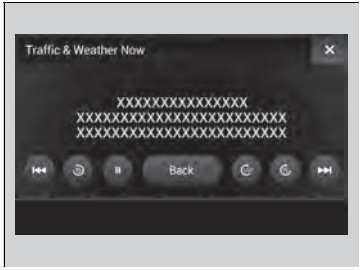
To set up a traffic & weather information

When you listen to the traffic and weather information service, set up the applicable city using **Traffic & Weather Now Setup**.

■ **Listening a traffic and weather information**

1. Select **Audio Menu**.

2. Select **Traffic & Weather Now**.



The following items are available:

: Pauses or plays a stored broadcast.

: Returns to real-time broadcast.

: Skips to the previously stored channel.

: Skips to the next channel.

: Select to skip back 15 seconds in the current broadcast. Select and hold to fast-rewind the current broadcast.

: Select to skip forward 15 seconds in the current broadcast. Select and hold to fast-forward the current broadcast.

Back: Returns to previous channel.

Continued

■ Scan

Sample each channel on the selected mode for 10 seconds.
1. Select **Presets/Controls** to set the **Controls**.
2. Select **SCAN**.
3. Select **Scan Channels** or **Scan Presets**.
To turn off scan, select **Stop Scan**.

Scan

You can select desired channel by songs using **Scan Presets**.

The "Scan Songs in Presets" function is based on TuneScan™ technology of SiriusXM®.

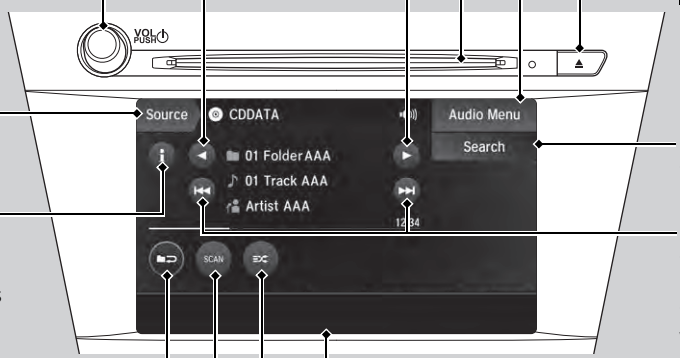
The "Featured Channels" function is based on Featured Favorites™ technology of SiriusXM®.

TuneScan™ and Featured Favorites™ are registered trademarks of SiriusXM® Radio, Inc.

Scan Mode Menu Items
Scan Channels: Scans for channels with a strong signal in the selected mode.
Scan Presets: Scans for desired preset channel by songs. Select ▶▶| (skip up) or |◀◀ (skip down) to skip to the next/previous stored selection.

Playing a CD

Your audio system supports audio CDs, CD-Rs and CD-RWs in either MP3, WMA, or AAC*1 format. With the CD loaded, select the CD mode.



Folder Up/Down Icons
Select ◀ or ▶ to skip to the next folder, and to skip to the beginning of the previous folder in MP3, WMA, or AAC.

VOL/⏻ (Volume/Power) Knob
Press to turn the audio system on and off.
Turn to adjust the volume.

Source
Select to change an audio source.

ⓘ (Information) Icon
Select to display the current track/file details.
Select ⮌ to display the previous screen.

Repeat Icon
Select to repeat the current track/file.

SCAN Icon
Select to listen to a 10-second sampling of each track/file.

CD Slot
Insert a CD about halfway into the CD slot.

Audio Menu
Select to display the menu items.

⏏ (CD Eject) Button
Press to eject a CD.

Search
Select to display the music search list screen.

Skip/Seek Icons
Select |◀◀ or ▶▶| to change tracks (files in MP3, WMA, or AAC).
Select and hold to move rapidly within a track/file.

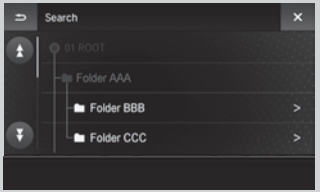
On Demand Multi-Use Display™

Random Icon
Select to play tracks/files in random order.

*1:Only AAC format files recorded with iTunes are playable on this unit.

How to Select a File from the Music Search List (MP3/WMA/AAC)

Folder Selection



File Selection



1. Select **Search**.
2. Select a folder.
3. Select a track.

Playing a CD

NOTICE

Do not use CDs with adhesive labels. The label can cause the CD to jam in the unit.

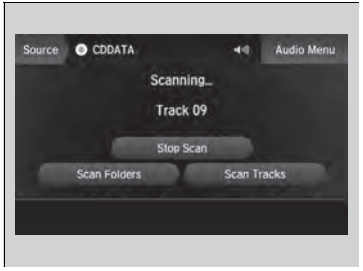
WMA and AAC files protected by digital rights management (DRM) cannot be played.
The audio system skips to the next file.

Text data appears on the display under the following circumstances:
- When you select a new folder, file, or track.
- When you change the audio mode to CD.
- When you insert a CD.

If you eject the CD but do not remove it from the slot, the system reloads the CD automatically after several seconds.

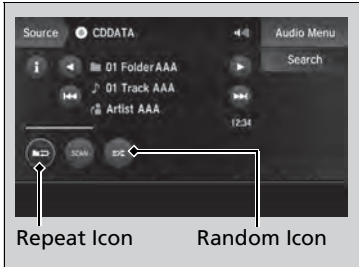
■ How to Select a Play Mode

You can select scan, repeat, and random modes when playing a track or file.



■ Scan

Select **SCAN** to provides 10-second sampling of each tracks/files.



■ Random/Repeat

Select repeat or random icon repeatedly until a desired mode.

■ To turn off a play mode

To turn off scan, select **Stop Scan**.

To turn off random/repeat, select repeat or random icon repeatedly.

How to Select a Play Mode

Play Mode Menu Items

SCAN

Scan Folders (MP3/WMA/AAC): Provides a 10-second sampling of the first file in each of the main folders.

Scan Tracks (MP3/WMA/AAC): Provides a 10-second sampling of all files in the current folder in MP3, WMA, or AAC.

Repeat

(repeat off): Repeat mode to off.

(repeat track): Repeats the current track/file.

(repeat folder) (MP3/WMA/AAC): Repeats all files in the current folder.

Random

(random off): Random mode to off.

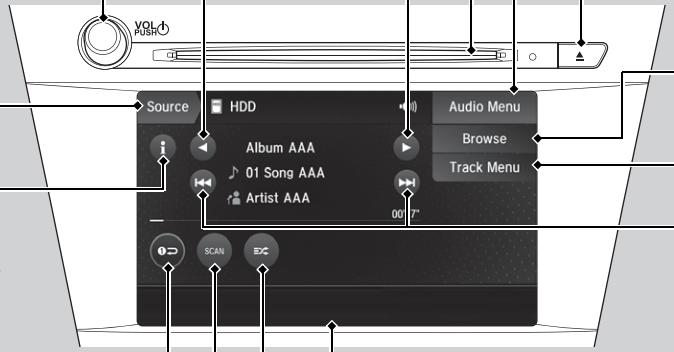
(random in folder) (MP3/WMA/AAC): Plays all files in the current folder in random order.

(random all tracks): Plays all tracks/files in random order.

Models with navigation system

Playing Hard Disk Drive (HDD) Audio

The Hard Disk Drive (HDD) Audio function plays tracks from music CDs that have been recorded onto the built-in HDD. You can arrange the tracks in playlists or play the tracks using various search methods.



Playlist/Album Up/Down Icons
Select ▶ to skip to the next playlist/album, and ◀ to skip to the beginning of the previous playlist/album.

VOL/⏻ (Volume/Power) Knob
Press to turn the audio system on and off.
Turn to adjust the volume.

Source
Select to change an audio source.

(Information) Icon
Select to display the current track details.
Select ⮌ to display the previous screen.

Repeat Icon
Select to repeat the current track.

SCAN Icon
Select to use a scan feature.

Random Icon
Select to play tracks in random order.

CD Slot
Insert a CD about halfway into the CD slot.

Audio Menu
Select to display the menu items.

⏏ (CD Eject) Button
Press to eject a CD.

Browse
Select to display the music search list screen.

Track Menu
Select to display the track menu.

Skip/Seek Icons
Select ⏮ or ⏭ to change tracks.
Select and hold to move rapidly within a track.

On Demand Multi-Use Display™

Recording a Music CD to HDD

When **Recording from CD** is set to **Auto**, the songs on music CDs are automatically recorded to the HDD the first time you play each disc. You can then play the songs directly from the HDD.

➔ **Customized Features** P. 310



Stop Recording

Select ◉. (in CD mode)

Recording a CD Manually

When **Recording from CD** is set to **Manual**, the songs on music CDs can be manually recorded to the HDD.

Select ◉. (in CD mode)

Recording a Music CD to HDD

You can add tracks to user playlists, where you can mix and match tracks from other CDs recorded on the HDD.

➔ **Editing an Album or Playlist** P. 244
➔ **Editing Track Information** P. 247

If you stop the engine or the audio system is turned off while recording a CD, there may be pauses between songs when you play back from the HDD.

Repeat, random, and scan functions are not available during recording.

You can play music from other sources (e.g., SiriusXM®, HDD, etc.) while recording.

Please note that there is no compensation offered in the case of unsuccessful recording of audio data or the loss of audio data due to any cause whatsoever.

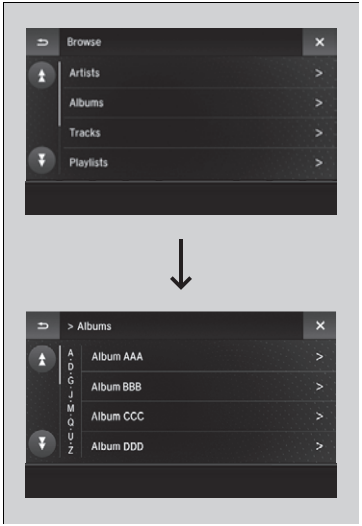
Clearing the HDD

Any music tracks stored on the HDD can be deleted.

➔ **Deleting all HDD Data** P. 250

Continued

How to Select a Track from the Music Search List



1. Select **Browse**.
2. Select the items on that menu.
▶ Title information is displayed if found in the Gracenote® Album Info (Gracenote® Media Database) stored on the HDD.
▶ The HDD has two types of playlists: original playlists and user playlists. An original playlist is automatically created for each album when a music CD is recorded.

How to Select a Track from the Music Search List

You can control the HDD audio using voice commands.
➡ **Voice Control Operation** P. 218
➡ **Song By Voice™ (SBV)** P. 254

Music tracks recorded on HDD cannot be recorded onto CDs or other devices.

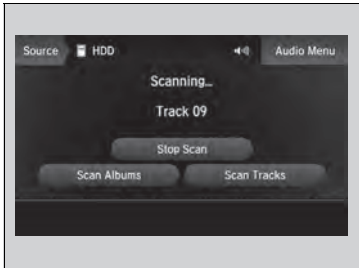
Tracks are recorded at four times the playback speed using ultra-efficient compression technology; therefore, sound quality may vary slightly from the original.

If the HDD is ever replaced, all music data is lost and cannot be recovered.

If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the On Demand Multi-Use Display™.
➡ **Hard Disk Drive (HDD) Audio** P. 277

How to Select a Play Mode

You can select scan, repeat, and random modes when playing a track.



Scan

Select **SCAN** to provides 10-second sampling of each tracks.

How to Select a Play Mode

Play Mode Menu Items

SCAN

The following menu items vary depending on the category you selected by the **Browse** list.

Scan Albums: Provides a 10-second sampling of all tracks in current album.

Scan Tracks: Provides a 10-second sampling of all tracks on the HDD.

Scan Artists: Provides a 10-second sampling of all tracks in current artist.

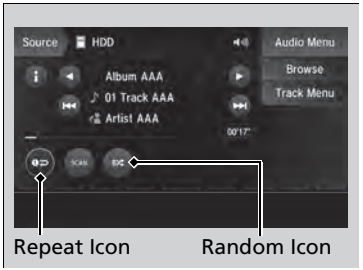
Scan Playlists: Provides a 10-second sampling of all tracks in current playlist.

Scan Genres: Provides a 10-second sampling of all tracks in current genre.

Scan Composers: Provides a 10-second sampling of all tracks in current composer.

Scan Rec. Date: Provides a 10-second sampling of all tracks in current recorded date.

Continued



■ Random/Repeat

Select repeat or random icon repeatedly until a desired mode.

■ To turn off a play mode

To turn off scan, select **Stop Scan**.

To turn off random/repeat, select repeat or random icon repeatedly.

Random/Repeat

Random/Repeat

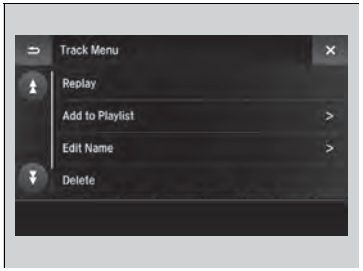
The following menu items vary depending on the category you selected by the **Browse** list.

Repeat

- (repeat off): Changes repeat mode to off.
- (repeat track): Repeats the current track.
- (repeat album): Repeats all tracks in the current album.
- (repeat playlist): Repeats all tracks in the current playlist.
- (repeat artist): Repeats all tracks in the current artist.
- (repeat genre): Repeats all tracks in the current genre.
- (repeat composer): Repeats all tracks in the current composer.
- (repeat recorded date): Repeats all tracks in the current recorded date.

■ Editing a Current Track

You can edit the information of the current selected track on the playlist.



1. Select **Track Menu**.
2. Select the items on that menu.

The following items are available:
Replay: Select to replay from the beginning of current selected track.
Add to Playlist: Add a current selected track to the playlist.
Edit Name: Edit current selected track information.
Delete: Delete a current selected track from the album and playlist.
Move: Change the order of tracks currently playing in an album or playlist.

Random/Repeat

Random

(random off): Changes random mode to off.

(random all tracks): Plays all tracks in random order.

(random in album): Plays all tracks in the current album in random order.

(random in playlist): Plays all tracks in the current playlist in random order.

(random in artist): Plays all tracks in the current artist in random order.

(random in genre): Plays all tracks in the current genre in random order.

(random in composer): Plays all tracks in the current composer in random order.

(random in recorded date): Plays all tracks in the current recorded date in random order.

Continued

■ Editing an Album or Playlist

Change the playlist name, album name, genre, and track order of the current playlist. You can also delete tracks, playlists, and albums.



■ **Editing an album**

1. Select **Audio Menu**.
2. Select **Edit/Delete HDD Music**.
3. Select the items other than **Tracks** and **Playlists** on that menu.
4. Select an album that you want to edit or delete.
5. To edit an album name:
   Select **Edit Name**, then select **Album Name**.
   ▶ Enter the album name using the keyboard, then select **OK**.

   To delete an album:
   Select **Delete**, then select **Yes**.

   To edit track information or delete a track:
   Select **List Tracks**.
   ➡ **Editing Track Information** P. 247
6. Select **Done**.

Editing an Album or Playlist

The maximum number of original playlists is 50 with a maximum of 99 songs in each playlist.

Each album CD counts as an original playlist. Adding a track from a user playlist into the same user playlist will cause the track to appear twice in the playlist.

Deleting an album (original playlist) also deletes the album tracks you have stored in any user playlists.

Deleting a user playlist or deleting all tracks from a user playlist does not remove the playlist folder. The folder retains the playlist name and artist information.



■ Editing a playlist

1. Select **Audio Menu**.
2. Select **Edit/Delete HDD Music**.
3. Select **Playlists**.
4. Select a playlist that you want to edit or delete.

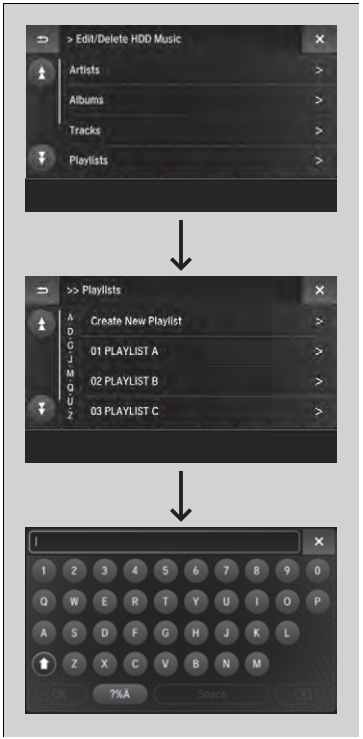
5. To edit a playlist name:
Select **Edit Name**, then select **Playlist Name**.
▶ Enter the playlist name using the keyboard, then select **OK**.

To delete a playlist:
Select **Delete**, then select **Yes**.

To edit track information or delete a track:
Select **List Tracks**.
➡ **Editing Track Information** P. 247

6. Select **Done**.

Continued



■ **Creating a new playlist**

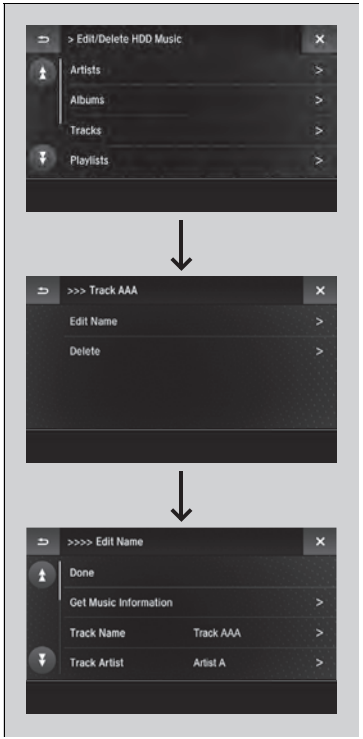
1. Select **Audio Menu**.
2. Select **Edit/Delete HDD Music**.
3. Select **Playlists**.

4. Select **Create New Playlist**.

5. Enter the playlist name using the keyboard, then select **OK**.
6. Select an item, then select desired track.
7. Select **Done**.

■ Editing Track Information

Change the track title, artist name, genre and composer. You can also delete tracks.



1. Select **Audio Menu**.
2. Select **Edit/Delete HDD Music**.
3. Select **Tracks**.
4. Select a track you want to edit or delete.

5. To edit track information:
Select **Edit Name**, then select **Track Name**, **Track Artist**, etc.
▶ Enter the track name, track artist, etc. using the keyboard, then select **OK**.

To delete a track:
Select **Delete**, then select **Yes**.

6. Select **Done**.

Continued

■ Displaying Music Information

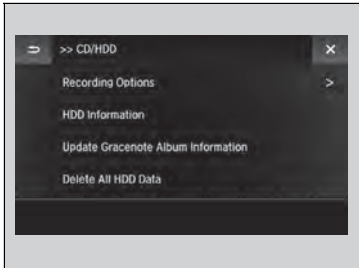
Music information (album name, artist name, genre) can be acquired by accessing the Gracenote® Album Info.



1. Select **Audio Menu**.
2. Select **Edit/Delete HDD Music**.
3. Select an item about which you want to acquire information.
4. Select **Edit Name**.
5. Select **Get Music Information**.
   ▶ The system starts to access the Gracenote® Album Info.

■ Updating Gracenote® Album Info

Update the Gracenote® Album Info (Gracenote® Media Database) that is included with the navigation system.



1. Select **Audio Menu**.
2. Select **Audio Settings**.
3. Select **CD/HDD**.
4. Insert the update disc into the disc slot or connect the USB flash drive that includes the update.
5. Select **Update Gracenote Album Information**.
6. Select **Update by CD** or **Update by USB**.
   ▶ The system starts updating and the confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **OK** to finish.

Updating Gracenote® Album Info

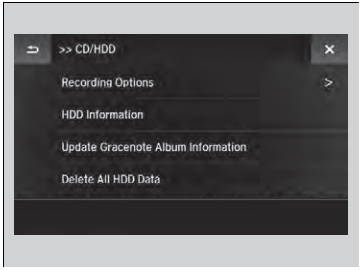
To acquire updated files:
- Consult a dealer.
- U.S.: Visit *www.acura.com*.
- Canada: Visit *www.acura.ca*.

Once you perform an update, any information you edited before will be overwritten or erased.

Continued

■ Deleting all HDD Data

Delete all music data on the HDD.

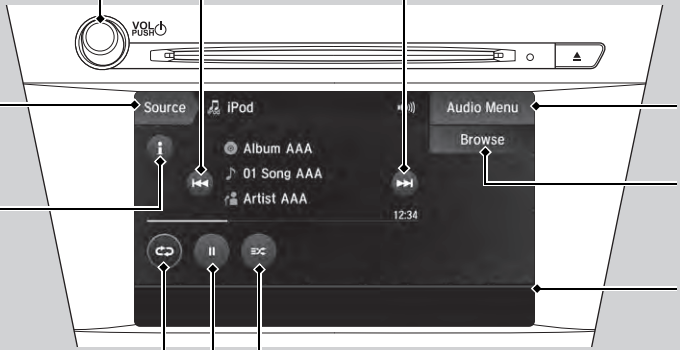


1. Select **Audio Menu**.
2. Select **Audio Settings**.
3. Select **CD/HDD**.
4. Select **Delete All HDD Data**.
   ▶ The confirmation message will appear.
5. Select **Yes**.

Playing an iPod

Connect the iPod using your USB connector to the USB port, then select the iPod mode.

USB Port* P. 179



VOL/⏻ (Volume/Power) Knob
Press to turn the audio system on and off.
Turn to adjust the volume.

Source
Select to change an audio source.

(Information) Icon
Select to display the current song details.
Select ⮌ to display the previous screen.

Repeat Icon
Select to repeat the current song.

▶/❚❚ (Play/Pause) Icon
Select to pause or play a song.

Skip/Seek Icons
Select ⏮ or ⏭ to change songs.
Select and hold to move rapidly within a song.

Audio Menu
Select to display the menu items.

Browse
Select to display the music search list screen.

On Demand Multi-Use Display™

Shuffle Icon
Select to change a play mode in album shuffle or shuffle all songs.

* Not available on all models

Continued

How to Select a Song from the Music Search List



1. Select **Browse**.
2. Select the items on that menu.

How to Select a Song from the Music Search List

You can control an iPod using voice commands*.
Voice Control Operation P. 218
Song By Voice™ (SBV) P. 254

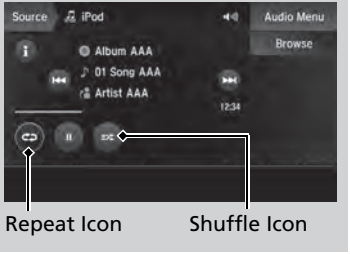
Available operating functions vary on models and/or versions. Some functions may not be available on the vehicle's audio system.

If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the On Demand Multi-Use Display™.
iPod/USB Flash Drive P. 278

 * Not available on all models

■ How to Select a Play Mode

You can select repeat and shuffle modes when playing a song.



■ Shuffle/Repeat

Select shuffle or repeat icon repeatedly until a desired mode.

■ To turn off a play mode

To turn off the shuffle or repeat, select shuffle or repeat icon repeatedly.

How to Select a Play Mode

Play Mode Menu Items

Repeat

(repeat off)*1: Repeat mode to off.

(repeat song): Repeats the current song.

(repeat all): Repeats the all songs.

Shuffle

(shuffle off): Shuffle mode to off.

(shuffle all songs): Plays all available songs in a selected list (playlists, artists, albums, songs, genres, or composers) in random order.

(shuffle albums): Plays all available albums in a selected list (playlists, artists, albums, songs, genres, or composers) in random order.

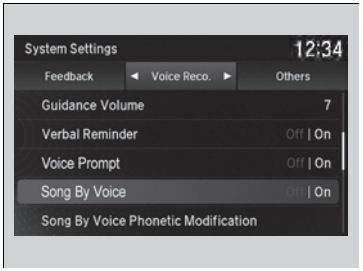
*1: Not available on all iPod.

Models with navigation system

Song By Voice™ (SBV)

Use SBV to search for and play music from your HDD or iPod using voice commands.

■ To enable SBV



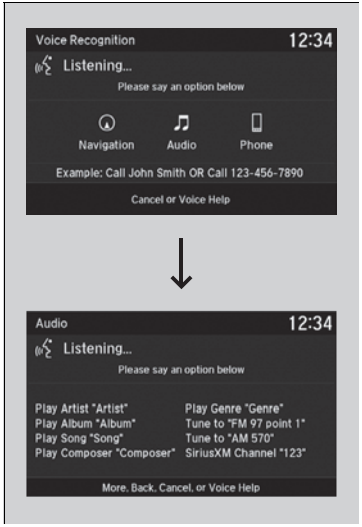
1. Press the **SETTINGS** button.
2. Rotate to select **System Settings**, then press .
3. Move or to select the **Voice Reco.** tab.
4. Rotate to select **Song By Voice**.
5. Press to select **On** or **Off**.

Song By Voice™ (SBV)

Setting options:

- **On** (factory default): Song By Voice™ commands are available.
- **Off**: Disable the feature.

■ Searching for music using SBV



1. Set the **Song By Voice** setting to **On**.

2. Press the (Talk) button and say *"Audio"* to activate the SBV feature for the HDD and iPod.

3. Press the button and say a command.
- ▶ Example 1: Say *"(List) 'Artist A'"* to view a list of songs by that artist. Select the desired song to start playing.
- ▶ Example 2: Say *"Play 'Artist A'"* to start playing songs by that artist.

4. To cancel SBV, press the (hang-up/back) button on the steering wheel. The selected song continues playing.

Once you have canceled this mode, you need to press the button and say *"Audio"* again to re-activate this mode.

Searching for music using SBV

Song By Voice™ Commands List
➡ **Voice Control Operation** P. 218

NOTE:
Song By Voice™ commands are available for tracks stored on the HDD or iPod.

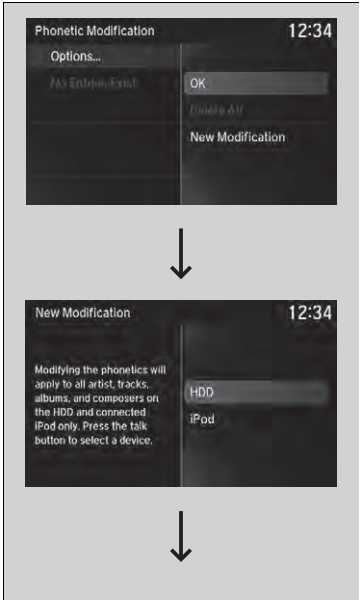
You can add phonetic modifications of difficult words so that it is easier for SBV to recognize artists, songs, albums, and composers in voice commands.
➡ **Phonetic Modification** P. 256

SBV may not be able to recognize languages other than English for the artist name, song title, album title, and composers.

Continued

■ Phonetic Modification

Add phonetic modifications of difficult or foreign words so that it is easier for SBV to recognize artists, songs, albums, and composers in voice commands when searching for music on the HDD or iPod.

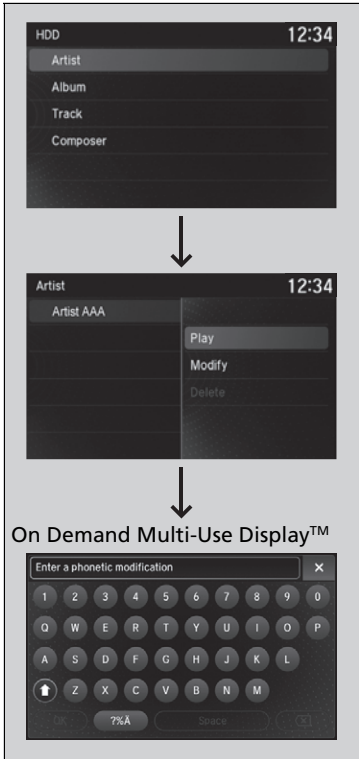


1. Press the **SETTINGS** button.
2. Rotate ⟲ to select **System Settings**, then press ⊛.
3. Move ◁○ or ○▷ to select the **Voice Reco.** tab.
4. Rotate ⟲ to select **Song By Voice Phonetic Modification**, then press ⊛.
5. Rotate ⟲ to select **Options...**, then press ⊛.
6. Rotate ⟲ to select **New Modification**, then press ⊛.
7. Rotate ⟲ to select **HDD** or **iPod**, then press ⊛.

Phonetic Modification

Song By Voice Phonetic Modification is grayed out when **Song By Voice** is set to **Off**.

You can store up to 2,000 phonetic modification items.



8. Rotate ⟲ to select the item to modify (e.g., **Artist**), then press ⊙.
▶ The list of the selected item appears on the screen.

9. Rotate ⟲ to select an entry (e.g., **No Name**), then press ⊙.
▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.

10. Rotate ⟲ to select **Modify**, then press ⊙.
▶ To listen to the current phonetic modification, rotate ⟲ to select **Play**, then press ⊙.
▶ To delete the current phonetic modification, rotate ⟲ to select **Delete**, then press ⊙.

11. Enter the phonetic spelling you wish to use (e.g., *"Artist A"*) when prompted.

12. Select **OK** to exit.
▶ The artist *"No Name"* is phonetically modified to *"Artist A."* When in the SBV mode, you can press the 🎤 (Talk) button and use the voice command *"Play 'Artist A'"* to play songs by the artist *"No Name."*

13. Rotate ⟲ to select **Options...**, then press ⊙.

14. Rotate ⟲ to select **OK**, then press ⊙.

Playing Pandora®*1

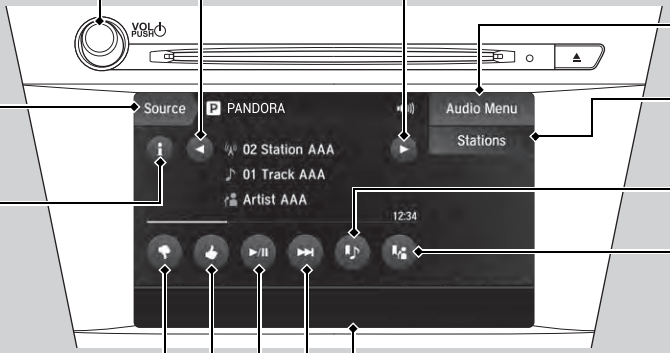
Your audio system allows you to listen to music from the Pandora® app on a compatible smartphone.
This function is available when the phone is paired and connected to the vehicle's *Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink® (HFL) system, or with an iPhone, you can connect using your USB cable to the USB port.

Phone Setup P. 376
USB Port* P. 179

Playing Pandora®*1

Pandora®, the Pandora logo, and the Pandora trade dress are trademarks or registered trademarks of Pandora Media, Inc., used with permission. Pandora is currently available exclusively in the United States.

To find out if your phone is compatible with this feature, visit *www.handsfreelink.com/Acura*, or call 1-888-528-7876.



VOL/⏻ (Volume/Power) Knob
Press to turn the audio system on and off.
Turn to adjust the volume.

Source
Select to change an audio source.

(Information) Icon
Select to display the current track details.
Select ↩ to display the previous screen.

Like/Dislike Icons
Select to evaluate a track.

Play/Pause Icon
Select to pause or play a track.

Station Up/Down Icons
Select to change a station.

Audio Menu
Select to display the menu items.

Stations
Select to display the station list screen.

Bookmark Track Icon
Bookmarks the current track.

Bookmark Artist Icon
Bookmarks the current artist.

On Demand Multi-Use Display™

Skip Icon
Select to skip a track.

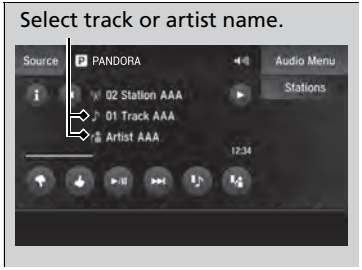
*1:Available only on U.S. models.

* Not available on all models

How to Select a Track from the Stations List

1. Select **Stations**.
2. Select a item to select a track.

Create Station



You can create a station by **Genre**, **Current Track** or **Current Artist**.
1. Select **Stations**.
2. Select **Create Station**.
3. Select the item you want to create a station.

You can also create a station by the following procedure.
1. Select track name or artist name.
2. Select **Yes**.

Select the connecting method

If the two devices that install Pandora app are connected via the USB and *Bluetooth*® connection separately, you can select the USB or *Bluetooth*® connection to use the Pandora®.

1. Select the **PANDORA** on the source list screen.
2. Select **USB** or **Bluetooth**.

Playing Pandora®*1

Pandora® is a personalized Internet radio service that selects music based on an artist, track, or genre a user enters, and streams what is likely to be of interest.

To use this service in your vehicle, the Pandora® app must first be installed on your phone. Visit *www.pandora.com*. for more information.

If you cannot operate Pandora® through the audio system, it may be streaming through *Bluetooth*® Audio. Make sure Pandora® mode on your audio system is selected.

Available operating functions vary on software versions. Some functions may not be available on the vehicle's audio system.

If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the On Demand Multi-Use Display™.
Pandora® P. 281

There are restrictions on the number of tracks you can skip or dislike in a given hour.

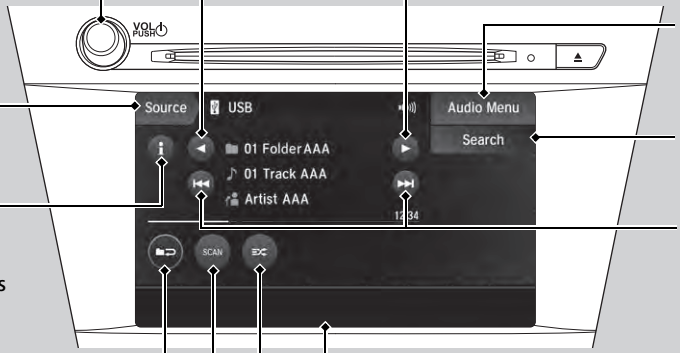
If your phone is connected to Android Auto, Pandora® is only available through the Android Auto interface.
Visit the Android Auto website to check compatibility.

Playing a USB Flash Drive

Your audio system reads and plays sound files on a USB flash drive in either MP3, WMA, or AAC*1 format.

Connect your USB flash drive to the USB port, then select the USB mode.

USB Port* P. 179



VOL/ (Volume/Power) Knob
Press to turn the audio system on and off.
Turn to adjust the volume.

Source
Select to change an audio source.

(Information) Icon
Select to display the current file details.
Select to display the previous screen.

Repeat Icon
Select to repeat the current file.

SCAN Icon
Select to listen to a 10-second sampling of each file.

Folder Up/Down Icons
Select ◀ or ▶ to skip to the next folder, and to skip to the beginning of the previous folder.

Audio Menu
Select to display the menu items.

Search
Select to display the music search list screen.

Skip/Seek Icons
Select |◀◀ or ▶▶| to change files.
Select and hold to move rapidly within a file.

On Demand Multi-Use Display™

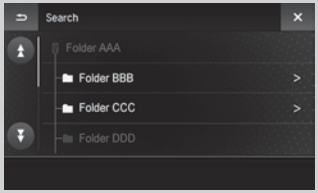
Random Icon
Select to play all files in random order.

*1:Only AAC format files recorded with iTunes are playable on this unit.

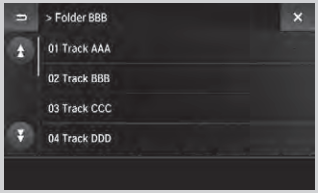
* Not available on all models

How to Select a File from the Music Search List

Folder Selection



File Selection



1. Select **Search**.
2. Select a folder.

3. Select a file.

Playing a USB Flash Drive

Use the recommended USB flash drives.

General Information on the Audio System P. 286

Files in WMA/AAC format protected by digital rights management (DRM) are not played.
The audio system skips to the next file.

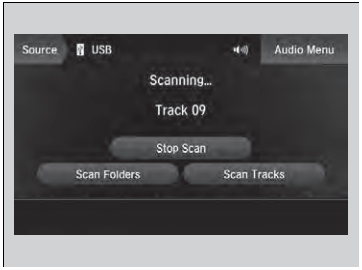
If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the On Demand Multi-Use Display™.

iPod/USB Flash Drive P. 278

Continued

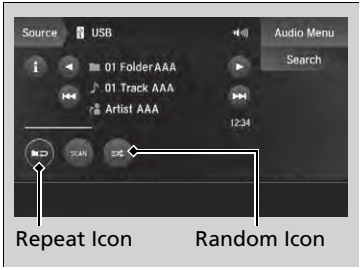
■ How to Select a Play Mode

You can select scan, repeat, and random modes when playing a file.



■ Scan

Select **SCAN** to provide a 10-second sampling of each file.



■ Random/Repeat

Select repeat or random icon repeatedly until a desired mode.

■ To turn off a play mode

To turn off scan, select **Stop Scan**.

To turn off random or repeat, select repeat or random icon repeatedly.

How to Select a Play Mode

Play Mode Menu Items

SCAN

Scan Folders: Provides a 10-second sampling of the first file in each of the main folders.

Scan Tracks: Provides a 10-second sampling of all files in the current folder.

Repeat

(repeat off): Repeat mode to off.

(repeat track): Repeats the current file.

(repeat folder): Repeats all files in the current folder.

Random

(random off): Random mode to off.

(random in folder): Plays all files in the current folder in random order.

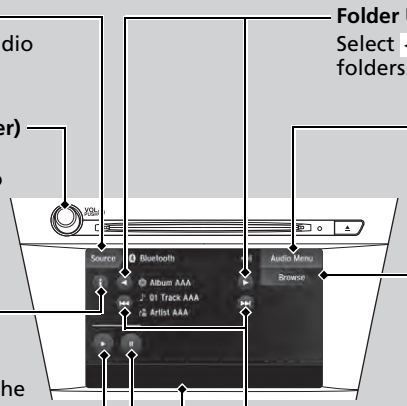
(random all tracks): Plays all files in random order.

Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio

Your audio system allows you to listen to music from your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone.

This function is available when the phone is paired and connected to the vehicle's *Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink® (HFL) system.

Phone Setup P. 376



Source
Select to change an audio source.

VOL/⏻ (Volume/Power) Knob
Press to turn the audio system on and off.
Turn to adjust the volume.

(Information) Icon
Select to display the current file details.
Select ⮌ to display the previous screen.

Play Icon

Pause Icon

Folder Up/Down Icons
Select ◀ or ▶ to change folders.

Audio Menu
Select to display the menu items.

Browse
Select to display the track list screen.

Skip/Seek Icons
Select |◀◀ or ▶▶| to change files.

On Demand Multi-Use Display™

Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio

Not all *Bluetooth*-enabled phones with streaming audio capabilities are compatible with the system. For a list of compatible phones:

- U.S.: Visit *www.handsfreelink.com/Acura*, or call 1-888-528-7876.
- Canada: For more information on smartphone compatibility, call 1-855-490-7351.

In some states, it may be illegal to perform some data device functions while driving.

If more than one phone is paired to the HFL system, there will be a delay before the system begins to play.

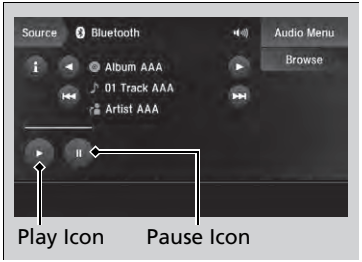
Some functions may not be available on some devices.

If a phone is currently connected via Apple CarPlay or Android Auto, *Bluetooth*® Audio from that phone is unavailable. However, a second previously paired phone can stream *Bluetooth*® Audio by selecting **Connect to Audio** from the **Edit Bluetooth Device**.

Phone Setup P. 376

Continued

■ To Play *Bluetooth*® Audio Files



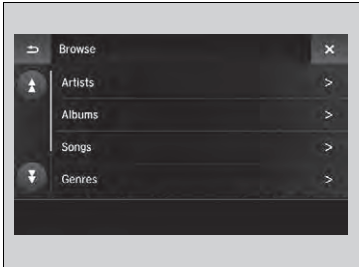
1. Make sure that your phone is paired and connected to HFL.
2. Select the *Bluetooth*® Audio mode.

If the phone is not recognized, another HFL-compatible phone, which is not compatible for *Bluetooth*® Audio, may already be connected.

■ To pause or resume a file

Select the play icon or pause icon.

■ Searching for Music



1. Select **Browse**.
2. Select a search category (e.g., Albums).
3. Select an item.
▶ The selection begins playing.

To Play *Bluetooth*® Audio Files

To play the audio files, you may need to operate your phone. If so, follow the phone maker's operating instructions.

The pause function may not be available on some phones.

Switching to another mode pauses the music playing from your phone. This function may not be available on some phones.

Searching for Music

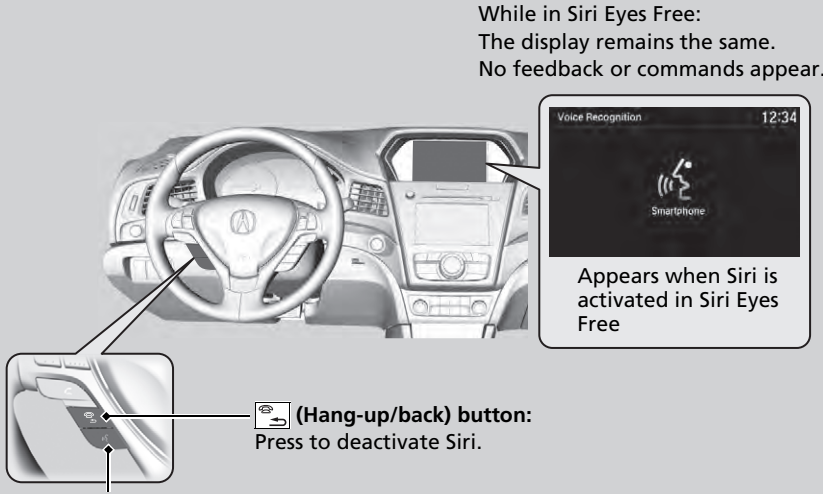
Depending on the *Bluetooth*® device you connect, some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

Siri Eyes Free

You can talk to Siri using the Talk button on the steering wheel when your compatible iPhone is paired to *Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink®.

Phone Setup P. 376

■ Using Siri Eyes Free



Siri Eyes Free

Siri is a trademark of Apple Inc.

Check Apple Inc. website for features available for Siri.

We recommend against using Siri other than in Siri Eyes Free while operating a vehicle.

Using Siri Eyes Free

Some commands work only on specific phone features or apps.

Apple CarPlay

If you connect an Apple CarPlay-compatible iPhone to the system via the USB port, you can use the information screen, instead of the iPhone display, to make a phone call, listen to music, view maps (navigation), and access messages.

USB Port* P. 179

■ Apple CarPlay Menu



*1:The operation methods may differ from your connected iPhone.

* Not available on all models

Apple CarPlay

Only iPhone 5 or newer versions with iOS 8.4 or later are compatible with Apple CarPlay.

Park in a safe place before connecting your iPhone to Apple CarPlay and when launching any compatible apps.

To use Apple CarPlay, connect the USB cable to the USB port.

USB Port* P. 179

To directly access the Apple CarPlay phone function, press the **PHONE** button. While connected to Apple CarPlay, calls are only made through Apple CarPlay. If you want to make a call with *Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink®, turn Apple CarPlay OFF or detach the USB cable from your iPhone.

Setting Up Apple CarPlay P. 268

When your iPhone is connected to Apple CarPlay, it is not possible to use the *Bluetooth*® Audio or *Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink®. However, other previously paired phones can stream audio via *Bluetooth*® while Apple CarPlay is connected.

Phone Setup P. 376

For details on countries and regions where Apple CarPlay is available, as well as information pertaining to function, refer to the Apple homepage.

■ **Phone**
Access the contact list, make phone calls, or listen to voice mail.

■ **Messages**
Check and reply to text messages, or have messages read to you.

■ **Music**
Play music stored on your iPhone.

■ **Maps**
Display Apple Maps and use the navigation function just as you would on your iPhone.

Models with navigation system

Only one navigation system (pre-installed navigation or Apple Maps) can give directions at a time. When you are using one system, directions to any prior destination set on the other system will be canceled, and the system you are currently using will direct you to your destination.

Apple CarPlay

Apple CarPlay Operating Requirements & Limitations
Apple CarPlay requires a compatible iPhone with an active cellular connection and data plan. Your carrier's rate plans will apply.

Changes in operating systems, hardware, software, and other technology integral to providing Apple CarPlay functionality, as well as new or revised governmental regulations, may result in a decrease or cessation of Apple CarPlay functionality and services. Acura cannot and does not provide any warranty or guarantee of future Apple CarPlay performance or functionality.

It is possible to use 3rd party apps if they are compatible with Apple CarPlay. Refer to the Apple homepage for information on compatible apps.

Continued

■ Setting Up Apple CarPlay

After you have connected your iPhone to the system via the USB port, use the following procedure to set up Apple CarPlay. Use of Apple CarPlay will result in the transmission of certain user and vehicle information (such as vehicle location, speed, and status) to your iPhone to enhance the Apple CarPlay experience. You will need to consent to the sharing of this information on the information screen.

■ Enabling Apple CarPlay



Enable Once: Allows only once. (Prompt shows again next time.)
Always Enable: Allows anytime. (Prompt does not show again.)
Cancel: Does not allow this consent.

You may change the consent settings under the **Smartphone Settings** menu.

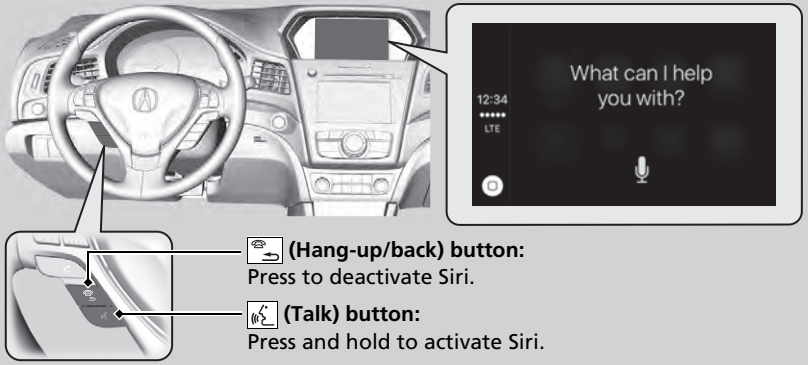
Setting Up Apple CarPlay

You can also use the method below to set up Apple CarPlay:
Press the SETTINGS→Select Smartphone Settings→Apple CarPlay Device List

Use of user and vehicle information
The use and handling of user and vehicle information transmitted to/from your iPhone by Apple CarPlay is governed by the Apple iOS terms and conditions and Apple's Privacy Policy.

■ Operating Apple CarPlay with Siri

Press and hold the talk button to activate Siri.



Operating Apple CarPlay with Siri

Below are examples of questions and commands for Siri.

- What movies are playing today?
- Call dad at work.
- What song is this?
- How's the weather tomorrow?
- Read my latest email.
- Find a table for four tonight in Chicago.

For more information, please visit *www.apple.com/ios/siri*.

Android Auto

When you connect an Android phone to the audio system via the USB port, Android Auto is automatically initiated. When connected via Android Auto, you can use the information screen to access the Phone, Google Maps (Navigation), Google Play Music, and Google Now functions. When you first use Android Auto, a tutorial will appear on the screen.
We recommend that you complete this tutorial while safely parked before using Android Auto.

➔ **USB Port*** P. 179
➔ **Auto Pairing Connection** P. 273

Android Auto

To use Android Auto, you need to download the Android Auto app from Google Play to your smartphone.

Only Android 5.0 (Lollipop) or later versions are compatible with Android Auto.
Bluetooth A2DP cannot be used with Android Auto phone.

Park in a safe place before connecting your Android phone to Android Auto and when launching any compatible apps.

To use Android Auto, connect the USB cable to the USB port.

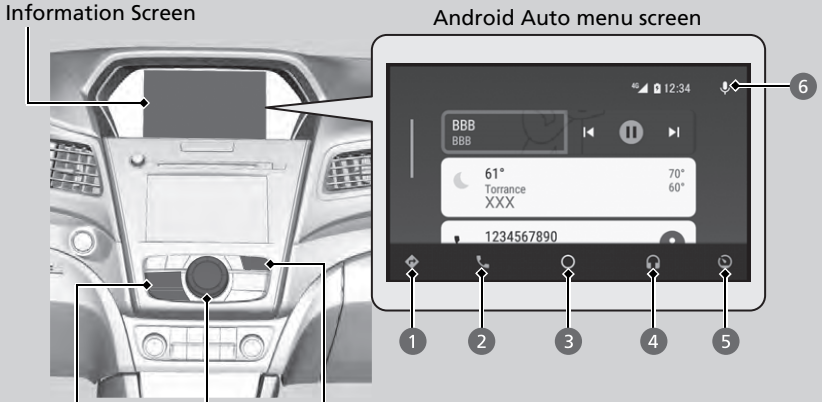
➔ **USB Port*** P. 179

When your Android phone is connected to Android Auto, it is not possible to use the *Bluetooth*® Audio. However, other previously paired phones can stream audio via *Bluetooth*® while Android Auto is connected.

➔ **Phone Setup** P. 376

 * Not available on all models

■ Android Auto Menu



SMARTPHONE Button
Press to display the Android Auto menu screen.

Interface Dial (**ENTER/MENU** Button)*1
Move and rotate the interface dial to select the item.
Press to enter the item.

BACK Button*1
Press to go back to the previous display.

*1:The operation methods may differ from your connected Android phone.

Android Auto

For details on countries and regions where Android Auto is available, as well as information pertaining to function, refer to the Android Auto homepage.

Android Auto Operating Requirements & Limitations

Android Auto requires a compatible Android phone with an active cellular connection and data plan. Your carrier's rate plans will apply.

Changes in operating systems, hardware, software, and other technology integral to providing Android Auto functionality, as well as new or revised governmental regulations, may result in a decrease or cessation of Android Auto functionality and services. Acura cannot and does not provide any warranty or guarantee of future Android Auto performance or functionality.

It is possible to use 3rd party apps if they are compatible with Android Auto. Refer to the Android Auto homepage for information on compatible apps.

Continued

❶ Maps (Navigation)
Display Google Maps and use the navigation function just as you would with your Android phone. When the vehicle is in motion, it is not possible to make keyboard entries. Stop the vehicle in a safe location to undertake a search or provide other inputs.

Models with navigation system

Only one navigation system (pre-installed navigation or Android Auto) can give directions at a time. When you are using one system, directions to any prior destination set on the other system will be canceled, and the system you are currently using will direct you to your destination.
The information screen shows you turn-by-turn driving directions to your destination.

❷ Phone (Communication)
Make and receive phone calls as well as listen to voicemail.

❸ Google Now (Home screen)
Display useful information organized by Android Auto into simple cards that appear just when they're needed.

❹ Music and audio
Play Google Play Music and music apps that are compatible with Android Auto.
To switch between music apps, press this icon.

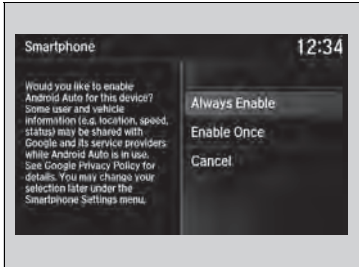
❺ Go back to the previous screen of this audio system.

❻ Voice
Operate Android Auto with your voice.

■ Auto Pairing Connection

When you connect an Android phone to the unit via the USB port, Android Auto is automatically initiated.

■ Enabling Android Auto



Enable Once: Allows only once. (Prompt shows again next time.)
Always Enable: Allows anytime. (Prompt does not show again.)
Cancel: Does not allow this consent.

You may change the consent settings under the **Smartphone Settings** menu.

Enabling Android Auto

Only initialize Android Auto when you are safely parked. When Android Auto first detects your phone, you will need to set up your phone so that auto pairing is possible. Refer to the instruction manual that came with your phone.

You can use the method below to change Android Auto settings after you have completed the initial setup:
Press the SETTINGS→Select Smartphone Settings→Android Auto Device List

Use of user and vehicle information
The use and handling of user and vehicle information transmitted to/from your phone by Android Auto is governed by Google's Privacy Policy.

Continued

■ Operating Android Auto with Voice Recognition

Press and hold the talk button to operate Android Auto with your voice.



Operating Android Auto with Voice Recognition

Below are examples of commands you can give with voice recognition:

- Reply to text.
- Call my wife.
- Navigate to Acura.
- Play my music.
- Send a text message to my wife.
- Call flower shop.

For more information, please refer to the Android Auto homepage.

You can also activate the voice recognition function by moving ○▷.

CD Player

If a disc error occurs, you may see the following error messages.

Error Message	Cause	Solution
Unplayable File[*1]	Track/file format not supported	• Current track/file will be skipped. The next supported track/file plays automatically.
This function is not available because the system has encountered a file error or a DRM protected file.[*2]		
Bad Disc Please check owners manual Push Eject[*1]	Mechanical error	• Press the ⏏ (eject) button and remove the disc, and check that the error message is cleared. • Check that the disc is not damaged or deformed, and insert the disc again. ➡ **Protecting CDs** P. 288 • If the error message reappears, press the ⏏ button, and pull out the disc. • Insert a different disc. If the new disc plays, there is a problem with the first disc. • If the error message repeats, or the disc cannot be removed, contact a dealer. Do not try to force the disc out of the player.
This is a bad disc. Please see your owner's manual for more details. Push Eject.[*2]		
Mecha Error		
Bad Disc Please check owners manual[*1]	Servo error	
This is a bad disc. Please see your owner's manual for more details.[*2]		

*1:Models with one display
*2:Models with two displays

Error Message	Cause	Solution
Check Disc[*1]	Disc error	• Check that the disc is not damaged or deformed. **Protecting CDs** P. 288
Check the disc[*2]		
Heat Error[*2]	High temperature	• Turn the audio system off and allow the player to cool down until the error message is cleared.

*1:Models with one display
*2:Models with two displays

Models with navigation system

Hard Disk Drive (HDD) Audio

If an error occurs while playing the Hard Disk Drive (HDD) Audio, you may see the following error messages. If you cannot clear the error message, contact a dealer.

Error Message	Solution
HDD access error. Please consult your dealer.	—
The navigation system temperature is too high. For protection, the system will shut off until it cools down.	Turn the audio system off and allow the player to cool down until the error message is cleared.
The navigation system atmospheric pressure is too low. For protection, the system will shut off until the pressure returns to safe levels.	The navigation system has difficulty reading the HDD when the atmospheric pressure is too low. The navigation system starts up automatically when the atmospheric pressure returns to safe levels.
Unplayable File	Appears when a file format not supported. Current track will be skipped. The next supported track plays automatically.
There is no data available.	Appears when the HDD is empty or there are no available files in the HDD.
This function is not available during CD recording while the CD is recording to the HDD.	Appears when no available function is selected while the CD is recording to the HDD.
Generating voice recognition commands. Please try again later.	Appears when no available function is selected while the dictionary of the Song By Voice™ recognition function is generated.

iPod/USB Flash Drive

If an error occurs while playing an iPod or USB flash drive, you may see the following error messages. If you cannot clear the error message, contact a dealer.

Error Message	Solution
USB Error[*1]	Appears when there is a problem with the USB adapter unit[*1] or audio unit[*2]. Check if the device is compatible with the USB adapter unit[*1] or audio unit[*2].
Communication error detected. When safe, please reconnect your device.[*2]	
Bad USB Device Please check owners manual.[*1]	Appears when an incompatible device is connected. Disconnect the device. Then turn the audio system off, and turn it on again. Do not reconnect the device that caused the error.
This USB device is incompatible. Please see your owner's manual for more details.[*2]	
No Song[*1]	Appears when the iPod is empty. Check that compatible files are stored on the device.
Unsupported Ver[*1]	Appears when an unsupported iPod is connected. If it appears when a supported iPod is connected, update the iPod software to the newer version.
This version of iOS is not supported.[*2]	

*1:Models with one display
*2:Models with two displays

Error Message	Solution
Retry Connection[*1]	Appears when the system does not acknowledge the iPod. Reconnect the iPod.
There is an authentication error. When safe, please reconnect your device.[*2]	
Unplayable File[*1]	Appears when the files in the USB flash drive are DRM or an unsupported format. This error message appears for about 3 seconds, then plays the next song.
This function is not available because the system has encountered a file error or a DRM protected file.[*2]	Appears when you select the grayed-out option on the screen while displaying the DRM or an unsupported format file.
No Data[*1]	iPod[*2] Appears when the iPod is empty. USB flash drive Appears when the USB flash drive is empty or there are no MP3, WMA, or AAC files in the USB flash drive. iPod[*2] and USB flash drive Check that compatible files are stored on the device.
There is no data detected. When safe, please check your device and try again.[*2]	

*1:Models with one display
*2:Models with two displays

Error Message	Solution
Unsupported	Appears when an unsupported device is connected. If it appears when a supported device is connected, reconnect the device.
USB hubs are not supported. To listen to audio, directly connect device to USB port.[*2]	Appears when the USB device is connected via the USB hubs. Disconnect the USB hubs and directly connect the device to the USB port.

*2:Models with two displays

U.S. models

Pandora®

If an error occurs while playing Pandora®, you may see the following error messages.
If you cannot clear the error message, contact a dealer.

Models with one display

Error Message	Solution
PANDORA No Station	Appears when there is no station list on the device. Use the device to create a station.
PANDORA Requires Update	Appears when Pandora version is not supported. Please update the device application.
PANDORA Unavailable	Appears when Pandora is performing system maintenance. Try again later.
PANDORA Cannot Connect	Appears when Pandora is unable to play music. Check your device.
PANDORA Loading...	Appears when Pandora is loading.

Models with two displays

Error Message	Solution
This USB device is incompatible. Please see your owner's manual for more details.	Appears when an incompatible device is connected. Disconnect the device. Then turn the audio system off, and turn it again. Do not reconnect the device that caused the error.
There is an unsupported device detected. When safe, please reconnect your device.	Appears when there is a problem with the audio system. Check if the device is compatible with the audio system.
No stations have been created. When safe, please create a station on the device.	Appears when there is no station list on the device. Use the device to create a station.
There is no active station.	
This PANDORA station is currently not available. Please select another station.	
Music licenses force us to limit the number of tracks you may skip each hour.	Appears when you try to skip a track over the predetermined number of times in an hour.
The system is unable to save rating. The system is unable to save bookmark. or The system is unable to skip.	Appears when the commanded operation is failed. Try again later.
There is no data available.	Appears when no data is available with Pandora® activated. Reboot the app and reconnect the device.
The PANDORA app version on your device is not supported. When safe, please update the app and try again later.	Appears when Pandora® version is not supported. Update Pandora® to the latest version.

Error Message	Solution
PANDORA is performing system maintenance. Please try again later.	Appears when the Pandora® server is in maintenance. Try again later.
The system cannot connect to PANDORA. When safe, please check your device.	Appears when Pandora® is unable to play music. Check your device.
The system is unable to play PANDORA. When safe, login to PANDORA.	
The maximum number of stations that can be created is 100. To create more, please delete one or more previously created stations.	Appears when the number of created stations reaches the limitation. Delete one or more created stations from Pandora® app on the connected device.
The system is unable to create a new station. Please try again.	Appears when there is a temporary error with the audio system. Try again later.
The system is unable to play PANDORA. Please try again later.	Appears when your connected device has network problems. Check your device.
When safe, please check your device.	Appears when your connected device has some kind of problem such as being out of the service area. Check that the connected device is within the service area, and then try again to play Pandora®. If the problem persists, consult a dealer.
The system is unable to play PANDORA. Music licensing restricts play in this area.	Appears when you try playing the Pandora® in the country where the service is not available.

Models with two displays

Apple CarPlay/Android Auto

If an error occurs while using the Apple CarPlay or Android Auto, you may see the following error messages. If you cannot clear the error message, contact a dealer.

Error Message	Solution
Information Screen **A charging error has occurred with the connected device. When safe, please check the compatibility of the device and USB cable. Please see your owner's manual for more details.** On Demand Multi-Use Display™ **This USB device is incompatible. Please see your owner's manual for more details.**	Appears when an incompatible device is connected. Disconnect the device. Then turn the audio system off, and turn it again. Do not reconnect the device that caused the error.
Unable to start Apple CarPlay. When safe, please confirm the USB connection.	Appears when Apple CarPlay or Android Auto fails to recognize your device. Check if your device is compatible with Apple CarPlay or Android Auto, or the latest version of the app is installed on your device.
Unable to start Android Auto. When safe, please confirm the USB connection.	
Unable to start Apple CarPlay. When safe, please try again.	Appears when Apple CarPlay or Android Auto fails to recognize your device. Reconnect your device and try again.
Unable to start Android Auto. When safe, please try again.	
Unable to start Apple CarPlay with your device. Your device is connected in digital audio mode.	Appears when your connected device is incompatible with Apple CarPlay. Check if your device is compatible with Apple CarPlay.

Error Message	Solution
This device is not compatible with Android Auto.	Appears when your connected device is incompatible with Android Auto. Check if your device is compatible with Android Auto or the latest version of the app is installed on your device.
Please update to the latest version of Android Auto.	Appears when your version of the Android Auto is not supported. Update Android Auto to the latest version.
Connection failed. Please confirm Bluetooth connection status and try again.	Appears when *Bluetooth*® connection is failed. Check the *Bluetooth*® connection of this audio system and your connected device.

SiriusXM® Radio Service*

■ Subscribing to SiriusXM® Radio

1. You need your radio ID ready before registering for subscription. To see the ID in the On Demand Multi-Use Display™, select channel up/down icons until **CH 000** and the radio ID appears.
2. Have your radio ID and credit card number ready, and either call or visit the SiriusXM® website to subscribe.

■ Receiving SiriusXM® Radio

Switch to the SiriusXM® mode by pressing the **MODE** button on the steering wheel, or through the On Demand Multi-Use Display™, and stay in this mode for about 30 minutes until the service is activated. Make sure your vehicle is in an open area with good reception.

■ SiriusXM® Radio Display Messages

Loading...:
SiriusXM® is loading the audio or program information.
No Signal:
The signal is too weak in the current location.
Unsubscribed channel:
You are not subscribed to the channel selected.
Unavailable channel:
No such channel exists, the channel is not part of your subscription, or the artist or title information is unavailable.
Check the antenna, Disconnected antenna, Shorted antenna:
There is a problem with the SiriusXM® antenna. Contact a dealer.

Subscribing to SiriusXM® Radio

Contact Information for SiriusXM® Radio:
- U.S.: SiriusXM® Radio at *www.siriusxm.com/subscribenow*, or 1-866-635-2349.
- Canada: SiriusXM® Canada at *www.siriusxm.ca/subscribe-now*, or 1-877-209-0079.

Receiving SiriusXM® Radio

The SiriusXM® satellites are in orbit over the equator; therefore, objects south of the vehicle may cause satellite reception interruptions. Satellite signals are more likely to be blocked by tall buildings and mountains the farther north you travel from the equator.

You may experience reception problems under the following circumstances:
- In a location with an obstruction to the south of your vehicle.
- In tunnels
- On the lower level of a multi-tiered road
- Large items carried on the roof rack

* Not available on all models

Recommended CDs

- Use only high-quality CD-R or CD-RW discs labeled for audio use.
- Use only CD-R or CD-RW discs on which the recordings are closed.
- Play only standard round-shaped CDs.

The CD packages or jackets should have one of these marks.



CDs with MP3, WMA or AAC files

- Some software files may not allow for audio play or text data display.
- Some versions of MP3, WMA or AAC formats may be unsupported.

Recommended CDs

A Dual-disc cannot play on this audio unit. If recorded under certain conditions, a CD-R or CD-RW may not play either.

Continued

■ Protecting CDs

Follow these precautions when handling or storing CDs:

- Store a CD in its case when it is not being played.
- When wiping a CD, use a soft clean cloth from the center to the outside edge.
- Handle a CD by its edge. Never touch either surface.
- Never insert foreign objects into the CD player.
- Keep CDs out of direct sunlight and extreme heat.
- Do not place stabilizer rings or labels on the CD.
- Avoid fingerprints, liquids, and felt-tip pens on the CD.

Protecting CDs

NOTICE

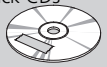
Do not insert a damaged CD. It may be stuck inside and damage the audio unit.

Examples:

- Bubbled, wrinkled, labeled, and excessively thick CDs



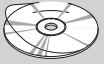
Bubbled/ Wrinkled



With Label/ Sticker



Using Printer Label Kit



Sealed

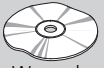


With Plastic Ring

- Damaged CDs

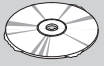


Chipped/ Cracked



Warped

- Poor quality CDs



Burrs

- Small CDs



3-inch (8-cm) CD

Compatible iPod, iPhone, and USB Flash Drives

■ iPod and iPhone Model Compatibility

Model
iPod (5th generation)
iPod classic 80/160GB (launched in 2007)
iPod classic 120GB (launched in 2008)
iPod classic 160GB (launched in 2009)
iPod nano (1st to 7th generation) released between 2005 and 2012
iPod touch (1st to 6th generation) released between 2007 and 2015
iPhone 3G/iPhone 3GS/iPhone 4/iPhone 4s/iPhone 5/iPhone 5c/iPhone 5s/iPhone 6/ iPhone 6 Plus/iPhone 6s/iPhone 6s Plus/iPhone SE*1/iPhone 7/iPhone 7 Plus/ iPhone 8*1/iPhone 8 Plus*1/iPhone X*1

*1:Models with two displays

■ USB Flash Drives

- A USB flash drive of 256 MB or higher is recommended.
- Some digital audio players may not be compatible.
- Some USB flash drives (e.g., a device with security lockout) may not work.
- Some software files may not allow for audio play or text data display.
- Some versions of MP3, WMA, or AAC formats may be unsupported.

iPod and iPhone Model Compatibility

This system may not work with all software versions of these devices.

USB Flash Drives

Files on the USB flash drive are played in their stored order. This order may be different from the order displayed on your PC or device.

Honda App License Agreement

■ END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT

PLEASE CAREFULLY READ THIS END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT (THIS "AGREEMENT") WHICH GOVERNS YOUR USE OF THE SOFTWARE INSTALLED ON YOUR HONDA OR ACURA VEHICLE (YOUR "VEHICLE") AS WELL AS THE APPLICATIONS, SERVICES, FUNCTIONS, AND CONTENT PROVIDED THROUGH THE SOFTWARE (COLLECTIVELY, THE "SERVICES"). YOUR USE OF THE SOFTWARE OR SERVICES WILL SERVE AS YOUR CONSENT TO THE TERMS OF THIS AGREEMENT. THE SOFTWARE IS OWNED (OR LICENSED), PROVIDED, AND/OR OPERATED BY AMERICAN HONDA MOTOR CO. INC., ("HONDA," "US," "WE," OR "OUR"), WITH ITS BUSINESS ADDRESS AT 1919 TORRANCE BLVD., TORRANCE, CA 90501. REFERENCE TO "HONDA" IN THIS AGREEMENT INCLUDES HONDA'S PARENT COMPANY AND ITS AFFILIATES AND DESIGNATED AGENTS. THE SERVICES ARE OWNED (OR LICENSED), PROVIDED, AND/OR OPERATED BY HONDA OR A THIRD-PARTY SERVICE PROVIDER (A "PROVIDER"). REFERENCE TO A "PROVIDER" IN THIS AGREEMENT INCLUDES SUCH PROVIDER'S PARENT COMPANY, AFFILIATES, AND DESIGNATED AGENTS.

A. Description of the Software. The SOFTWARE includes the software, firmware and the like, installed and executing on your VEHICLE during manufacture, and thereafter updated from time to time by HONDA, you or an authorized HONDA dealer (a "DEALER"). The SOFTWARE allows you to access and use a variety of SERVICES, including but not limited to: (a) HONDA applications, services, and content provided through the SOFTWARE (together, "HONDA SERVICES"); and (b) PROVIDER applications, services, and content provided through the SOFTWARE (together, "PROVIDER SERVICES"), each of which may provide access to various information, media, content, and services.

B. SOFTWARE Licensing and Intellectual Property.

1. SOFTWARE. This AGREEMENT grants you a non-exclusive, limited, and revocable license to use the SOFTWARE and SERVICES solely (a) as installed on your VEHICLE by HONDA, (b) as updated on your Vehicle by HONDA, you (but only as and when directed by HONDA), or a DEALER and (c) as permitted under the terms of this AGREEMENT.

2. HONDA Services. The SOFTWARE may provide you with access to various HONDA SERVICES. Installation, activation, or use of HONDA SERVICES may require your consent to additional terms, conditions, and privacy policies applicable to those HONDA SERVICES (the "HONDA TERMS"). You acknowledge and agree that any collection, use, sharing of data generated by your VEHICLE or your use of your VEHICLE, and your use of the HONDA SERVICES shall be subject to this AGREEMENT and any additional HONDA TERMS that may be specifically applicable to such HONDA SERVICES or data generation. The HONDA SERVICES may collect, use, and share such data while you are using the SOFTWARE.

3. Open-Source Software. The SOFTWARE and SERVICES may incorporate software licensed to HONDA under free or open-source licenses which govern HONDA's distribution and your use of such software. HONDA and the third-party authors, licensors, and distributors of such software disclaim all warranties and all liability arising from any and all use or distribution of the software. To the extent such software is provided under terms that differ from the applicable free or open-source licenses, those terms are offered by HONDA alone. Additional information regarding free and open-source software incorporated in the SOFTWARE and SERVICES is available in this manual or within the SOFTWARE.

4. Provider Services. The SOFTWARE may provide you with access to various PROVIDER SERVICES. Installation or use of such PROVIDER SERVICES may require your consent to additional terms, conditions, and privacy policies of the applicable PROVIDER (the "PROVIDER TERMS"). This AGREEMENT restricts the manner in which you can install and use PROVIDER SERVICES but does not grant you a license or permission to use such PROVIDER SERVICES. Your permission to use PROVIDER SERVICES is limited and subject to any license grants, conditions, and limitations included in the PROVIDER TERMS. You acknowledge that any collection, use, sharing of your information, targeted advertising practices by PROVIDERS, and your use of the PROVIDER SERVICES shall be subject to both this AGREEMENT and any applicable PROVIDER TERMS. The PROVIDER SERVICES may collect, use, and share such information while you are using the SOFTWARE.

5. License Limitations and Restrictions on Use.
(a) Limited License. You understand and agree that the SOFTWARE and SERVICES are licensed, not sold, to you solely for use in accordance with this AGREEMENT and any applicable PROVIDER TERMS, and any documentation for the VEHICLE made available to you by HONDA (any "DOCUMENTATION"). HONDA and its licensors reserve all rights in the SOFTWARE and HONDA SERVICES not expressly granted to you under this AGREEMENT. PROVIDERS and their licensors reserve all rights in the PROVIDER SERVICES not expressly granted to you under the applicable PROVIDER TERMS.

(b) Restrictions on Use. The licenses granted under this AGREEMENT do not permit you to use the SOFTWARE or SERVICES on a device other than your VEHICLE. As a condition of using the SOFTWARE and SERVICES, you agree that you may not and will not:

(1) copy, download, distribute, modify, publish, sell, rent, lease, lend, license, sublicense, reuse, or create derivative works of the SOFTWARE or SERVICES or any of the content or other material within the SOFTWARE or SERVICES, including without limitation, HONDA or PROVIDER names, logos, or any other trademarks of HONDA or PROVIDERS or used in association with the SOFTWARE or any SERVICES, except as required to use the SOFTWARE or SERVICES in accordance with this AGREEMENT, any applicable PROVIDER TERMS, and the DOCUMENTATION;

(2) access or use the SOFTWARE or SERVICES in any manner intended to damage or impair the operation of the SOFTWARE or SERVICES or interfere with anyone else's use and enjoyment of the SOFTWARE or SERVICES;

(3) access or attempt to access any system or server on which the SOFTWARE or SERVICES is hosted or modify or alter the SOFTWARE or SERVICES in any way;

(4) use the SOFTWARE or SERVICES for any unlawful purpose, or in violation of any third party rights;

(5) use the SOFTWARE or SERVICES in violation of any applicable traffic regulations, rules or laws, including but not limited to any driver distraction laws, rules or regulations;

(6) violate the terms of this AGREEMENT, any HONDA TERMS, any PROVIDER TERMS or other applicable third-party terms, conditions, and privacy policies; or

(7) reverse engineer, decompile, disassemble, attempt to derive the source code of, nor permit others to reverse engineer, decompile, or disassemble, or attempt to derive the source code of the SOFTWARE or SERVICES, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted (a) by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation or (b) the terms of applicable free or opensource software licenses.

6. Intellectual Property Rights. All title and intellectual property rights in and to the SOFTWARE and SERVICES, the accompanying DOCUMENTATION, and all copies of the SOFTWARE or SERVICES are owned by HONDA, PROVIDERS, or their suppliers or licensors. This AGREEMENT does not grant you any rights in connection with any trademarks or service marks of HONDA, PROVIDERS, or their licensors, affiliates, or suppliers.

7. Export Restrictions: You acknowledge that the SOFTWARE and SERVICES are subject to U.S., European Union, and other export jurisdictions. You agree to comply with all applicable international and national laws that apply to the SOFTWARE and SERVICES, including the U.S. Export Administration Regulations, as well as end-user, end-use, and destination restrictions issued by the U.S. and other governments.

C. SOFTWARE Operation

1. HONDA reserves the right to suspend or terminate your access to and use of the SOFTWARE or SERVICES if you are found to be in violation of this AGREEMENT or as reasonably deemed necessary by HONDA.

2. Eligibility/Registration/Activation. The SOFTWARE is intended for and available to individuals who (a) are of legal age of majority in their jurisdiction of residence (and at least 18 years of age), or are younger than 18 years of age and possess a valid driver's license issued by their jurisdiction of residence, and (b) own or have permissive access to a compatible VEHICLE. We do not knowingly collect any information, including personal information, from children under 13. If we learn or are notified that we have collected personal information of a child under 13, we will immediately take steps to delete such information.

3. Use of PROVIDER SERVICES through the SOFTWARE. Certain PROVIDER SERVICES made available through the SOFTWARE may require that you register or otherwise have an account with the PROVIDER and agree to PROVIDER TERMS. Any use of any of such PROVIDER SERVICES within the SOFTWARE is subject to this AGREEMENT and the applicable PROVIDER TERMS. HONDA does not exercise control over such PROVIDER SERVICES and is not responsible or liable for the availability, security, or content of such PROVIDER SERVICES, and the inclusion of any PROVIDER SERVICES does not imply a referral from, the approval of, or the endorsement by HONDA of such PROVIDER SERVICES. HONDA is not responsible or liable, directly or indirectly, for any damage relating to or resulting from your use of the PROVIDER SERVICES.

4. Links to Third Party Sites: The SOFTWARE may provide you with the ability to access third-party sites and content through the use of the SOFTWARE or SERVICES. The third-party sites and content are not under the control of HONDA. HONDA is not responsible or liable, directly or indirectly, for such third-party websites and their content or for any damage relating to or resulting from your access or use of such websites and content.

5. Unauthorized Use and Abuse. You are responsible for ensuring your (and any authorized third parties') use of the SOFTWARE and SERVICES remains in compliance with this AGREEMENT and all other applicable HONDA TERMS and PROVIDER TERMS. You acknowledge and agree that any use of the SOFTWARE or SERVICES occurring through your VEHICLE will be deemed your actions and that HONDA and PROVIDERS may rely upon such actions. You agree to immediately notify us if you suspect fraudulent or abusive activity involving the SOFTWARE or SERVICES. If you so notify us or if we otherwise suspect fraudulent or abusive activity, you agree to cooperate with us in any fraud investigation and to use any fraud prevention measures we prescribe. Your failure to immediately notify us or cooperate to use such measures will result in your liability for all fraudulent usage or abusive activity associated with your VEHICLE.

6. SOFTWARE Updates. The SOFTWARE and SERVICES may be updated when your VEHICLE is serviced by a DEALER or remotely, over-the-air, by HONDA from time to time; such updates may occur with or without further notice or your future consent. The SOFTWARE may be updated at HONDA's discretion and for any purpose including, without limitation, to patch or otherwise improve the SOFTWARE or SERVICES functionality, security, or stability. All updates to the SOFTWARE and SERVICES are subject to this AGREEMENT and any other applicable HONDA TERMS and PROVIDER TERMS.

7. Uninstalling, Removing, and Replacing the SOFTWARE. Replacing SOFTWARE or HONDA SERVICES with software or firmware not provided and installed by HONDA or a DEALER will render all representations and warranties for the SOFTWARE, HONDA SERVICES, and VEHICLE functionality reliant upon the SOFTWARE or HONDA SERVICES null and void.

D. SOFTWARE Operational Notices and Warnings

1. Vehicle Geolocation Information. You acknowledge that your VEHICLE may be equipped with certain traffic and map features. The traffic feature will automatically collect and transmit, through GPS technology, your Vehicle's current location (longitude and latitude), travel direction and speed ("VEHICLE GEOLOCATION INFORMATION") to HONDA and PROVIDERS. The VEHICLE GEOLOCATION INFORMATION is used by HONDA and PROVIDERS to provide traffic and navigation-related information to you, but may also be used to provide other SERVICES or offers to you. HONDA will not use such VEHICLE GEOLOCATION INFORMATION for its own marketing efforts, or provide such information to unaffiliated third parties for their own purposes, without your express consent.

2. Potential Map Inaccuracy and Route Safety. Maps used by this system may be inaccurate because of changes in roads, traffic controls, routing, or driving conditions. Always use good judgment and common sense when following suggested routes. Do not follow the route suggestions if doing so would result in an unsafe or illegal driving maneuver, if you would be placed in an unsafe situation, or if you would be directed into an area that you consider unsafe. Do not rely on any navigation features included in the system to route you to emergency services. Not all emergency services such as police, fire stations, hospitals, or clinics are likely to be contained in the map database for such navigation features. Ask local authorities or an emergency services operator for such locations and routes. The driver is ultimately responsible for the safe operation of the vehicle and therefore, must evaluate whether it is safe to follow the suggested directions. Any navigation features are provided only as an aid. Make your driving decisions based on your observations of local conditions and existing traffic regulations. Navigation features are not a substitute for your personal judgment. Any route suggestions made by the SOFTWARE or SERVICES should never replace any local traffic regulations or your personal judgment or knowledge of safe driving practices.

3. Speech Recognition: You acknowledge and understand that HONDA and PROVIDERS may record, retain, and use voices commands when you use the speech recognition components of the SOFTWARE or SERVICES. You and all VEHICLE operators and passengers (a) consent to the recording and retention of voice commands in support of providing speech recognition components and (b) release HONDA and PROVIDERS from all claims, liabilities, and losses that may result from any use of such recorded voice commands. Recognition errors are inherent in speech recognition. It is your responsibility to monitor any speech recognition functions included in the system and address any errors. Neither HONDA nor PROVIDERS will be liable for any damages arising out of errors in the speech recognition process.

4. Distraction Hazards. Navigation features may require manual (non-verbal) input or setup. Attempting to perform such set-up or insert data while driving can seriously distract your attention and could cause a crash or other serious consequences; the ability to undertake such interactions may also be limited by state or local law, which laws you are responsible to know and follow. Even occasional short scans of the screen may be hazardous if your attention has been diverted away from your driving at a critical time. Pull over and stop the vehicle in a safe and legal manner before attempting to access a function of the system requiring prolonged attention. Do not raise the volume excessively. Keep the volume at a level where you can still hear outside traffic and emergency signals while driving. Driving while unable to hear these sounds could result in a crash.

E. Information Collection and Storage

1. Information Collection, Use, Transmission and Storage of Data. Consent to Use of Data: You agree that HONDA and PROVIDERS may collect and use your information gathered in any manner as part of product support services related to the SOFTWARE or related services. HONDA may share such information with third parties, including, without limitation, PROVIDERS, third party software and services suppliers, their affiliates and/or their designated agents, solely to improve their products or to provide services or technologies to you. HONDA, third party software and systems suppliers, their affiliates and/or their designated agent may disclose this information to others, but not in a form that personally identifies you.

2. Information Storage. Depending on the type of multimedia system you have in your VEHICLE, certain information may be stored for ease of use of the SOFTWARE including, without limitation, search history, location history in certain applications, previous and saved destinations, map locations within certain applications, and device numbers and contact information.

(a) Vehicle Health Information. Your VEHICLE may remotely transmit information regarding the status and health of your VEHICLE ("VEHICLE INFORMATION") to HONDA without notification to you. VEHICLE INFORMATION may contain VEHICLE maintenance and malfunction status that is derived from VEHICLE diagnostic data and includes, but is not limited to, status of powered doors and windows, battery life data, battery charging data, VEHICLE speed, coolant temperature, air compressor revolution, output power, warning codes, diagnostic trouble codes, fuel injection volume, and engine rotations per minute. VEHICLE HEALTH INFORMATION may be used by HONDA for research and development, to deliver HONDA SERVICES and information to you, and to contact you, and is retained only for a period of time necessary to fulfill these goals.

(b) VEHICLE Geolocation Data (non-navigation/map based). If you opt-in to geolocation-based SERVICES, your vehicle's geolocation data (latitude and longitude) will be automatically sent from your VEHICLE to HONDA and PROVIDERS.

(c) You understand that the inputting or uploading of information to your VEHICLE's multimedia system or the SOFTWARE or SERVICES is at your own risk and that HONDA is not responsible for unauthorized access to or use of any personal or other information. All information uploaded to the SOFTWARE and SERVICES may be stored on your VEHICLES's multimedia system and you understand that the security and safety of your VEHICLE's multimedia system is your sole responsibility.

F. NO WARRANTY. You understand and agree that your use of the SOFTWARE and SERVICES are solely at your own risk and that you will be solely responsible for any damage to your VEHICLE's multimedia system or any other equipment or any loss of data that may result from your use of the SOFTWARE or SERVICES. THE SOFTWARE AND SERVICES ARE PROVIDED ON AN "AS IS" AND "AS AVAILABLE" BASIS WITHOUT ANY WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESSED, IMPLIED OR STATUTORY. WE SPECIFICALLY DISCLAIM ANY IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. HONDA makes no warranties that the SOFTWARE or SERVICES will meet your requirements, or that the SOFTWARE or SERVICES will be uninterrupted, timely, secure, non-infringing or error free. You understand and agree that you are responsible for any and all charges, costs or expenses associated with your use of the SOFTWARE or SERVICES. Advice or information, whether oral or written, obtained by you from us or through the SOFTWARE or SERVICES are provided for informational purposes only and will not create any warranty not expressly made herein. You should not rely on any such information or advice. We assume no liability or responsibility for any errors or omissions in the SOFTWARE or SERVICES. We do not make any warranty or representation that your use of the material displayed on, or obtained through, the SOFTWARE or SERVICES is non-infringing of any rights of any third party. Any decision or action taken by you on the basis of information or content provided via the application is at your sole discretion and risk. HONDA and PROVIDERS are not responsible or liable for any such decision, or for the accuracy, completeness, usefulness, or availability of any content or information displayed, transmitted, or otherwise made available via the SOFTWARE or SERVICES. To the extent jurisdictions do not allow the exclusion of certain warranties, some of the above exclusions may not apply to you.

G. LIMITATIONS ON LIABILITY. You and HONDA are each waiving important rights.
1. Limitations on YOUR liability. HONDA cannot recover from you any consequential, indirect, incidental, or special damages, or attorney's fees in connection with your use of the SOFTWARE or HONDA SERVICES. HONDA WAIVES TO THE FULLEST EXTENT ALLOWED BY LAW ANY CLAIM FOR DAMAGES OTHER THAN DIRECT, COMPENSATORY DAMAGES AS LIMITED IN THIS AGREEMENT.

2. Limitation on HONDA and PROVIDER liability. Neither HONDA nor PROVIDERS will be liable to you or any other party for consequential, indirect, incidental, special, or punitive damages (including without limitation lost profits) in connection with your use of the SOFTWARE or SERVICES, even if HONDA or PROVIDERS are aware of the possibility of such damages. These limitations apply to all claims, including, without limitation, claims in contract and tort (such as negligence, product liability and strict liability). To the extent that a jurisdiction does not permit the exclusion or limitation of liability as set forth herein our liability is limited to the maximum extent permitted by law in such states. If HONDA or PROVIDERS are found liable to you for any reason, you agree that the aggregate liability of all these parties to you for any claim is limited to ten U.S. dollars (US $10.00). Neither HONDA nor any PROVIDER would have agreed to provide the SOFTWARE or SERVICES to you if you did not agree to this limitation. This amount is the sole and exclusive liability of HONDA and PROVIDERS to you, and is payable as liquidated damages and not as a penalty. Except where prohibited by law, you may not bring any claim against HONDA or any third-party beneficiary more than two (2) years after the claim arises. We do not have any liability for SOFTWARE or SERVICES interruptions of any length.

(a) Release of HONDA and PROVIDERS For yourself and anyone else claiming under you, you agree to release and discharge HONDA, PROVIDERS, their respective officers, directors, and employees, and each third-party beneficiary from all claims, liabilities and losses in connection with the SOFTWARE or SERVICES, including, but not limited to claims for personal injury or property damage arising from the total or partial failure of performance of the SOFTWARE or SERVICES, even if caused by or based upon the negligence, gross negligence, strict products liability, Deceptive Trade Practices Act violations, bad faith, or breach of warranty of us or the malfunction of the SOFTWARE or SOFTWARE SERVICES. YOU AGREE TO WAIVE TO THE FULLEST EXTENT ALLOWED BY LAW, ANY CLAIM FOR DAMAGES OTHER THAN DIRECT, COMPENSATORY DAMAGES AS LIMITED IN THIS AGREEMENT. YOU HEREBY RELEASE AND DISCHARGE HONDA AND ITS LICENSORS AND CONTRACTORS (INCLUDING ANY THIRD PARTIES PROVIDING ALL OR PART OF THE SOFTWARE OR SERVICES) FROM AND AGAINST ANY CLAIMS, DAMAGES, EXPENSES AND LIABILITY ARISING FROM OR RELATED TO ANY INJURIES, DAMAGES, OR LOSSES TO ANY PERSON (INCLUDING DEATH) OR PROPERTY OF ANY KIND RESULTING IN WHOLE OR PART, DIRECTLY OR INDIRECTLY, FROM YOUR USE OF THE SOFTWARE OR SERVICES.

H. Survival. You agree that the limitations of liability and indemnities in this AGREEMENT will survive even after the AGREEMENT has ended. These limitations of liability apply not only to you, but to anyone using the SOFTWARE or SERVICES via your VEHICLE, to anyone making a claim on your behalf, and to any claims made by your family, employees, customers, or others arising out of or relating to your VEHICLE, the SOFTWARE, or SERVICES.

I. Availability/Interruption. The SOFTWARE and certain SERVICES are made available through your VEHICLE's compatible multimedia system when the VEHICLE is turned on. Certain SERVICES may be available only through your compatible mobile device when it is within the operating range of the VEHICLE and a wireless carrier. The availability of the SOFTWARE and SERVICES may be subject to transmission limitation or interruption, including but not limited to technical obsolesce or sunsetting of the hardware, software or firmware, inside of or external to the Vehicle, required for data transmission or receipt. HONDA does not guarantee that the SOFTWARE, SERVICES, or any portion thereof will be available at all times or in all areas. You acknowledge and agree that HONDA is not responsible for performance degradation, interruption or delays. You acknowledge that HONDA shall not be liable to you if the SOFTWARE or SERVICES in a given location are not available. If the SOFTWARE or SERVICES are not available within your intended location, you agree that your sole remedy shall be to cease using the SOFTWARE and SERVICES.

J. PRODUCT SUPPORT: Product support for the SOFTWARE is provided by HONDA. For product support, please refer to HONDA instructions provided in the DOCUMENTATION. Should you have any questions concerning this AGREEMENT, or if you desire to contact HONDA for any other reason, please refer to the HONDA contact information provided in the DOCUMENTATION.

K. Termination and Transfer.

1. Termination. This AGREEMENT is effective until terminated by you or US. WE may terminate this AGREEMENT for any or no reason, and with or without notice to you. Your rights under this AGREEMENT will terminate automatically without notice from US if you fail to comply with any term of this AGREEMENT. Upon termination of this AGREEMENT, you shall cease all use of the SOFTWARE and SERVICES.

2. Transfer: You may permanently transfer your rights under this AGREEMENT only as part of a sale or transfer of the VEHICLE, provided you retain no copies, you transfer all of the SOFTWARE and HONDA SERVICES (including all component parts, the media and printed materials, and any upgrades), and the recipient agrees to the terms of this AGREEMENT. You agree to notify HONDA upon the sale or transfer of the VEHICLE. To contact HONDA, please refer to the HONDA contact information provided in the DOCUMENTATION.

L. Changes to the SOFTWARE or SERVICES. WE may change, modify, or update the SOFTWARE or SERVICES from time to time. Unless explicitly stated otherwise, any new features or services that augment or enhance the SOFTWARE or SERVICES in the future shall respectively be considered part of the SOFTWARE or SERVICES and subject to this AGREEMENT. WE reserve the right at any time and from time to time to interrupt, restrict, modify, suspend, discontinue, temporarily or permanently, the SOFTWARE or SERVICES (or any portion thereof), with or without notice to you, and you agree that HONDA shall not be liable to you or to any third party for any modification, suspension or discontinuance of the SOFTWARE or SERVICES.

M.ARBITRATION:

PLEASE READ THIS ARBITRATION PROVISION CAREFULLY TO UNDERSTAND YOUR RIGHTS. YOU AGREE THAT ANY CLAIM THAT YOU MAY HAVE IN THE FUTURE MUST BE RESOLVED THROUGH BINDING ARBITRATION. YOU WAIVE THE RIGHT TO HAVE YOUR DISPUTE HEARD IN COURT AND WAIVE THE RIGHT TO BRING CLASS CLAIMS. YOU UNDERSTAND THAT DISCOVERY AND APPEAL RIGHTS ARE MORE LIMITED IN ARBITRATION.

Arbitration is a method of resolving a claim, dispute or controversy without filing a lawsuit. By agreeing to arbitrate, the right to go to court is waived and instead claims, disputes or controversies are submitted to binding arbitration. This provision sets forth the terms and conditions of our agreement. YOU and HONDA agree and acknowledge that this Agreement affects interstate commerce and the Federal Arbitration Act ("FAA") applies. By using the Software, Vehicle, or Services, YOU elect to have disputes resolved by arbitration. YOU, HONDA or any involved third party may pursue a Claim. "Claim" means any dispute between YOU, HONDA, or any involved third party relating to your use of the Software, the Vehicle, or the Services, this Agreement, or our relationship, including any representations, omissions or warranties. "Claim" does not include personal injury or wrongful death claims. YOU or HONDA may seek remedies in small claims court or provisional judicial remedies without arbitrating. In addition, notwithstanding anything herein to the contrary, YOU or HONDA may seek equitable relief in a court of competent jurisdiction.

YOU or HONDA may select arbitration with American Arbitration Association, JAMS or National Arbitration and Mediation. Contact these sponsors for their rules. The hearing will be in the federal district where YOU reside. If agreed, it may be by telephone or written submissions. Filing and arbitrator fees to be paid per the sponsor rules. You may contact the sponsor for a fee waiver. If no fee waivers, HONDA will pay filing and arbitrator fees up to $5,000, unless law requires more. Each party is responsible for other fees. Arbitrator may award costs or fees to prevailing party, if permitted by law. HONDA will not seek fees, unless the claims are frivolous.

Arbitrator shall be an attorney or current or retired judge familiar with automotive or consumer software. The arbitrator shall follow substantive law, statute of limitations and decide all issues relating to the interpretation, construction, enforceability and applicability of this provision. The arbitrator may order relief permitted by law. This provision is governed and enforceable by the FAA. An award shall include a written opinion and be final, subject to appeal by the FAA.
This provision survives termination of this Agreement or relationship, bankruptcy, assignment or transfer. If part of this provision is unenforceable, the remainder remains in effect. If unenforceability allows arbitration as a class action, then this provision is entirely unenforceable. YOU may opt out within 30 days of your initial use of the Software by sending a signed, written notice to HONDA at Honda Financial Services, P.O. Box 165007, Irving, TX 75016. HONDA reserves the right to make changes to this provision after providing written notice and an opportunity to opt out.

N. Miscellaneous: You may not assign this AGREEMENT without HONDA's prior written consent. This AGREEMENT and any additional HONDA TERMS and PROVIDER TERMS represents the entire agreement between you and US. HONDA may amend the terms of this AGREEMENT by providing you with notices of such updated terms. If you do not consent to be bound by the updated terms, your sole remedy will be to cease using the SOFTWARE and SERVICES. If any part of this AGREEMENT is found invalid, void, or unenforceable, the balance of the AGREEMENT will remain valid and enforceable according to its terms. To the fullest extent permitted by law, and except as explicitly provided otherwise, this AGREEMENT and any disputes arising out of or relating to it will be governed by the laws of the State of California, except that California laws concerning choice of law or conflicts shall not apply if they would cause the substantive law of another jurisdiction to apply. Notwithstanding the foregoing, Section M shall be governed by the Federal Arbitration Act and the laws of the State of California, as applicable, as set forth therein. The failure to enforce any term of this AGREEMENT on one occasion shall not prevent enforcement on any other occasion or the enforcement of any other term. Headings and captions shall not be considered included for purposes of interpretation or application hereof, but are for convenience only.

Models with two displays

About Open Source Licenses

■ Important Information on the Software

About the software license of the product

The software installed in the product contains open source software.
See the following Alpine website for details on the open source software.
http://www.alpine.com/h/e/oss/download/

License information*

DTS

For DTS patents, see *http://patents.dts.com*. Manufactured under license from DTS Licensing Limited. DTS, the Symbol, & DTS and the Symbol together are registered trademarks, and DTS Digital Surround and Neural Surround are trademarks of DTS, Inc. © DTS, Inc. All Rights Reserved.





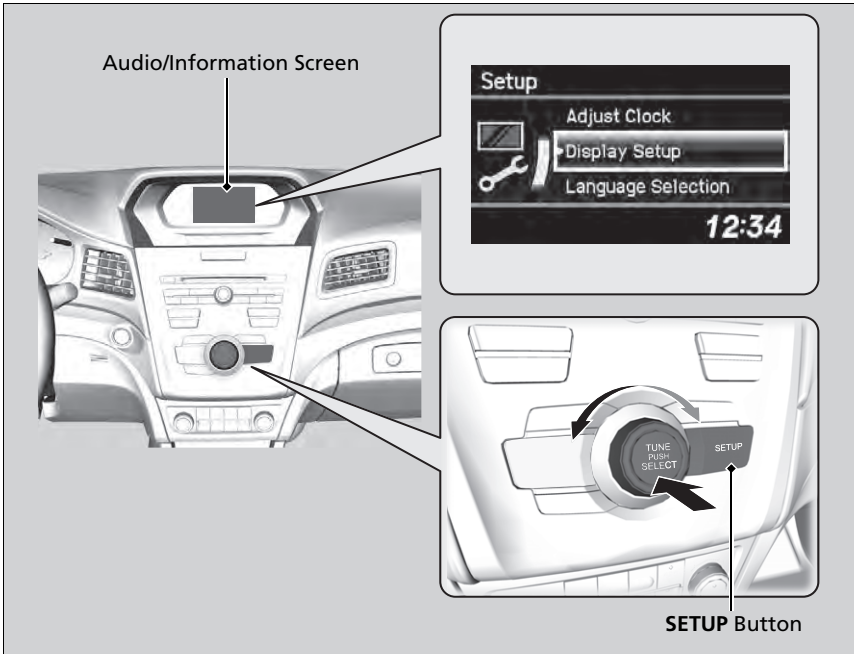
* Not available on all models

Models with one display

Use the audio/information screen to customize certain features.

■ How to customize

While the vehicle is at a complete stop with the power mode is ON, press the **SETUP** button, rotate ⟲ to select a setting item, and press ⏺.



Customized Features

When you customize settings:

- Make sure that the vehicle is at a complete stop.
- Shift to P.

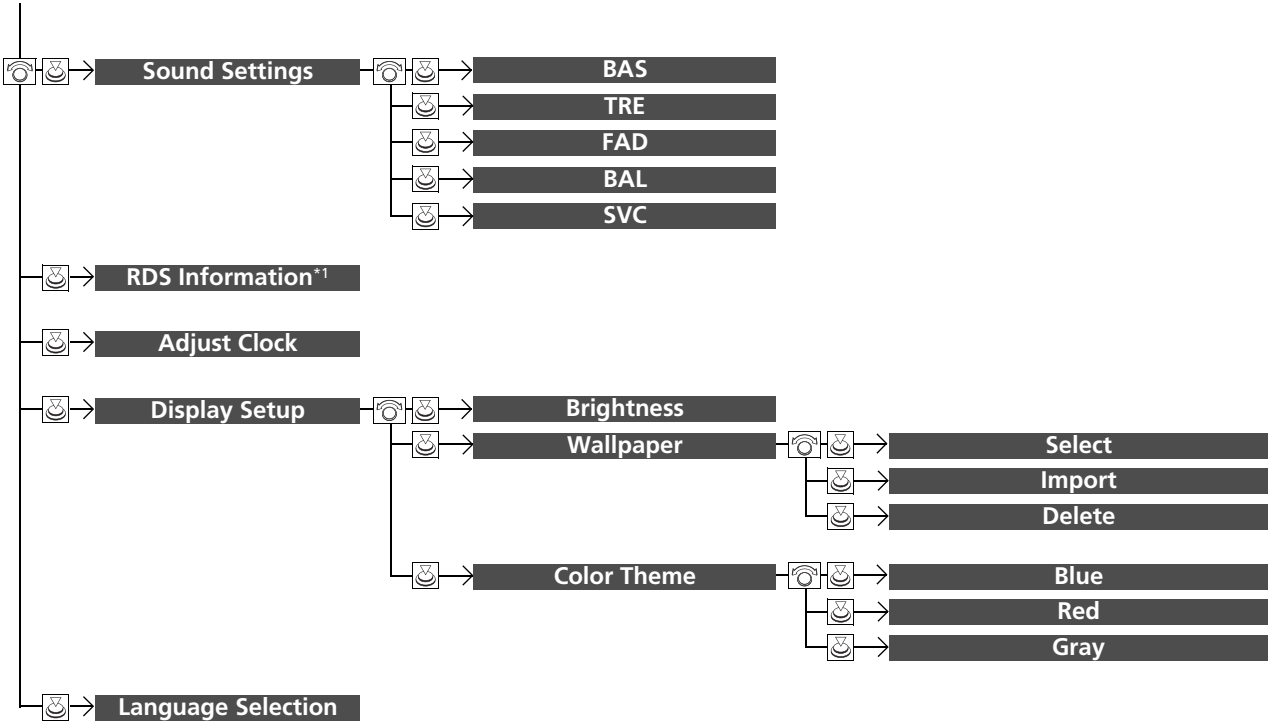
How to customize

To customize other features, rotate ⟲, and press ⏺.

➔ **List of customizable options** P. 307

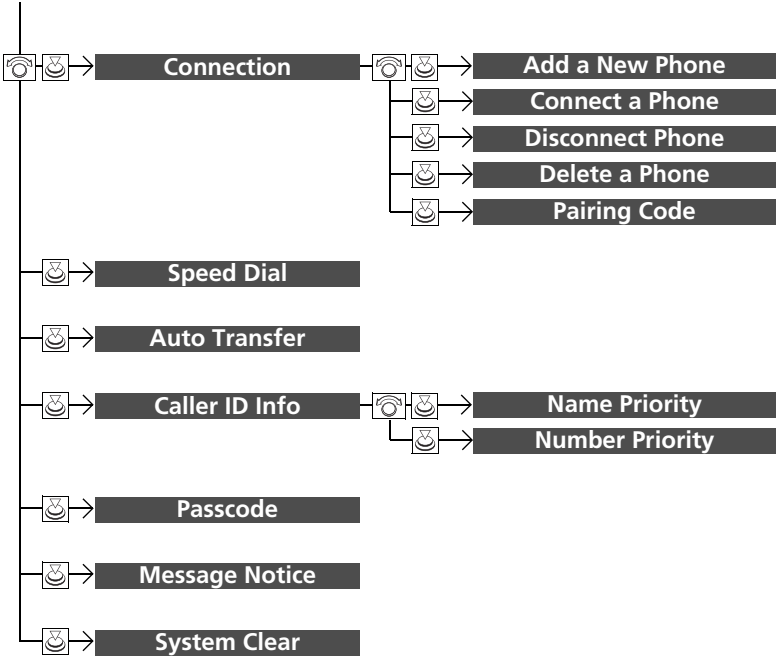
■ Customization Flow

Press the **SETUP** button.



*1 : Appears only when you select the FM mode.

Press the **Phone** or button and rotate to select **Phone Setup**, then press .



■ **List of customizable options**

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Sound Settings	**BAS**	Adjusts the settings of the audio speaker's sound. ➡ **Adjusting the Sound** P. 188	—
	TRE		
	FAD		
	BAL		
	SVC		
RDS Information[*2]		Turns on and off the RDS information.	On[*1]/Off
Adjust Clock		Adjust Clock. ➡ **Adjusting the Clock** P. 106	—

*1:Default Setting
*2:Appears only when you select the FM mode.

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Display Setup	**Brightness**		Changes the brightness of the audio/information screen.	—
	Wallpaper	**Select**	Changes the wallpaper type.	**Clock**[*1]**/Image 1/ Image 2/Image 3**
		Import	Imports an image file for a new wallpaper. **Wallpaper Setup** P. 186	—
		Delete	Deletes an image file for a wallpaper.	**Image 1/Image 2/ Image 3**
	Color Theme		Changes the background color of the audio/ information screen.	**Blue**[*1]**/Red/Gray**
Language Selection			Change the display language.	**English**[*1]**/Français/ Español**

*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Phone Setup	**Connection**	**Add a New Phone**	Pairs a new phone to HFL. ➡ **Phone Setup** P. 346	—
		Connect a Phone	Connect a phone to the system.	—
		Disconnect Phone	Disconnects a paired phone from HFL.	—
		Delete a Phone	Deletes a paired phone.	—
		Pairing Code	Inputs and changes a code for a paired phone.	**Fixed**[*1]/**Random**
	Speed Dial		Edits, adds or deletes a speed dial entry. ➡ **Speed Dial** P. 356	—
	Auto Transfer		Sets calls to automatically transfer from your phone to HFL when you enter the vehicle.	**On**[*1]/**Off**
	Caller ID Info		Prioritizes the caller's name or phone number as the caller ID.	**Name Priority**[*1]/ **Number Priority**
	Passcode		Create a security PIN for a paired phone.	—
	Message Notice		Turn incoming text message notifications on or off.	**On**[*1]/**Off**
	System Clear		Clear the system of all paired phones, phonebook entries, and security codes.	—

*1:Default Setting

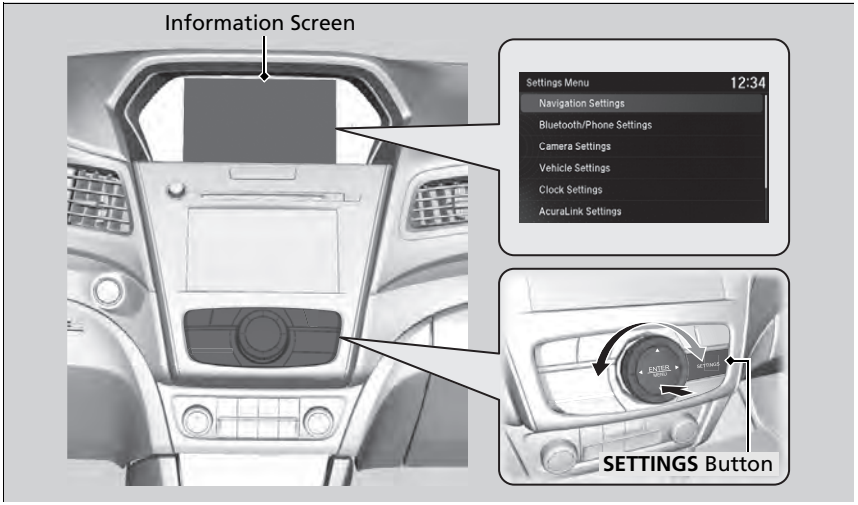
Models with two displays

Use the information screen and On Demand Multi-Use Display™ to customize certain features.

Information Screen

■ How to customize

Select your desired setting item by pressing the **SETTINGS** button, then rotating while the power mode is ON and the vehicle is at a complete stop. Press .



Customized Features

When you customize settings:

- Make sure that the vehicle is at a complete stop.
- Shift to P.

Information Screen

To customize other features, rotate , move , , or , and press .

List of customizable options P. 316

How to customize

The following settings can be customized on the On Demand Multi-Use Display™.

- **Edit Source Order**
- **Sound Settings**
- **Edit/Delete HDD Music***
- **Audio Settings**
- **Screen Settings**

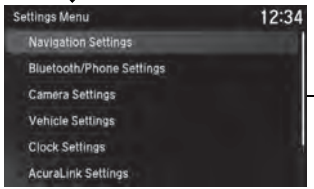
How to customize P. 329

* Not available on all models

Information Screen

■ Customization flow

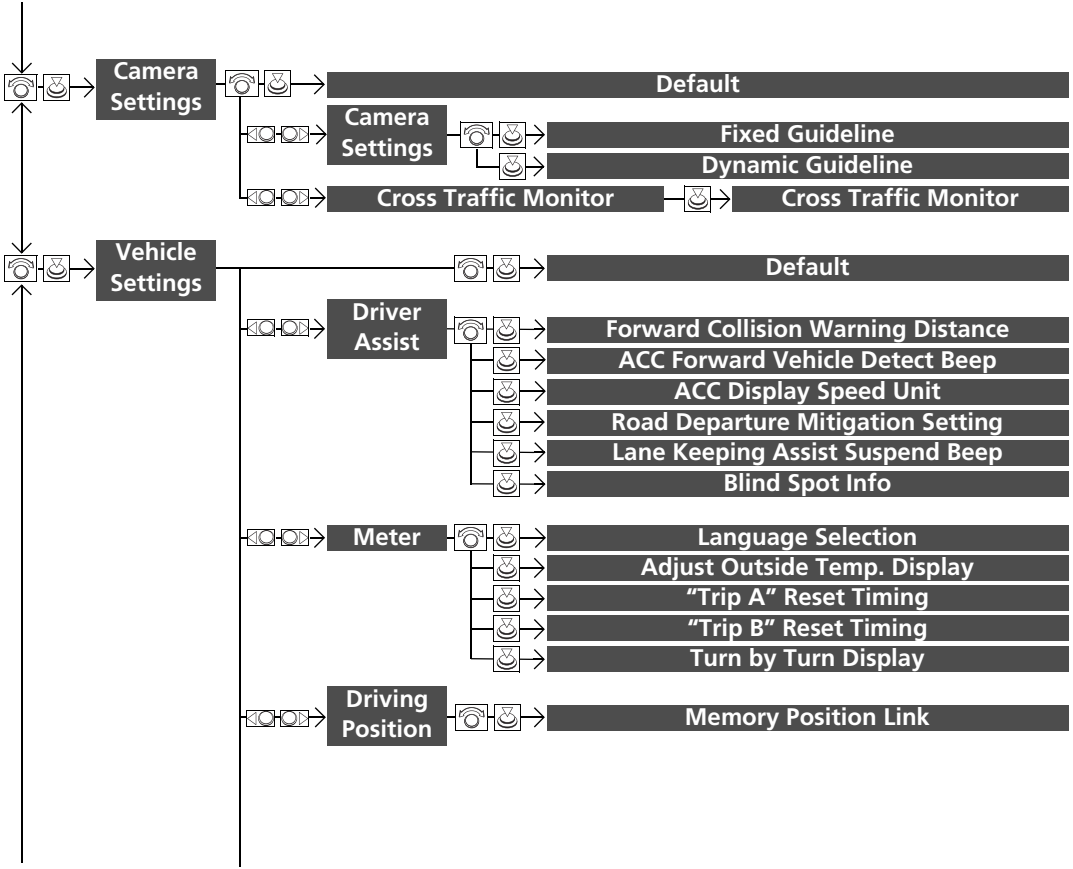
Press the **SETTINGS** button.

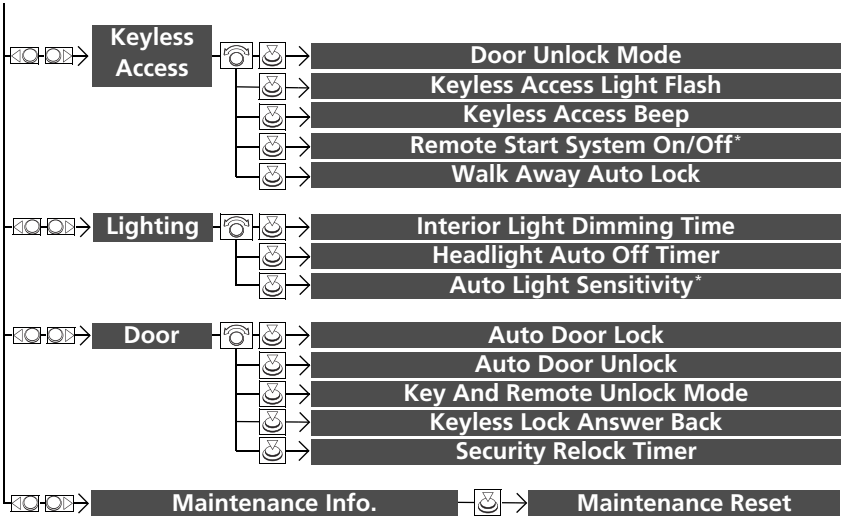


- Navigation Settings* → See the Navigation System Manual.
- Bluetooth/ Phone Settings
  - Default
  - Bluetooth
    - Bluetooth
    - Bluetooth Device List
    - Edit Pairing Code
  - Phone
    - Edit Speed Dial
    - Auto Transfer
    - Auto Answer
    - Ring Tone
    - Automatic Phone Sync
    - Use Contact Photo
  - Text/Email
    - Enable Text/Email
    - Select Account
    - New Text/Email Alert
    - Message Auto Reading*

* Not available on all models

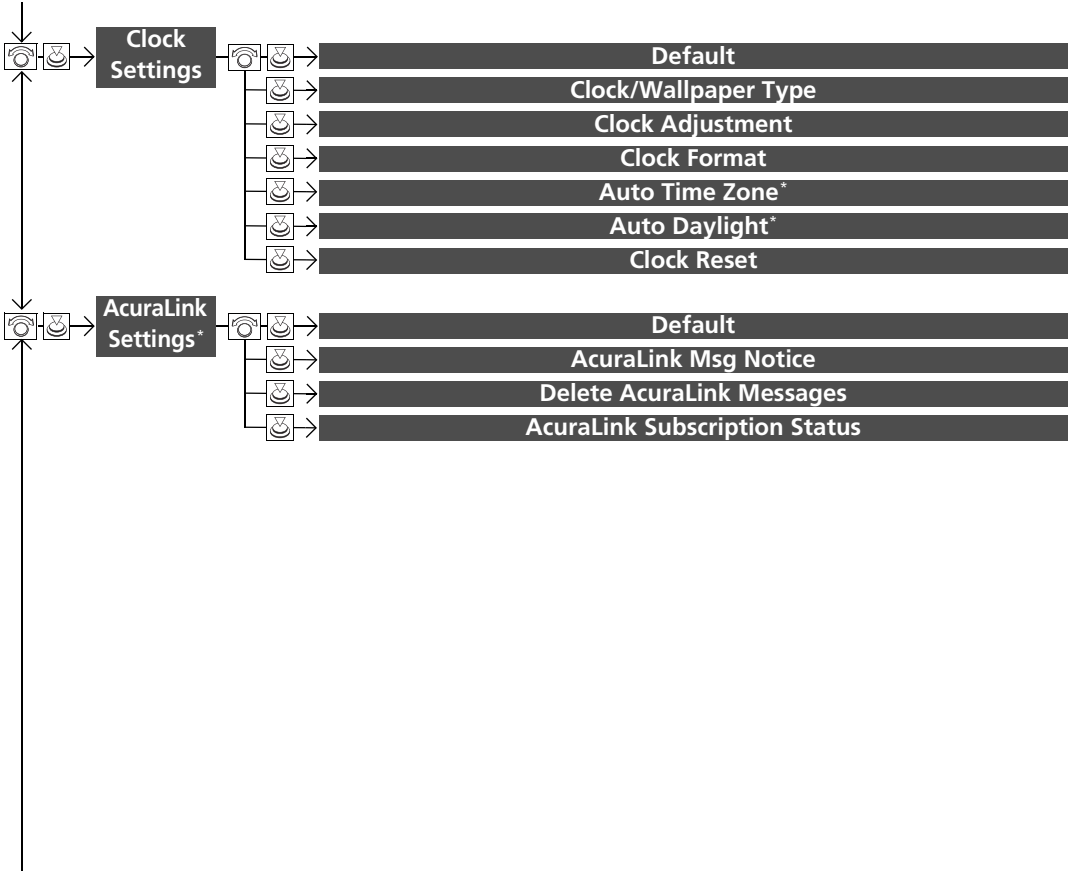
Continued


Camera Settings
Default
Camera Settings
Fixed Guideline
Dynamic Guideline
Cross Traffic Monitor
Cross Traffic Monitor
Vehicle Settings
Default
Driver Assist
Forward Collision Warning Distance
ACC Forward Vehicle Detect Beep
ACC Display Speed Unit
Road Departure Mitigation Setting
Lane Keeping Assist Suspend Beep
Blind Spot Info
Meter
Language Selection
Adjust Outside Temp. Display
“Trip A” Reset Timing
“Trip B” Reset Timing
Turn by Turn Display
Driving Position
Memory Position Link

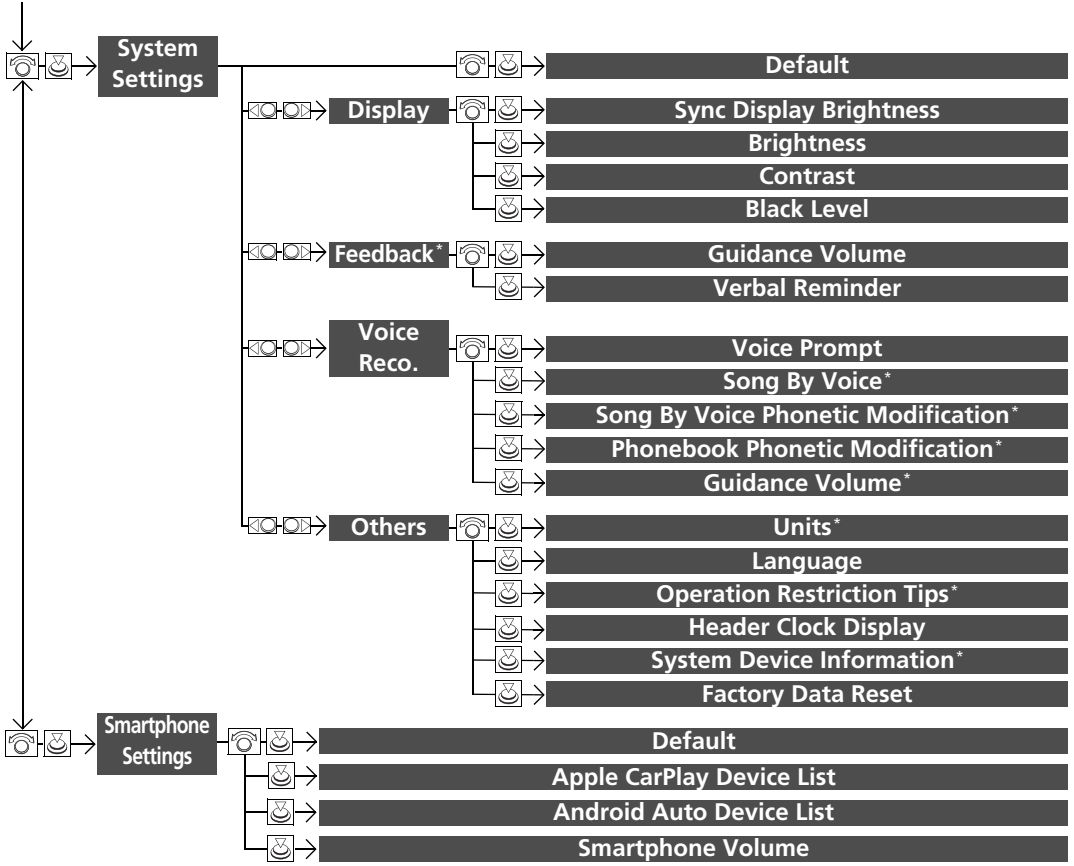


* Not available on all models

Continued



* Not available on all models



* Not available on all models

Continued

Information Screen

■ **List of customizable options**

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Bluetooth/ Phone Settings	**Default**		Cancels/Resets all customized items in the **Bluetooth/Phone Settings** group as default.	**Yes/No**
	Bluetooth	**Bluetooth**	Turns the *Bluetooth*® on and off.	**On**[*1]**/Off**
		Bluetooth Device List	Pairs a new phone to HFL, edits or deletes a paired phone, or creates a security PIN. ➡ **Phone Setup** P. 376	—
		Edit Pairing Code	Changes a pairing code. ➡ **To change the pairing code setting** P. 378	**Random/Fixed**[*1]
	Phone	**Edit Speed Dial**	Edits, adds or deletes a speed dial entry. ➡ **Phone Setup** P. 376	—
		Auto Transfer	Sets calls to automatically transfer from your phone to HFL when you enter the vehicle.	**On**[*1]**/Off**
		Auto Answer	Sets whether to automatically answer an incoming call after about four seconds.	**On/Off**[*1]

*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Bluetooth/ Phone Settings	**Phone**	**Ring Tone**	Selects the ring tone.	**Fixed/Mobile Phone**[*1]**/Off**
		Automatic Phone Sync	Sets a phonebook data to be automatically imported when a phone is paired to HFL.	**On/Off**
		Use Contact Photo	Displays a caller's picture on an incoming call screen.	**On**[*1]**/Off**
	Text/Email	**Enable Text/Email**	Turns the text/e-mail message function on and off.	**On**[*1]**/Off**
		Select Account	Selects a mail or text message account.	—
		New Text/Email Alert	Selects whether a pop-up alert comes on the screen when HFL receives a new text message/E-mail.	—
		Message Auto Reading*	Selects whether the system automatically reads out messages, and, if selected, whether only when driving.	**On**[*1]**/Off**

*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

Continued

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Camera Settings	**Default**		Cancels/Resets all customized items in the **Camera Settings** group as default.	**Yes/No**
	Rear Camera	**Fixed Guideline**	Selects whether the fixed guidelines come on the rear camera monitor.	**On**[*1]**/Off**
		Dynamic Guideline	Selects whether the dynamic guidelines come on the rear camera monitor.	**On**[*1]**/Off**
	Cross Traffic Monitor	**Cross Traffic Monitor**	Turns the cross traffic monitor feature on and off.	**On**[*1]**/Off**

*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Vehicle Settings	**Default**		Cancels/Resets all customized items in the **Vehicle Settings** group as default.	**Yes/No**
	Driver Assist	**Forward Collision Warning Distance**	Changes at which distance CMBS™ alerts.	**Long/Normal**[*1]**/Short**
		ACC Forward Vehicle Detect Beep	Causes the system to beep when the system detects a vehicle, or when the vehicle goes out of the ACC range.	**On/Off**[*1]
		ACC Display Speed Unit	Changes the speed unit for ACC on the multi-information display.	**mph**[*1]**/km/h** (U.S.) **mph/km/h**[*1] (Canada)
		Road Departure Mitigation Setting	Changes the setting for the road departure mitigation system.	**Normal**[*1]**/Wide/ Warning Only**
		Lane Keeping Assist Suspend Beep	Causes the system to beep when the LKAS is suspended.	**On/Off**[*1]
		Blind Spot Info	Changes the setting for the blind spot information.	**Audible And Visual Alert**[*1]**/Visual Alert/ Off**

*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Vehicle Settings	**Meter**	**Language Selection**	Changes the displayed language on the multi-information display.	**English**[*1]**/Français/ Español**
		Adjust Outside Temp. Display	Adjusts the temperature reading by a few degrees.	**-5°F ~ ±0°F**[*1] **~ +5°F** (U.S.) **-3°C ~ ±0°C**[*1] **~ +3°C** (Canada)
		"Trip A" Reset Timing	Changes the setting of how to reset trip meter A, average fuel economy A, average speed A, and elapsed time A.	**When Refueled/IGN Off/Manually Reset**[*1]
		"Trip B" Reset Timing	Changes the setting of how to reset trip meter B, average fuel economy B, average speed B, and elapsed time B.	**When Refueled/IGN Off/Manually Reset**[*1]
		Turn by Turn Display	Selects whether the turn-by-turn display comes on during the route guidance.	**On**[*1]**/Off**

*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Vehicle Settings	**Driving Position**	**Memory Position Link**	Turns the driving position memory system on and off.	**On**[*1]**/Off**
	Keyless Access	**Door Unlock Mode**	Changes which doors unlock when you grab the driver's door handle.	**Driver Door Only**[*1]**/ All Doors**
		Keyless Access Light Flash	Causes some exterior lights to flash when you unlock/lock the doors.	**On**[*1]**/Off**
		Keyless Access Beep	Causes the beeper to sound when you unlock/ lock the doors.	**On**[*1]**/Off**
		Remote Start System On/Off[*]	Turns the remote engine start feature on and off.	**On**[*1]**/Off**
		Walk Away Auto Lock	Changes the settings for the automatic locking the doors when you walk away from the vehicle while carrying the keyless access remote.	**On/Off**[*1]

*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

Continued

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Vehicle Settings	**Lighting**	**Interior Light Dimming Time**	Changes the length of time the interior lights stay on after you close the doors.	**60seconds/ 30seconds***1**/ 15seconds**
		Headlight Auto Off Timer	Changes the length of time the exterior lights stay on after you close the driver's door.	**60seconds/ 30seconds/ 15seconds***1**/ 0seconds**
		Auto Light Sensitivity*	Changes the timing for the headlights to come on.	**Max/High/Mid***1**/ Low/Min**

*1:Default Setting

 * Not available on all models

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Vehicle Settings	**Door**	**Auto Door Lock**	Changes the setting for when the doors automatically lock.	**With Vehicle Speed**[*1]**/Shift from P/ Off**
		Auto Door Unlock	Changes the setting for when the doors unlock automatically.	**All Doors When Driver's Door Opens**[*1]**/All Doors When Shifted to Park/All Doors When Ignition Switched Off/Off**
		Key And Remote Unlock Mode	Sets up either the driver's door or all doors to unlock on the first push of the remote or built-in key.	**Driver Door**[*1]**/All Doors**
		Keyless Lock Answer Back	LOCK/UNLOCK- The exterior lights flash. LOCK (2nd push)- The beeper sounds.	**On**[*1]**/Off**
		Security Relock Timer	Changes the time it takes for the doors to relock and the security system to set after you unlock the vehicle without opening any door.	**90seconds/ 60seconds/ 30seconds**[*1]
	Maintenance Info.	**Maintenance Reset**	Resets the engine oil life display when you have performed the maintenance service.	—

*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Clock Settings	**Default**		Cancels/Resets all customized items in the **Clock Settings** group as default.	**Yes/No**
	Clock/ Wallpaper Type	**Clock**	Changes the clock display type.	**Analog/Digital***1/ **Small Digital/Off**
		Wallpaper	• Changes the wallpaper type. • Imports an image file for a new wallpaper. • Deletes an image file for a wallpaper. **Wallpaper Setup** P. 214	**Blank/Galaxy***1/ **Metallic/Options...**
	Clock Adjustment		Adjusts Clock. **Wallpaper Setup** P. 214	—
	Clock Format		Selects the digital clock display from 12H to 24H.	**12H***1**/24H**
	Auto Time Zone*		Sets the audio system to automatically adjust the clock when driving through different time zones.	**On***1**/Off**
	Auto Daylight*		Sets the audio system to automatically adjust the clock ("spring ahead" or "fall back" by one hour) when a daylight saving time change occurs.	**On***1**/Off**
	Clock Reset		Resets the clock settings to the factory default.	**Yes/No**

*1:Default Setting

 * Not available on all models

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
AcuraLink Settings*	**Default**	Cancels/Resets all customized items in the **AcuraLink Settings** group as default.	**Yes/No**
	AcuraLink Msg Notice	Selects whether newly received AcuraLink messages are to be displayed.	**On*1/Off**
	Delete AcuraLink Message	Deletes AcuraLink messages.	—
	AcuraLink Subscription Status	Displays your current AcuraLink subscription status.	—

*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

Continued

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
System Settings	**Default**		Cancels/Resets all customized items in the **System Settings** group as default.	**Yes/No**
	Display	**Sync Display Brightness**	Selects whether the display brightness synchronizes with the instrument panel brightness.	**On**[*1]**/Off**
		Brightness	Changes the brightness of the information screen.	—
		Contrast	Changes the contrast of the information screen.	—
		Black Level	Changes the black level of the information screen.	—
	Feedback[*]	**Guidance Volume**	Changes the volume of the audio speakers.	**0**~**8**[*1]~**11**
		Verbal Reminder	Turns the verbal reminders on and off.	**On**[*1]**/Off**

*1:Default Setting

 * Not available on all models

Setup Group		Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
System Settings	**Voice Reco.**	**Voice Prompt**	Models without navigation system • **Beginner:** Explains each option. • **Expert:** Turns off voice prompts.	**Beginner**[*1]**/Expert**
			Models with navigation system Turns the voice prompt on and off.	**On**[*1]**/Off**
		Song By Voice*	Turns the Song By Voice™ on and off. ➡ **Song By Voice™ (SBV)** P. 254	**On**[*1]**/Off**
		Song By Voice Phonetic Modification*	Modifies a voice command for music stored in the HDD or an iPod. ➡ **Phonetic Modification** P. 256	—
		Phonebook Phonetic Modification*	Modifies a voice command for the phonebook. ➡ **Phonebook Phonetic Modification*** P. 391	—
		Guidance Volume*	Changes the volume of the voice prompt.	—

*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

Continued

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
System Settings	**Others**	**Units***	Changes the distance unit on the navigation map screen.	**mile**[*1]**/km** (U.S.) **mile/km**[*1] (Canada)
		Language	Changes the display language.	**English**[*1]**/Français/ Español**
		Operation Restriction Tips*	Alerts you when manual control of the system is disabled to prevent distraction while driving. Only voice commands are available.	**On**[*1]**/Off**
		Header Clock Display	Selects whether the clock display comes on.	**On**[*1]**/Off**
		System Device Information*	Displays the system/device information.	—
		Factory Data Reset	Resets all the settings to their factory default. ➡ **Defaulting All the Settings** P. 335	—
Smartphone Settings	**Default**		Cancels/Resets all customized items in the **Smartphone Settings** group as default.	**Yes/No**
	Apple CarPlay Device List		Sets up the Apple CarPlay connection.	—
	Android Auto Device List		Sets up the Android Auto connection.	—
	Smartphone Volume		Adjusts the volume of the smartphone function.	**1~8**[*1]**~11**
	Version		Shows software version of Apple CarPlay and Android Auto unit.	—

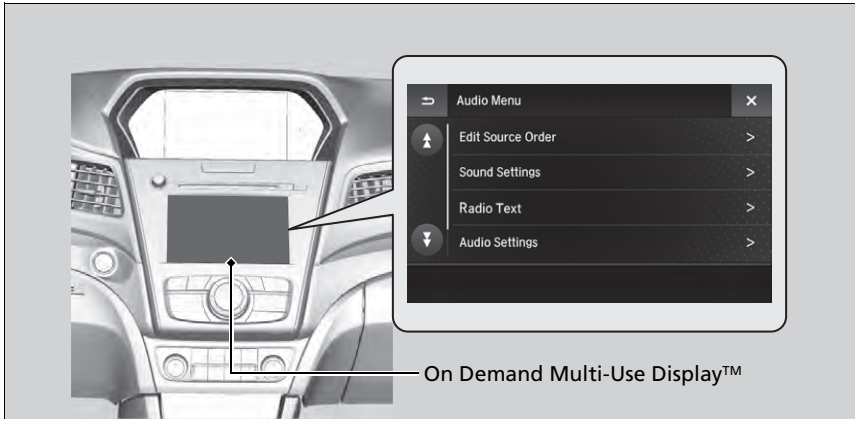
*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

On Demand Multi-Use Display™

■ How to customize

While the vehicle is at a complete stop with the power mode in ON, select **Audio Menu**, then select a setting item.

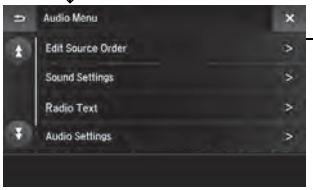


Continued

On Demand Multi-Use Display™

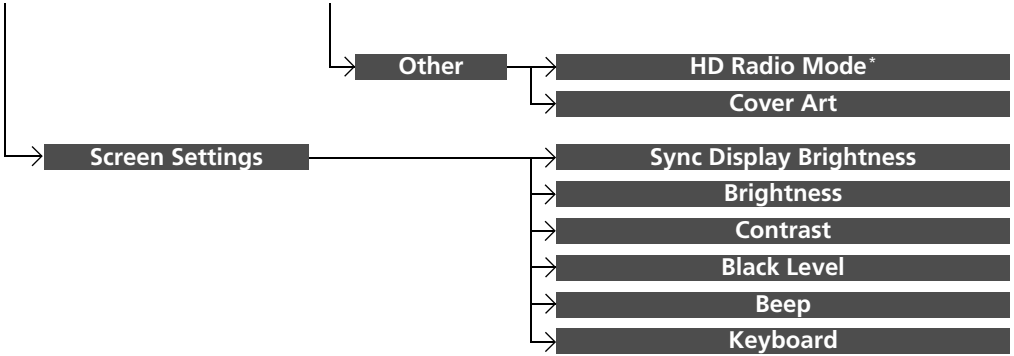
■ Customization flow

Select **Audio Menu**.



- Edit Source Order
- Sound Settings
  - Bass
  - Treble
  - Fader
  - Balance
  - Center*
  - Subwoofer
  - SVC
  - DTS Neural Surround*
- Edit/Delete HDD Music*
- Audio Settings
  - SiriusXM
    - Play the Song from the Beginning
    - SportsFlash
    - Traffic & Weather Now Setup
    - Channel Art
    - TuneMix
  - CD/HDD*
    - Recording Options
      - Recording from CD
      - Recording Quality
    - HDD Information
    - Update Gracenote Album Information
    - Delete All HDD Data

* Not available on all models



* Not available on all models

On Demand Multi-Use Display™

■ **List of customizable options**

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Edit Source Order		Changes the order of source list. ➡ **Selecting an Audio Source** P. 207	—
Sound Settings	**Bass**	Adjusts the settings of the audio speaker's sound. ➡ **Adjusting the Sound** P. 216	—
	Treble		
	Fader		
	Balance		
	Center*		
	Subwoofer		
	SVC		
	DTS Neural Surround*		
Edit/Delete HDD Music*		Change the playlist name, album name, genre, and track order of the current playlist. You can also delete tracks, playlists, and albums. ➡ **Editing an Album or Playlist** P. 244	—
Audio Settings	**SiriusXM** **Play the Song from the Beginning**	Turns on and off the Tune Start function.	**On/Off***1

*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

Setup Group	Customizable Features			Description	Selectable Settings
Audio Settings	**SiriusXM**	**SportsFlash**	**Notification**	Turns on and off the sports alert function.	**Disable/Enable once/ Enable**[*1]
			Beep	Causes the system to beep when the sports alert is notified.	**On**[*1]**/Off**
			Favorite Teams	Selects your favorite sport teams.	—
		Traffic & Weather Now Setup		Selects a city for using the SiriusXM® traffic and weather information.	—
		Channel Art		Turns on and off the channel art display.	**On**[*1]**/Off**
		TuneMix		Turns multiple channel mix preset on and off.	**On/Off**[*1]
	CD/ HDD[*]	**Recording Options**	**Recording from CD**	Selects whether the songs on music CDs are automatically recorded to the HDD.	**Auto**[*1]**/Manual**
			Recording Quality	Selects the quality of the music files recorded to the HDD.	**Standard**[*1]**/High**
		HDD Information		Displays the HDD capacity.	—
		Update Gracenote Album Information		Updates the Gracenote® Album Info (Gracenote® Media Database) from CD or USB.	**Update by CD/ Update by USB**
		Delete All HDD Data		**Deleting all HDD Data** P. 250	—

*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

Continued

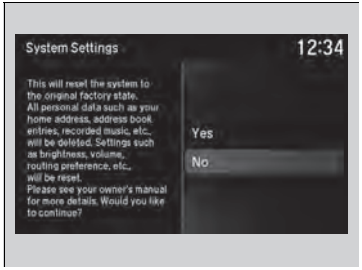
Setup Group		Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Audio Settings	**Other**	**HD Radio Mode***	Selects whether the audio system automatically switches to the digital radio waves or receives the analog waves only.	**Auto*1/Analog**
		Cover Art	Turns on and off the cover art display.	**On*1/Off**
Screen Settings		**Sync Display Brightness**	Selects whether the screen brightness synchronizes with the instruments panel brightness.	**Off/On*1**
		Brightness	Changes the brightness of the On Demand Multi-Use Display™.	—
		Contrast	Changes the contrast of the On Demand Multi-Use Display™.	—
		Black Level	Changes the black level of the On Demand Multi-Use Display™.	—
		Beep	Mutes a beep that sounds every time you touch the screen.	**Off/On*1**
		Keyboard	Changes the on-screen keyboard from the alphabetical order to the qwerty type.	**Alphabet/QWERTY*1**

*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

Defaulting All the Settings

You can reset all the menu and customized settings as the factory defaults.



1. Press the **SETTINGS** button.
2. Rotate ⟲ to select **System Settings**, then press ⟳.
3. Rotate ⟲ to select **Factory Data Reset**, then press ⟳.
   ▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
4. Rotate ⟲ to select **Yes**, then press ⟳.
   ▶ The confirmation message will appear.
5. Rotate ⟲ to select **Yes**, then press ⟳ again to reset the settings.
   ▶ The confirmation message will appear. Press ⟳ to select **OK**.

Defaulting All the Settings

When you transfer the vehicle to a third party, reset all settings to default and delete all personal data.

Models with navigation system

Driver 1 and **Driver 2** has stored each settings and personal data separatory.
Perform both **Driver 1** and **Driver 2** data reset.

The following settings will be reset:

- Routing & Guidance*: Rerouting, Unverified Area Routing, Traffic Rerouting, Edit Waypoint Search Area, Guidance Mode, Street Name Guidance
- Route Preference*
- Audio preset settings
- Phonebook entries
- Other display and each item settings

* Not available on all models

The HomeLink® Universal Transceiver can be programmed to operate up to three remote controlled devices around your home, such as garage doors, lighting, or home security systems.

■ Important Safety Precautions

Refer to the safety information that came with your garage door opener to test that the safety features are functioning properly. If you do not have the safety information, contact the manufacturer.

Before programming HomeLink, make sure that people and objects are out of the way of the garage or gate to prevent potential injury or damage.

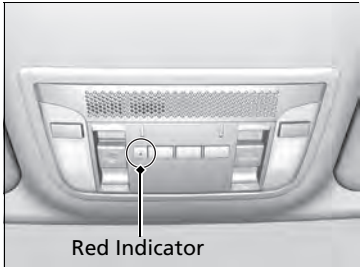
When programming a garage door opener, park just outside the garage door's path.

HomeLink® Universal Transceiver*

Before programming HomeLink to operate a garage door opener, confirm that the opener has an external entrapment protection system, such as an "electronic eye," or other safety and reverse stop features. If it does not, HomeLink may not be able to operate it.

* Not available on all models

Training HomeLink



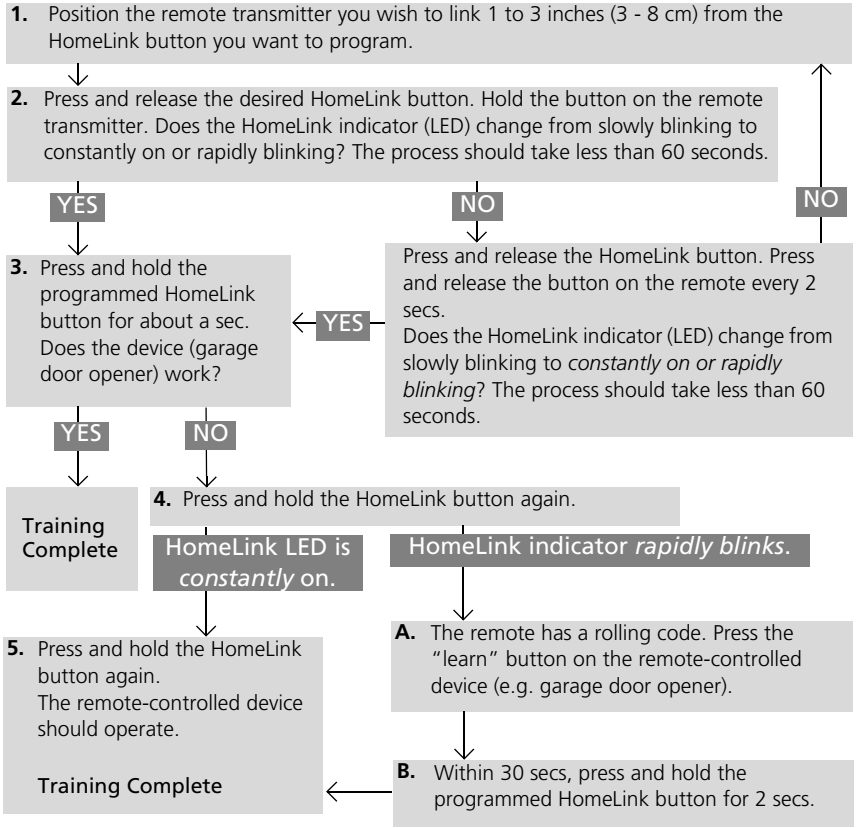
If it is necessary to erase a previously entered learned code:

- Press and hold the two outside buttons for about 20 seconds, until the red indicator blinks. Release the buttons, and proceed to step 1.
- If you are training the second or third button, go directly to step 1.

The instructions on the next page should work for most gate or garage openers, but may not work for all. For detailed instructions about your specific remote opener, visit *http://www.homelink.com* or call (800)355-3515.

Continued

Training a Button



Training HomeLink

Retraining a Button

If you want to retrain a programmed button for a new device, you do not have to erase all button memory. You can replace the existing memory code using this procedure:

1. Press and hold the desired HomeLink button until the HomeLink indicator begins to blink.

Standard transmitter	Rolling code transmitter
Indicator remains on for about 25 secs.	Indicator remains on for about 25 secs.

2. Quickly release the HomeLink button and follow steps 1 - 3 under "Training a Button." You do not need to press and release the HomeLink button again in step 2.

Erasing Codes

To erase all the codes, press and hold the two outside buttons until the HomeLink indicator begins to blink (about 10 to 20 secs). You should erase all codes before selling the vehicle.

If you have any problems, see the device's instructions, visit *www.homelink.com*, or call HomeLink at (800) 355-3515.

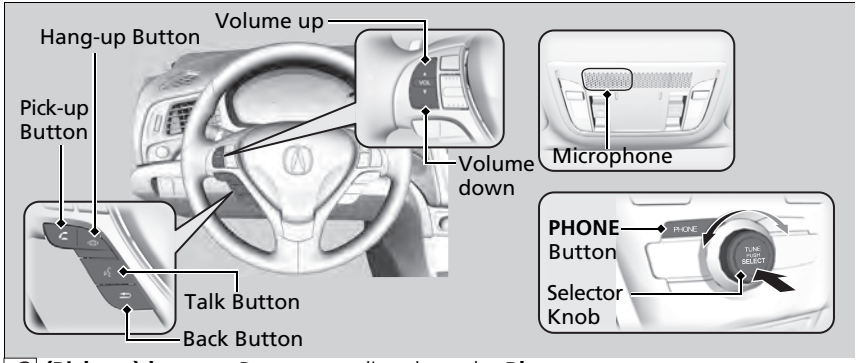
HomeLink® is a registered trademark of Gentex Corporation.

Models with one display

Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink® (HFL) allows you to place and receive phone calls using your vehicle's audio system, without handling your cell phone.

Using HFL

HFL Buttons



(Pick-up) button: Press to go directly to the **Phone** screen or to answer an incoming call.

(Hang-up) button: Press to end a call.

(Talk) button: Press to call a number with a stored voice tag.

(Back) button: Press to cancel a command.

PHONE button: Press to go directly to the **Phone** screen.

Selector knob: Rotate to select an item on the screen, then press.

Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink®

Place your phone where you can get good reception. To use HFL, you need a *Bluetooth*-compatible cell phone. For a list of compatible phones, pairing procedures, and special feature capabilities:

- U.S.: Visit *www.handsfreelink.com/Acura*, or call 1-888-528-7876.
- Canada: For more information on smartphone compatibility, call 1-855-490-7351.

Voice control tips

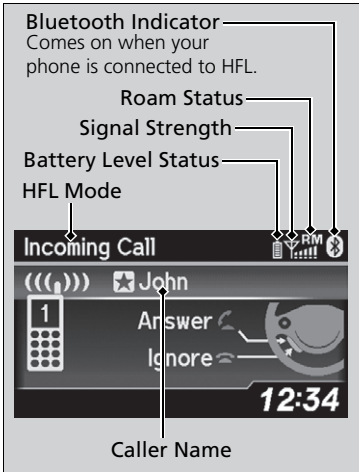
- Aim the vents away from the ceiling and close the windows, as noise coming from them may interfere with the microphone.
- Press the button when you want to call a number using a stored voice tag. Speak clearly and naturally after a beep.
- If the microphone picks up voices other than yours, the command may be misinterpreted.
- To change the volume level, use the audio system's volume knob or the remote audio controls on the steering wheel.

State or local laws may prohibit the operation of handheld electronic devices while operating a vehicle.

If you receive a call while using the audio system, the system resumes its operation after ending the call.

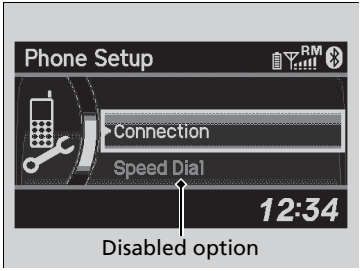
Continued

■ HFL Status Display



The audio/information screen notifies you when there is an incoming call.

■ Limitations for Manual Operation



Certain manual functions are disabled or inoperable while the vehicle is in motion. You cannot select a grayed-out option until the vehicle is stopped.

Only previously stored speed dial entries with voice tags can be called using voice commands while the vehicle is in motion.

➡ **Speed Dial** P. 356

Using HFL

Bluetooth® Wireless Technology

The *Bluetooth*® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc., and any use of such marks by Honda Motor Co., Ltd., is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

HFL Limitations

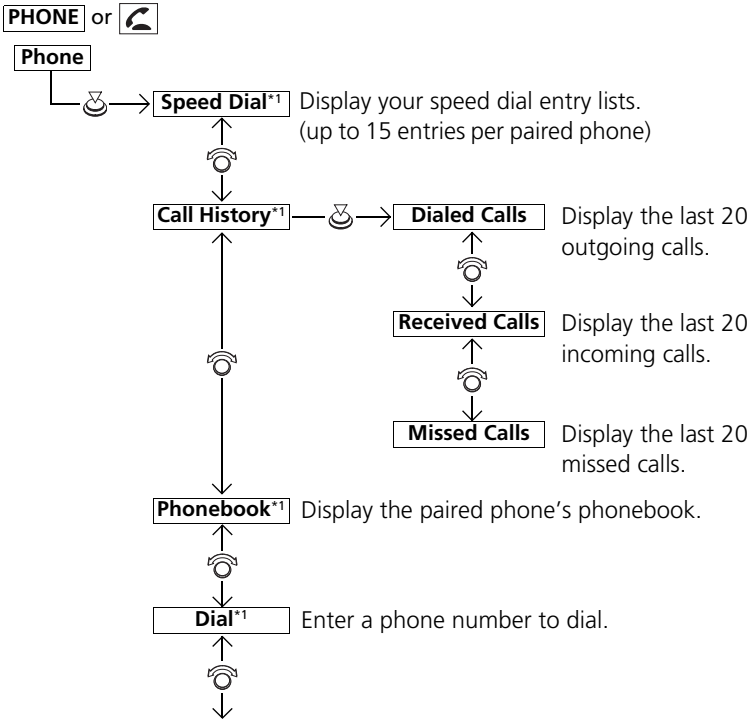
An incoming call on HFL will interrupt the audio system when it is playing. It will resume when the call is ended.

HFL Status Display

The information that appears on the audio/information screen varies between phone models.

HFL Menus

The power mode must be in ACCESSORY or ON to use HFL.



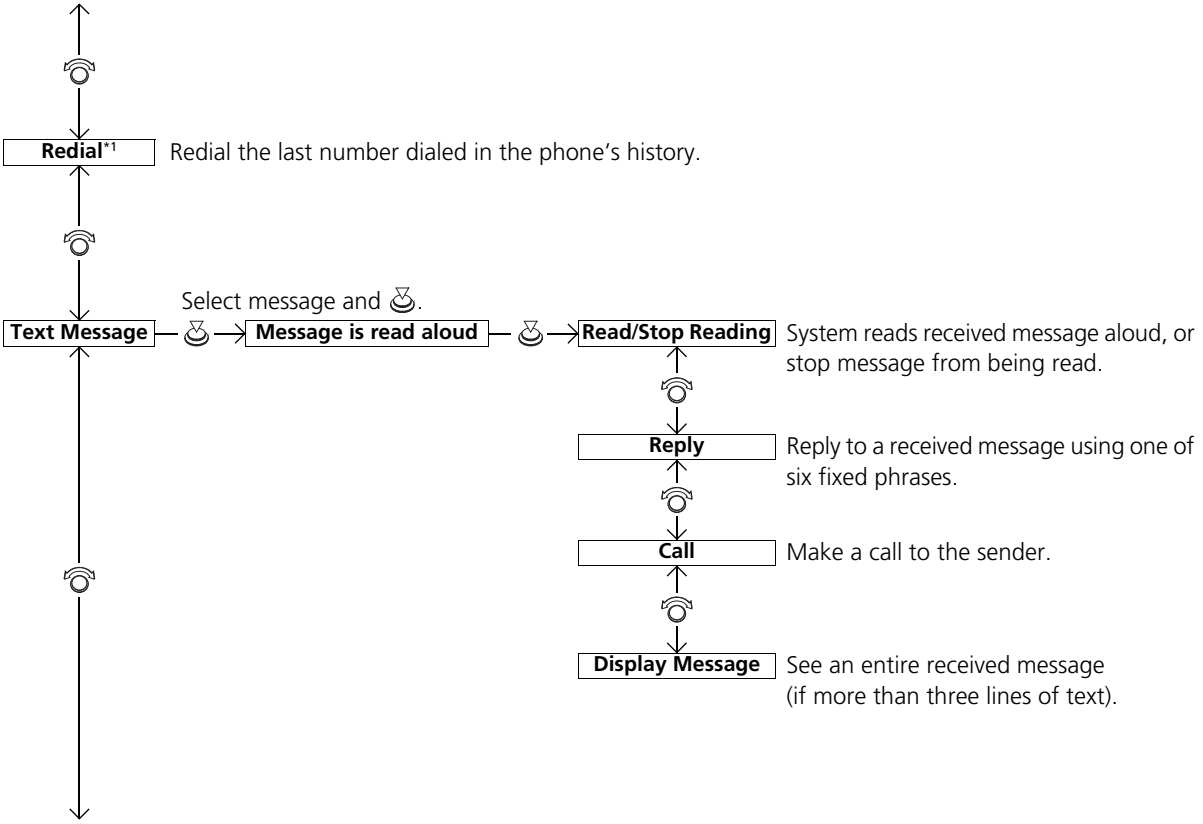
*1: Appears only when a phone is connected to HFL.

HFL Menus

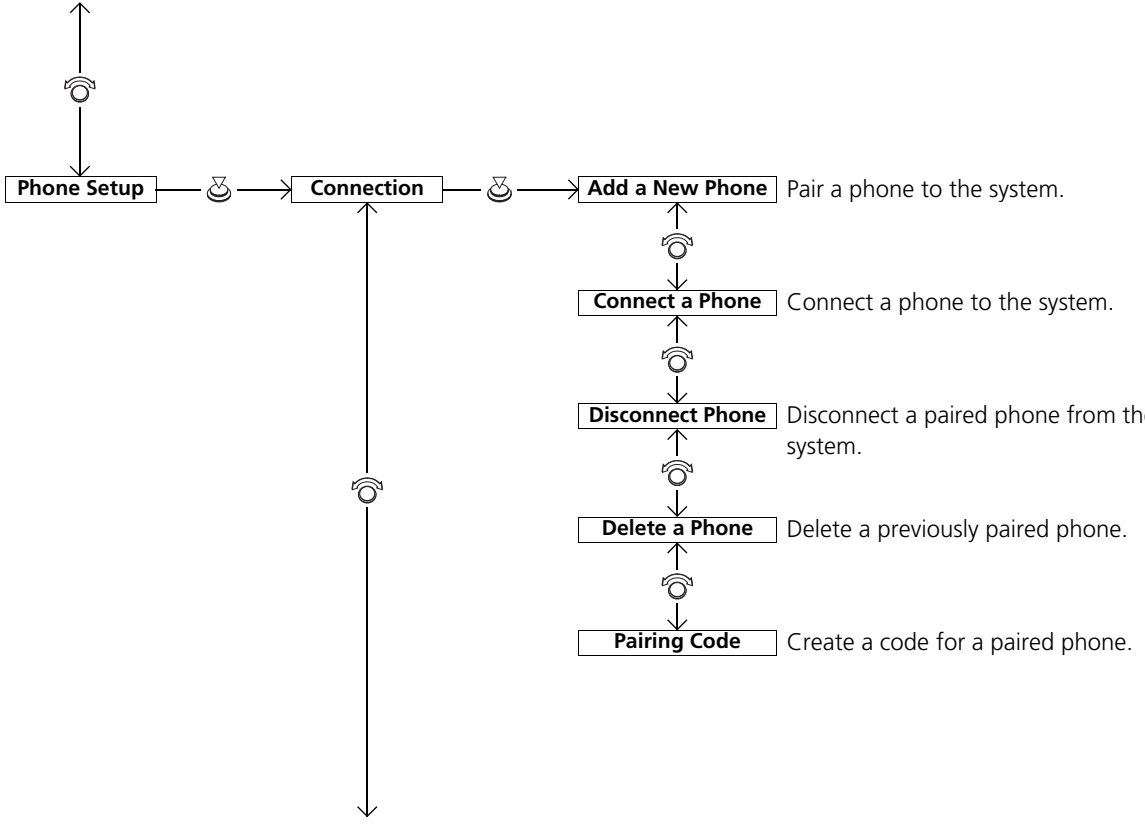
To use HFL, you must first pair your *Bluetooth*-compatible cell phone to the system while the vehicle is parked.

Some functions are limited while driving. A message appears on the screen when the vehicle is moving and the operation is canceled.

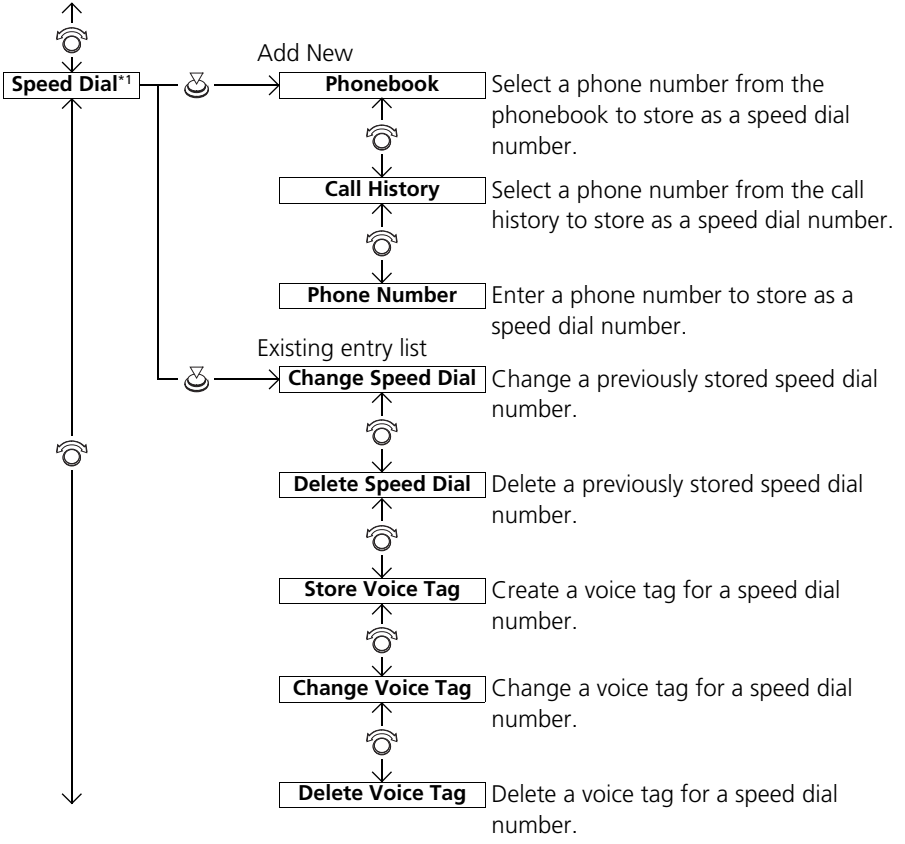
Continued



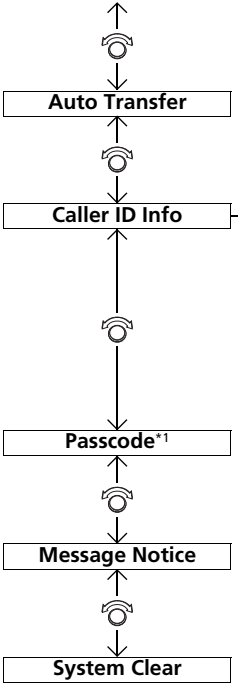
*1: Appears only when a phone is connected to HFL.



*1: Appears only when a phone is connected to HFL.



*1: Appears only when a phone is connected to HFL.



Set calls to automatically transfer from your phone to HFL when you enter the vehicle.

Prioritize the caller's name as the caller ID.

Prioritize the caller's phone number as the caller ID.

Create a security PIN for a paired phone.

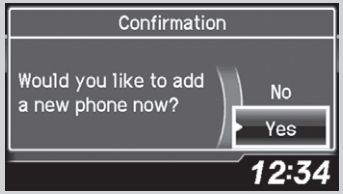
Turn incoming text message notifications on or off.

Clear the system of all paired phones, phonebook entries, and security codes.

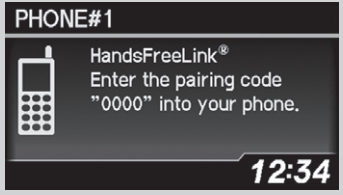
*1: Appears only when a phone is connected to HFL.

Continued

■ Phone Setup







■ To pair a cell phone (when there is no phone paired to the system)

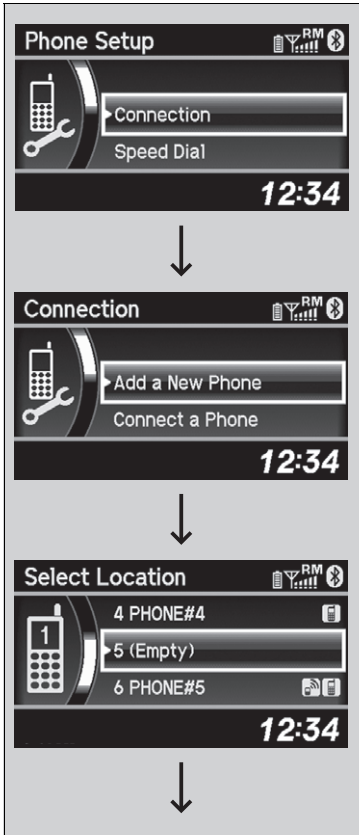
1. Press the **PHONE** button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Yes**, then press .
3. Make sure your phone is in search or discoverable mode, then press .
   ▶ HFL automatically searches for a Bluetooth device.
4. When your phone appears on the list, select it by pressing .
   ▶ If your phone doesn't appear, select **Phone Not Found?** and search for Bluetooth devices using your phone. From your phone, select **HandsFreeLink**.
5. HFL gives you a four-digit pairing code to input on your phone.
   When your phone prompts you, input the four-digit pairing code.
6. A notification appears on the screen if pairing is successful.

Phone Setup

Your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone must be paired to HFL before you can make and receive hands-free calls.

Phone Pairing Tips:
- You cannot pair your phone while the vehicle is moving.
- Up to six phones can be paired.
- Your phone's battery may drain faster when it is paired to HFL.
- If your phone is not ready for pairing or not found by the system within three minutes, the system will time out and returns to idle.

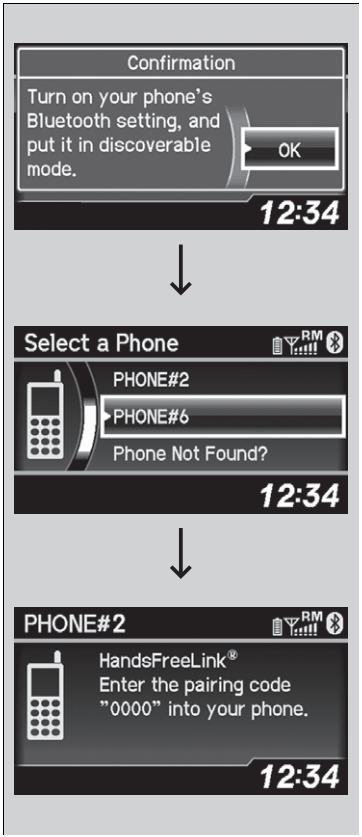
Once you have paired a phone, you can see it displayed on the screen with one or two icons on the right side.
These icons indicate the following:
: The phone can be used with HFL.
: The phone is compatible with *Bluetooth*® Audio.



■ **To pair a cell phone (when a phone has already been paired to the system)**

1. Press the **PHONE** button or the button.
   ▶ If a prompt appears asking to connect to a phone, select **No** and proceed with step 2.
2. Rotate to select **Phone Setup**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Connection**, then press .
4. Rotate to select **Add a New Phone**, then press .
   ▶ The screen changes to **Select Location**.
5. Rotate to select **Empty**, then press .

Continued

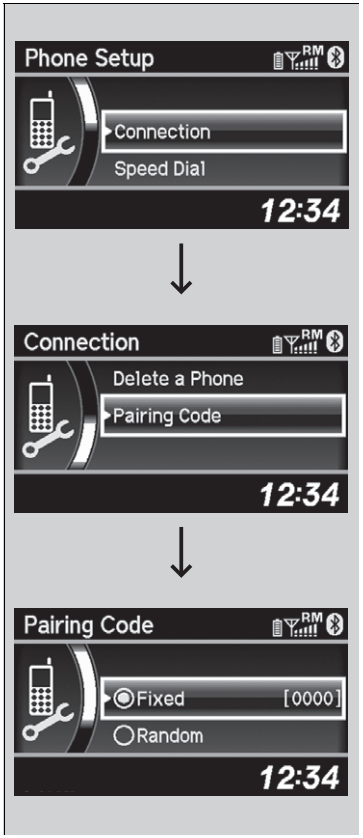


6. Make sure your phone is in search or discoverable mode, then press ⟲.
▶ HFL automatically searches for a Bluetooth device.

7. When your phone appears on the list, select it by pressing ⟲.
▶ If your phone doesn't appear, select **Phone Not Found?** and search for Bluetooth devices using your phone. From your phone, select **HandsFreeLink**.

8. HFL gives you a four-digit pairing code to input on your phone.
When your phone prompts you, input the four-digit pairing code.

9. A notification appears on the screen if pairing is successful.



■ To change the pairing code setting

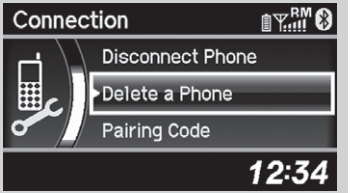
1. Press the **PHONE** button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone Setup**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Connection**, then press .
4. Rotate to select **Pairing Code**, then press .
5. Rotate to select **Fixed** or **Random**, then press .

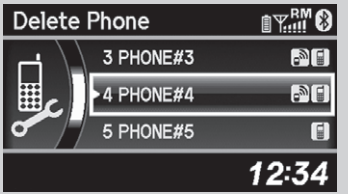
To change the pairing code setting

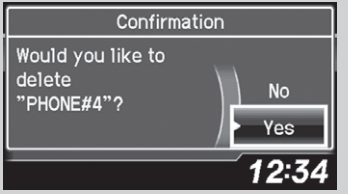
The default pairing code is **0000** until you change the setting.
To create your own, select **Fixed**, and delete the current code, then enter a new one.

For a randomly generated pairing code each time you pair a phone, select **Random**.

Continued







■ **To delete a paired phone**

1. Press the **PHONE** button or the button.

2. Rotate to select **Phone Setup**, then press .

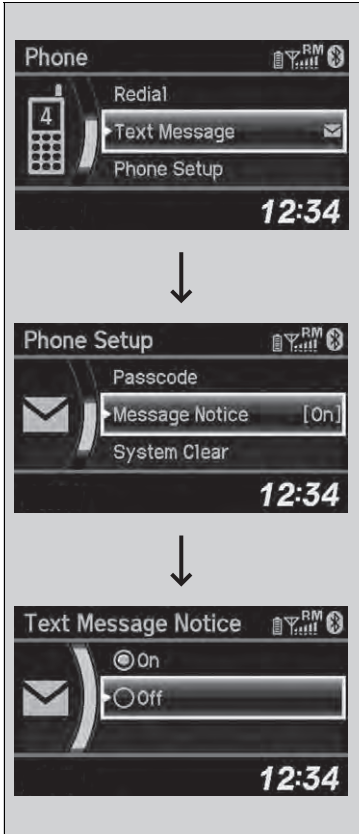
▶ Repeat the procedure to select **Connection**, then **Delete a Phone**.

3. Rotate to select a phone you want to delete, then press .

4. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Rotate to select **Yes**, then press .

▶ A notification appears on the screen if it is successful.

To Set Up a Text Message Notice Option



1. Press the **PHONE** button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone Setup**, then press .

3. Rotate to select **Message Notice**, then press .

4. Rotate to select a mode you want, then press .

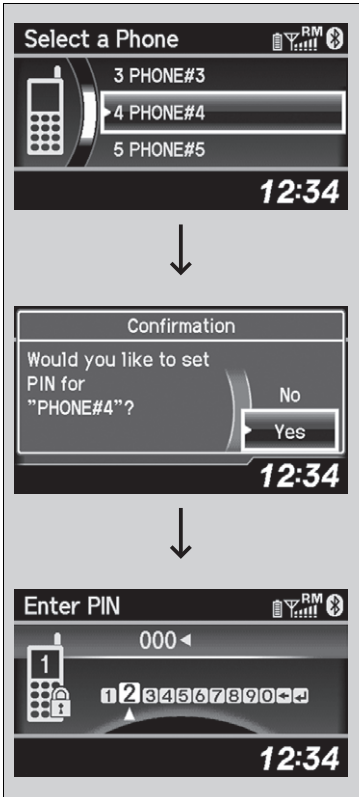
To Set Up a Text Message Notice Option

On: A pop-up notification comes on every time you receive a new text message.
Off: The message you receive is stored in the system without notification.

Continued

■ To Create a Security PIN

You can protect each of the six cell phones with a security PIN.



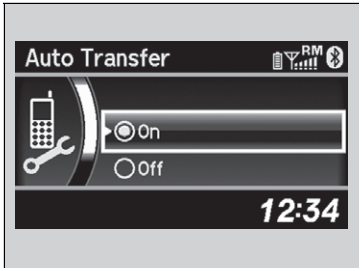
1. Press the **PHONE** button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone Setup**, then press .
   ▶ Repeat the procedure to select **Passcode**.
3. Select a phone you want to add a security PIN to.
   ▶ Rotate to select a phone you want to add a security PIN to, then press .
4. You will receive a confirmation message on the screen.
   ▶ Rotate to select **Yes**, then press .
5. Enter a new four-digit number.
   ▶ Rotate to select, then press . Press to delete. Press to enter the security PIN.
6. Re-enter the four-digit number.
   ▶ The screen returns to the screen in step 2.

To Create a Security PIN

In the phone is already security PIN protected, you need to enter the current security PIN before clearing the PIN or creating a new one.

■ Automatic Transferring

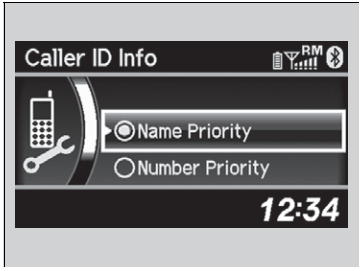
If you get into the vehicle while you are on the phone, the call can be automatically transferred to HFL.



1. Press the **PHONE** button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone Setup**, then press .
   ▶ Repeat the procedure to select **Auto Transfer**.
3. Rotate to select **On**, then press .
4. A notification appears on the screen if the change is successful.

■ Caller's ID Information

You can select a caller's information to be displayed when you have an incoming call.



1. Press the **PHONE** button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone Setup**, then press .
   ▶ Repeat the procedure to select **Caller ID Info**.
3. Rotate to select a mode you want, then press .
4. A notification appears on the screen if the change is successful.

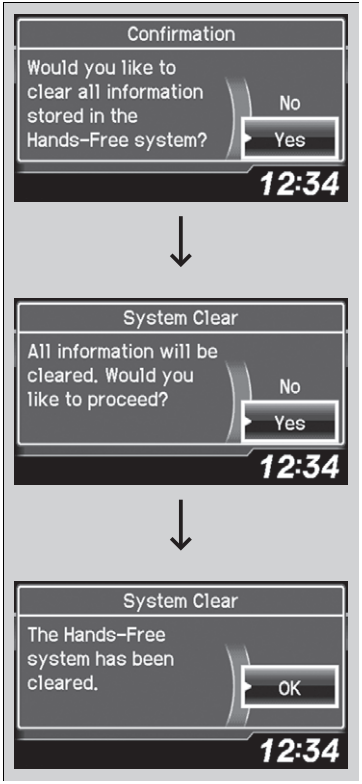
Caller's ID Information

Name Priority mode: A caller's name is displayed if it is stored in the phonebook.
Number Priority mode: A caller's phone number is displayed.

Continued

■ To Clear the System

Security codes, paired phones, all stored voice tags, all speed dial entries, and all imported phonebook data are erased.



1. Press the **PHONE** button or the button.

2. Rotate to select **Phone Setup**, then press .

▶ Repeat the procedure to select **System Clear**.

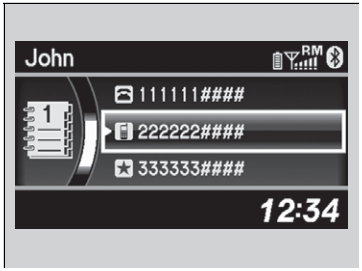
3. Rotate to select **Yes**, then press .

4. A notification message appears on the screen. Rotate to select **Yes**, then press .

5. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Press to finish.

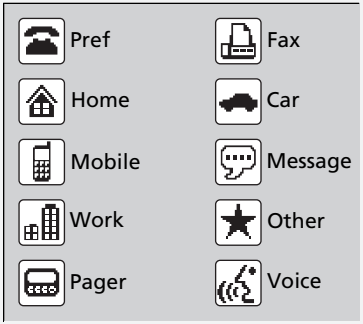
Automatic Import of Cellular Phonebook and Call History

When your phone is paired, the contents of its phonebook and call history are automatically imported to HFL.



Automatic Import of Cellular Phonebook and Call History

When you select a person from the list in the cellular phonebook, you can see up to three category icons. The icons indicate what types of numbers are stored for that name.



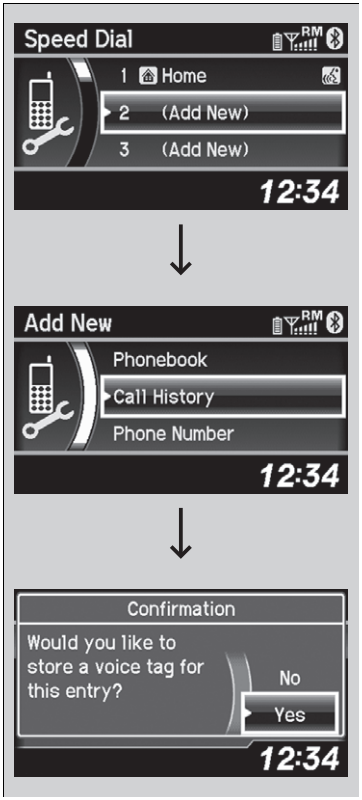
On some phones, it may not be possible to import the category icons to HFL.

The phonebook is updated after every connection. Call history is updated after every connection or call.

Continued

■ Speed Dial

Up to 15 speed dial numbers can be stored per phone.



To store a speed dial number:

1. Press the **PHONE** button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone Setup**, then press .
   ▶ Repeat the procedure to select **Speed Dial**, then **Add New**.
3. Rotate to select a place to choose a number from, then press .
   By **Phonebook**:
   ▶ Select a number from the linked cell phone's imported phonebook.
   By **Call History**:
   ▶ Select a number from the call history.
   By **Phone Number**:
   ▶ Input the number manually.
4. When the speed dial is successfully stored, you are asked to create a voice tag for the number. Rotate to select **Yes** or **No**, then press .
5. Using the button, follow the prompts to say the name for the speed dial entry.

Speed Dial

You can use the audio preset buttons during a call to store a speed dial number:

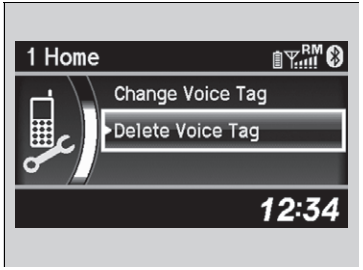
1. Press and hold the desired audio preset button during a call.
2. The contact information for the active call will be stored for the corresponding speed dial.

When a voice tag is stored, press the button to call the number using the voice tag.



■ To add a voice tag to a stored speed dial number

1. Press the **PHONE** button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone Setup**, then press .
   ▶ Repeat the procedure to select **Speed Dial**.
3. Select an existing speed dial entry.
4. Rotate to select **Store Voice Tag**, then press .
5. Using the button, follow the prompts to complete the voice tag.



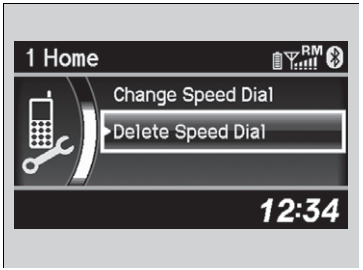
■ To delete a voice tag

1. Press the **PHONE** button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone Setup**, then press .
   ▶ Repeat the procedure to select **Speed Dial**.
3. Select an existing speed dial entry.
4. Rotate to select **Delete Voice Tag**, then press .
   ▶ A confirmation message appears on the screen. Rotate to select **Yes**, then press .

Continued

Speed Dial

Avoid using duplicate voice tag.
Avoid using "home" as a voice tag.
It is easier for HFL to recognize a longer name. For example, use "John Smith" instead of "John."



■ **To delete a speed dial number**

1. Press the **PHONE** button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone Setup**, then press .
   ▶ Repeat the procedure to select **Speed Dial**.
3. Select an existing speed dial entry.
4. Rotate to select **Delete Speed Dial**, then press .
   ▶ A confirmation message appears on the screen. Rotate to select **Yes**, then press .

■ Making a Call

You can make calls by inputting any phone number, or by using the imported phonebook, call history, speed dial entries, or redial.

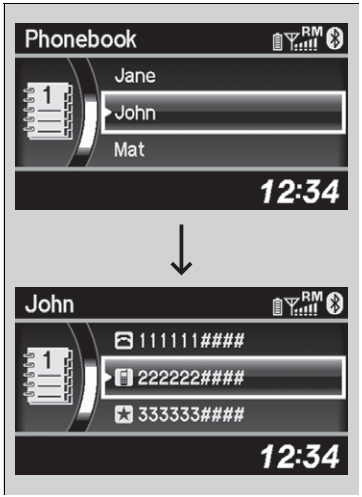


Making a Call

Voice-tagged speed dial entries can be dialed by voice from any screen.
Press the button and follow the prompts.

The maximum range between your phone and vehicles is 30 feet (10 meters).

Once a call is connected, you can hear the voice of the person you are calling through the audio speakers.



■ To make a call using the imported phonebook

When your phone is paired, the contents of its phonebook are automatically imported to HFL.

1. Press the **PHONE** button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Phonebook**, then press .
3. The phonebook is stored alphabetically. Rotate to select the initial, then press .
4. Rotate to select a name, then press .
5. Rotate to select a number, then press .
   ▶ Dialing starts automatically.

■ To make a call using a phone number

1. Press the **PHONE** button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Dial**, then press .
3. Rotate to select a number, then press .
4. Rotate to select , then press .
   ▶ Dialing starts automatically.

To make a call using the imported phonebook

This function is disabled while the vehicle is moving. However, you can call a stored speed dial number with a voice tag using voice commands.

➔ **Limitations for Manual Operation** P. 340
➔ **Speed Dial** P. 356

To make a call using a phone number

This function is disabled while the vehicle is moving. However, you can call a stored speed dial number with a voice tag using voice commands.

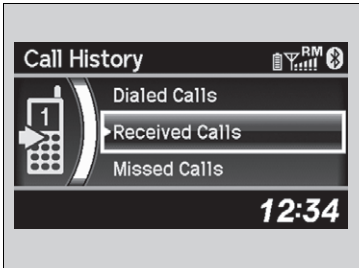
➔ **Limitations for Manual Operation** P. 340
➔ **Speed Dial** P. 356

Continued



■ To make a call using redial

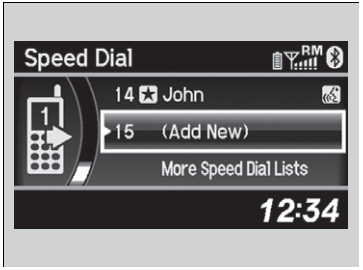
1. Press the **PHONE** button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Redial**, then press .
   ▶ Dialing starts automatically.



■ To make a call using the call history

Call history is stored by **Dialed Calls**, **Received Calls**, and **Missed Calls**.

1. Press the **PHONE** button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Call History**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Dialed Calls**, **Received Calls**, or **Missed Calls**, then press .
4. Rotate to select a number, then press .
   ▶ Dialing starts automatically.



■ To make a call using a speed dial entry

1. Press the **PHONE** button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Speed Dial**, then press .
3. Rotate to select a number, then press .
   ▶ Dialing starts automatically.

To make a call using the call history

The call history displays the last 20 dialed, received, or missed calls.
(Appears only when a phone is connected to HFL.)

To make a call using a speed dial entry

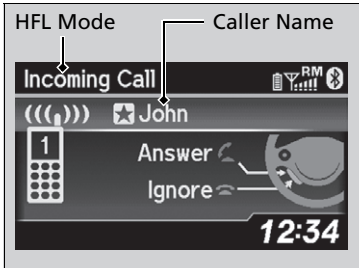
On the **Phone** screen, the first six speed dials on the list can be directly selected by pressing the corresponding audio preset buttons (1-6).

Select **More Speed Dial Lists** to view another paired phone's speed dial list.

When a voice tag is stored, press the button to call the number using the voice tag.
➡ **Speed Dial** P. 356

Any voice-tagged speed dial entry can be dialed by voice from any screen.
Press the button and follow the prompts.

Receiving a Call



When there is an incoming call, an audible notification sounds (if activated) and the **Incoming Call** screen appears.

Press the button to answer the call.
Press the button to decline or end the call.

Receiving a Call

Call Waiting

Press the button to put the current call on hold to answer the incoming call.
Press the button again to return to the current call.
Ignore the incoming call if you do not want to answer it.
Press the button if you want to hang up the current call.

Continued

■ Options During a Call

The following options are available during a call.
Mute: Mute your voice.
Transfer Call: Transfer a call from HFL to your phone.
Touch Tones: Send numbers during a call. This is useful when you call a menu-driven phone system.



1. To view the available options, press the **PHONE** button.

2. Rotate ☎ to select the option, then press ⊛.
▶ The check box is checked when **Mute** is selected. Select **Mute** again to turn it off.

Options During a Call

Touch Tones: Available on some phones.

Receiving a Text Message

HFL can display newly received text messages as well as 20 of the most recently received messages on a compatible linked cell phone. Each received message can be read aloud and replied to using a fixed common phrase.



1. A pop-up appears and notifies you of a new text message.
2. Rotate ⟲ to select **Yes** to listen to the message, then press ⏺.
   ▶ The text message is displayed. The system automatically starts reading out the message.
3. To discontinue the message read-out, press the **BACK** button.

Receiving a Text Message

The system does not display any received messages while you are driving. You can only hear them read aloud.

With some phones, you may be able to display up to 20 most recent text messages.

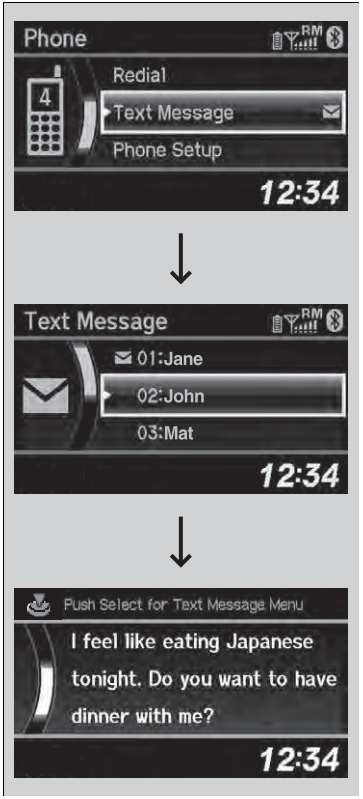
Only the first three lines of the received message are displayed with this option.

Displaying an entire message P. 367

State or local laws may limit your use of the HFL text message feature. Only use the text message feature when conditions allow you to do so safely.

Continued

■ Displaying Messages



1. Press the **PHONE** button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Text Message**, then press .
3. Rotate to select a message, then press .
   ▶ The text message is displayed. The system automatically starts reading the message aloud.

Displaying Messages

The icon appears next to an unread message.

Only the first three lines of the received message are displayed with this option.

➡ **Displaying an entire message** P. 367

If you delete a message on the phone, the message is also deleted in the system. If you send a message from the system, the message goes to your phone's outbox.



■ Using the stop reading or read option

1. Press the **PHONE** button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Text Message**, then press .
3. Rotate to select a message, then press .
   ▶ The text message is displayed. The system automatically starts reading the message aloud.
4. Press to enter the **Text Message Menu**.
5. Rotate to select **Stop Reading** or **Read**, then press .

Using the stop reading or read option

This option changes to:

- **Stop Reading** while the text message is read out. Select this option to discontinue the message read-out.
- **Read** when you go to the **Text Message** menu, or after you selected **Stop Reading**. Select this option to hear the system reading out the selected message.

Continued



■ Reply to a message

You can reply to a message using one of the six common phrases available in the system.

1. Press the **PHONE** button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Text Message**, then press .
3. Rotate to select a message, then press .
   ▶ The text message is displayed. The system automatically starts reading out the message.
4. Press to enter the **Text Message Menu**.
5. Rotate to select **Reply**, then press .
6. Rotate to select the reply message, then press .
7. The reply message you selected is displayed. Select **Yes** to send the message.

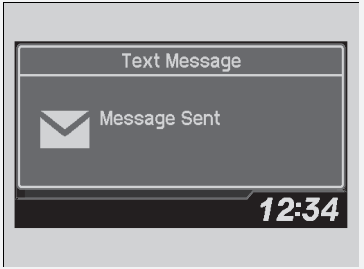
Reply to a message

The available fixed reply messages are as follows:

- **Talk to you later, I'm driving.**
- **I am on my way.**
- **I'm running late.**
- **OK**
- **Yes**
- **No**

You cannot add, edit, or delete reply messages.

After you reply, the following is displayed:





■ Making a call to a sender

You can call the text message sender.

1. Press the **PHONE** button or the button.
2. Rotate to select to **Text Message**, then press .
3. Rotate to select a message, then press .
   ▶ The text message is displayed. The system automatically starts reading out the message.
4. Press to enter the **Text Message Menu**.
5. Rotate to select **Call**, then press .
   ▶ HFL begins dialing.



■ Displaying an entire message

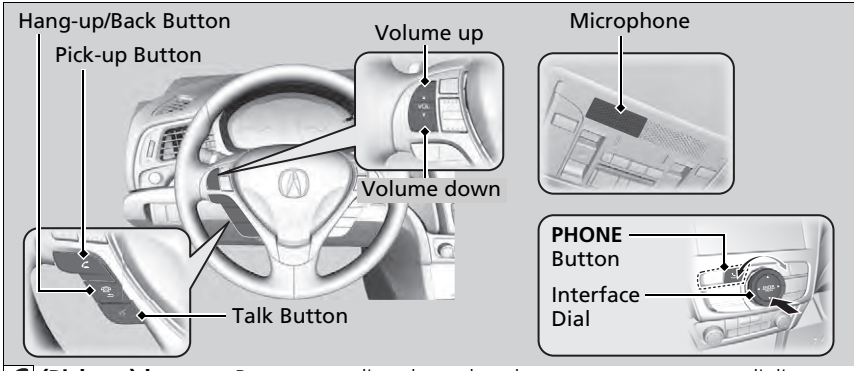
1. Press the **PHONE** button or the button.
2. Rotate to select to **Text Message**, then press .
3. Rotate to select a message, then press .
   ▶ The text message is displayed. The system automatically starts reading out the message.
4. Press to enter the **Text Message Menu**.
5. Rotate to select **Display Message**, then press .
6. Rotate to scroll down and display the entire message.

Models with two displays

Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink® (HFL) allows you to place and receive phone calls using your vehicle's audio system, without handling your cell phone.

Using HFL

HFL Buttons



(Pick-up) button: Press to go directly to the phone menu screen, to dialing a call or to answer an incoming call. Press and hold to redial the last number dialed in the phone's history.

(Hang-up/back) button: Press to end a call, or to cancel a command.

(Talk) button: Press to give HFL voice commands.

PHONE button: Press to go directly to the phone menu screen.

Interface dial (ENTER/MENU button): Rotate to select an item on the screen, then press . Move , , or to select secondary menu.

Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink®

Place your phone where you can get good reception. To use HFL, you need a *Bluetooth*-compatible cell phone. For a list of compatible phones, pairing procedures, and special feature capabilities:

- U.S.: Visit *www.handsfreelink.com/Acura*, or call 1-888-528-7876.
- Canada: For more information on smartphone compatibility, call 1-855-490-7351.

To use HFL, the **Bluetooth** setting must be **On**. If there is an active connection to Apple CarPlay, HFL is unavailable.

Customized Features P. 310

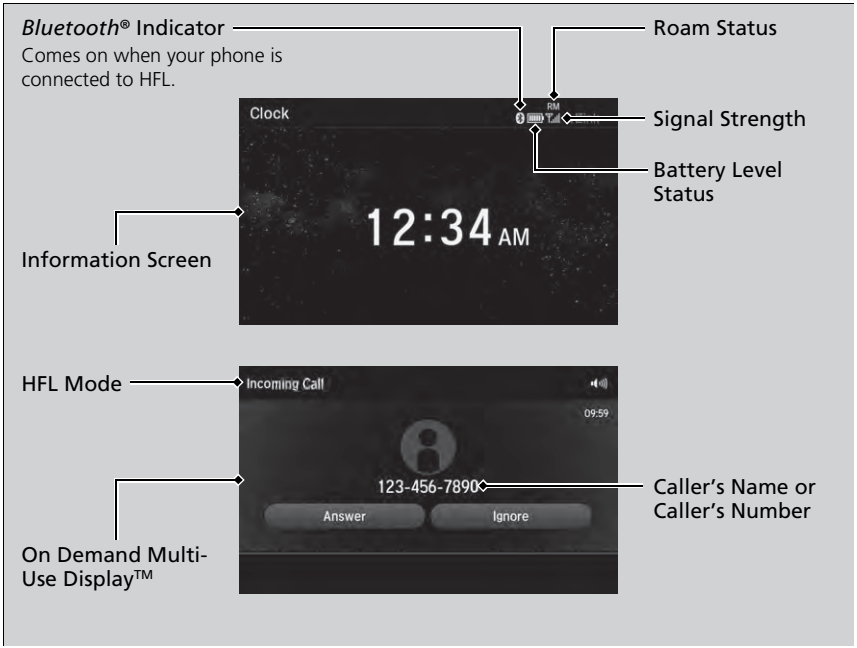
Voice control tips:

- Aim the vents away from the ceiling and close the windows, as noise coming from them may interfere with the microphone.
- Press and release the button when you want to call a number using a stored voice tag, a phonebook name, or a number. Speak clearly and naturally after a beep.
- If the microphone picks up voices other than yours, the command may be misinterpreted.
- To change the volume level, use the audio system's volume knob or the remote audio controls on the steering wheel.

State or local laws may prohibit the operation of handheld electronic devices while operating a vehicle.

HFL Status Display

The On Demand Multi-Use Display™ notifies you when there is an incoming call.



Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink®

If you receive a call while using the audio system, the system resumes its operation an after ending the call.

Bluetooth® Wireless Technology
The *Bluetooth*® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc., and any use of such marks by Honda Motor Co., Ltd., is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

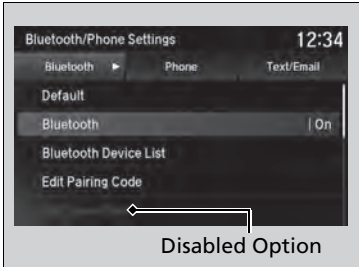
HFL Limitations
An incoming call on HFL will interrupt the audio system when it is playing. It will resume when the call is ended.

HFL Status Display

The information that appears on the information screen varies between phone models.

Continued

■ Limitations for Manual Operation



Certain manual functions are disabled or inoperable while the vehicle is in motion. You cannot select a grayed-out option until the vehicle is stopped.

Only previously stored speed dial entries with voice tags, phonebook names, or numbers can be called using voice commands while the vehicle is in motion.

➡ **Speed Dial** P. 388

HFL Menus

The power mode must be in ACCESSORY or ON to use HFL.

■ Bluetooth/Phone Settings screen



1. Press the **SETTINGS** button.
2. Rotate ⟲ to select **Bluetooth/Phone Settings**, then press ⟲.

HFL Menus

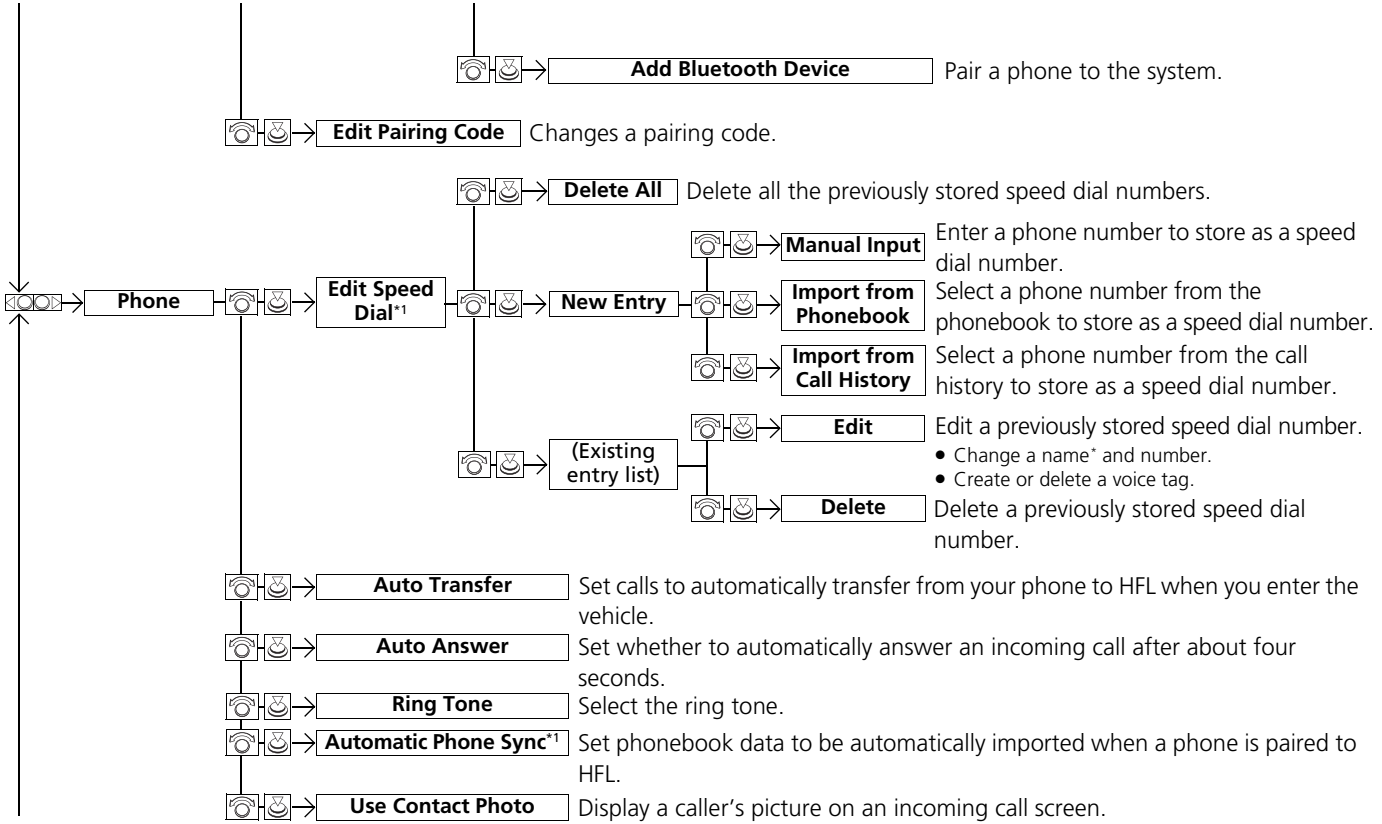
To use HFL, you must first pair your *Bluetooth*-compatible cell phone to the system while the vehicle is parked.

Some functions are limited while driving. A message appears on the screen when the vehicle is moving and the operation is canceled.

- **Default** — Cancel/Reset all customized items in the **Bluetooth/Phone Settings** group as default.
- **Bluetooth** → **Bluetooth** — Turns the *Bluetooth*® on and off.
- **Bluetooth Device List** → (Existing entry list)
  - **Connect to Phone** — Connect a phone to use the HFL.
  - **Connect to Audio** — Connect a phone to use the *Bluetooth*® audio and smartphone function.
  - **Connect Both** — Connect the device to use the all functions of *Bluetooth*® connection.
  - **Disconnect** — Disconnect a paired phone from the system.
  - **Edit Device Name*** — Edit the user name of a paired phone.
  - **Edit PIN** — Create a security PIN for a paired phone.
  - **Replace This Device** — Replace a previously paired phone with a new phone.
  - **Delete This Device** — Delete a previously paired phone.

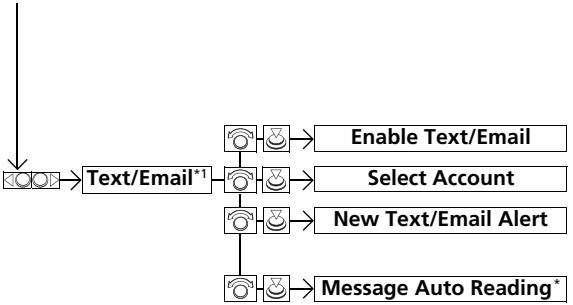
* Not available on all models

Continued



*1: Appears only when a phone is connected to HFL.

* Not available on all models



Turn the text/e-mail message function on and off.

Select a mail or text message account.

Select whether a pop-up alert comes on the screen when HFL receives a new text/e-mail message.

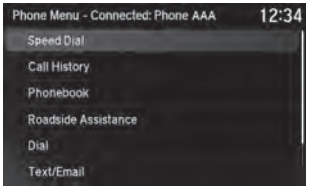
Selects whether the system automatically reads out messages, and, if selected, whether only when driving.

*1: Appears only when a phone is connected to HFL.

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Phone Menu screen

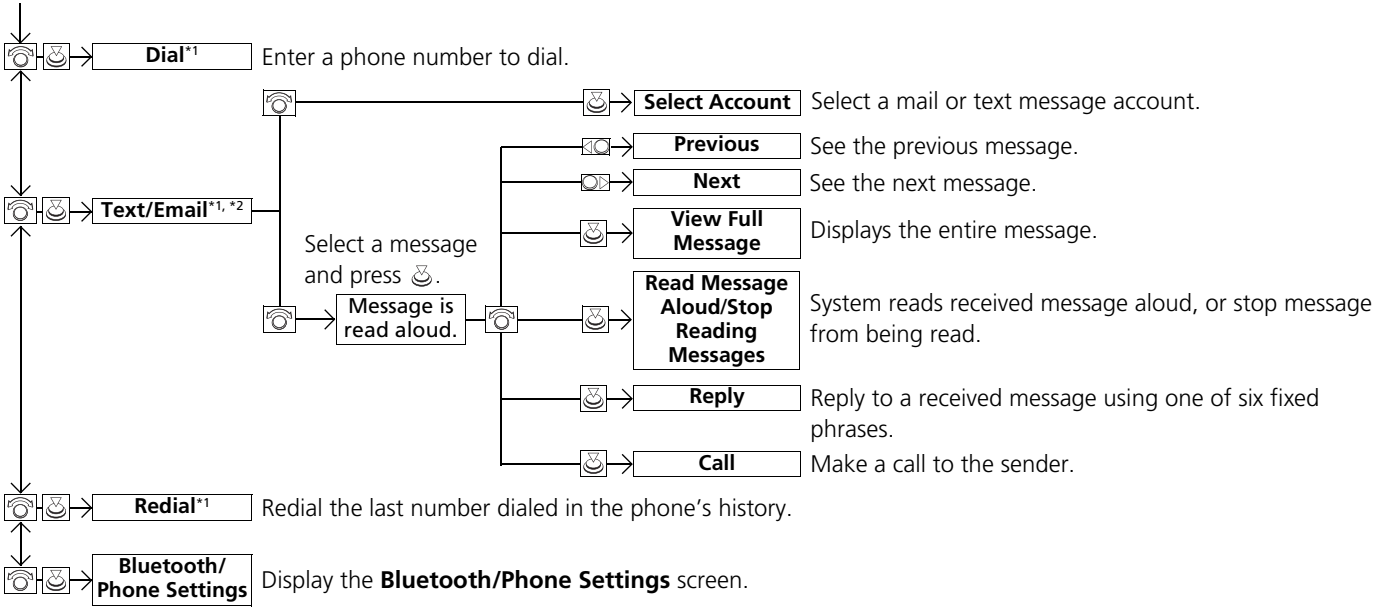


Press the **PHONE** button to display the menu items.

- **Speed Dial**[*1]
  - **More Speed Dials** — Display another paired phone's speed dial list.
  - **New Entry**
    - **Manual Input** — Enter a phone number to store as a speed dial number.
    - **Import from Phonebook** — Select a phone number from the phonebook to store as a speed dial number.
    - **Import from Call History** — Select a phone number from the call history to store as a speed dial number.
  - **(Existing entry list)** — Dial the selected number in the speed dial list.
- **Call History**[*1]
  - **All**[*2] — Display the last 20 outgoing, incoming and missed calls.
  - **Dialed** — Display the last 20 outgoing calls.
  - **Received** — Display the last 20 incoming calls.
  - **Missed** — Display the last 20 missed calls.
- **Phonebook**[*1] — Display the paired phone's phonebook.
- **Roadside Assistance*** — Makes a call to the number for the Roadside Assistance service.

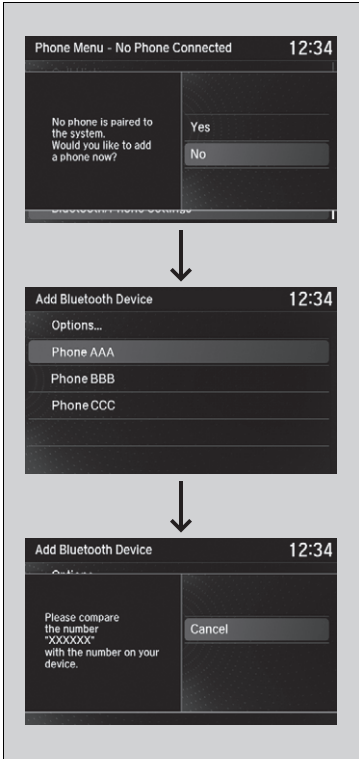
*1: Appears only when a phone is connected to HFL.
*2: This function is not available if your phone is not supported.

* Not available on all models



*1: Appears only when a phone is connected to HFL.
*2: This function is not available if your phone is not supported.

■ Phone Setup



■ To pair a cell phone (when there is no phone paired to the system)

1. Press the **PHONE** button.
2. Rotate ☎ to select **Yes**, then press ⊛.
3. Make sure your phone is search or discoverable mode, then press ⊛.
   ▶ HFL automatically searches for a *Bluetooth* device.
4. When your phone appears on the list, select it by pressing ⊛.
   ▶ If your phone does not appear, you can select **Options...** and **Refresh** to search again.
   ▶ If your phone still does not appear, select **Options...** to select **Device Not Found?** and search for *Bluetooth* devices using your phone. From your phone, select **HandsFreeLink**.
5. HFL gives you a pairing code on the information screen.
   ▶ Confirm if the pairing code on the screen and your phone match.
   This may vary by phone.
6. A notification appears on the screen if pairing is successful.

Phone Setup

Your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone must be paired to HFL before you can make and receive hands-free calls.

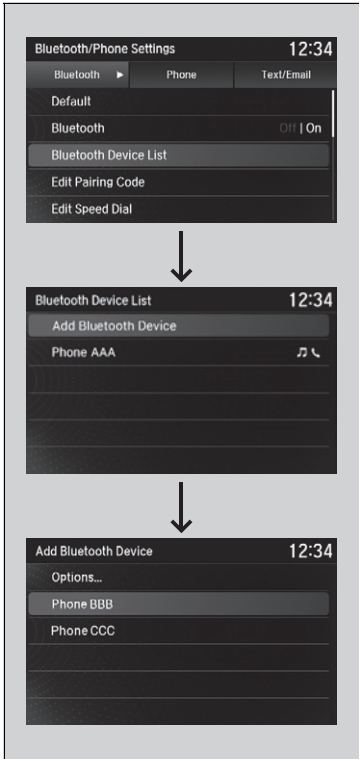
Phone Pairing Tips:
- You cannot pair your phone while the vehicle is moving.
- Up to six phones can be paired.
- Your phone's battery may drain faster when it is connected to HFL.
- If your phone is not ready for pairing or not found by the system within three minutes, the system will time out and returns to idle.

Once you have paired a phone, you can see it displayed on the screen with one or two icons on the right side.
These icons indicate the following:
: The phone can be used with HFL.
: The phone is compatible with *Bluetooth*® Audio.

When pairing is completed, an **Automatic Phone Sync** prompt appears. Select **On** if you want your call history and phonebook automatically imported to HFL.

➡ **Changing the Automatic Phone Sync setting** P. 387

If there is an active connection to Apple CarPlay, pairing of additional *Bluetooth*-compatible devices is unavailable.



■ **To pair a cell phone (when a phone has already been paired to the system)**

1. Press the **SETTINGS** button.

2. Rotate ⟲ to select **Bluetooth/Phone Settings**, then press ⟲.
▶ Repeat the procedure to select **Bluetooth Device List**, then **Add Bluetooth Device**.

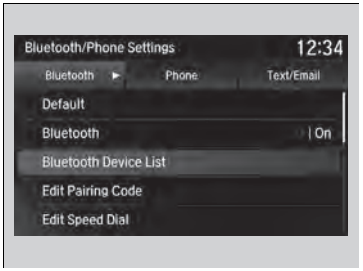
3. Make sure your phone is in search or discoverable mode, then press ⟲.
▶ HFL automatically searches for a *Bluetooth* device.

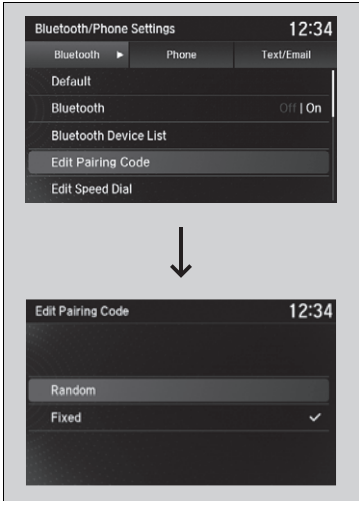
4. When your phone appears on the list, select it by pressing ⟲.
▶ If your phone does not appear, you can select **Options...** and **Refresh** to search again.
▶ If your phone still does not appear, select **Options...** to select **Device Not Found?** and search for *Bluetooth* devices using your phone. From your phone, select **HandsFreeLink**.

5. HFL gives you a pairing code on the information screen.
▶ Confirm if the pairing code on the screen and your phone match.
This may vary by phone.

6. A notification appears on the screen if pairing is successful.

Continued





■ To change the currently paired phone

1. Press the **SETTINGS** button.
2. Rotate ⟲ to select **Bluetooth/Phone Settings**, then press ⟲.
   ▶ Repeat the procedure to select **Bluetooth Device List**.
3. Select a phone to connect.
   ▶ HFL disconnects the connected phone and starts searching for another paired phone.
4. Select **Connect to Phone**, **Connect to Audio**, or **Connect Both**, then press ⟲.

■ To change the pairing code setting

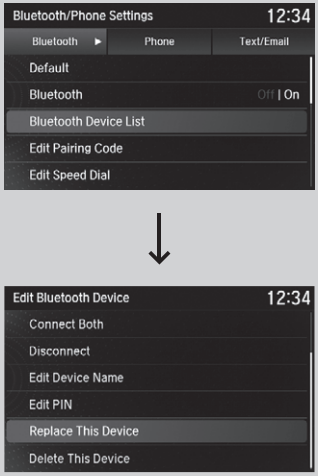
1. Press the **SETTINGS** button.
2. Rotate ⟲ to select **Bluetooth/Phone Settings**, then press ⟲.
   ▶ Repeat the procedure to select **Edit Pairing Code**.
3. Rotate ⟲ to select **Fixed** or **Random**, then press ⟲.

To change the pairing code setting

The pairing code may be six or four digits depending on your phone.

The default pairing code is **0000** until you change the setting.
To create your own, select **Fixed**, and delete the current code, then enter a new one.

For a randomly generated pairing code each time you pair a phone, select **Random**.



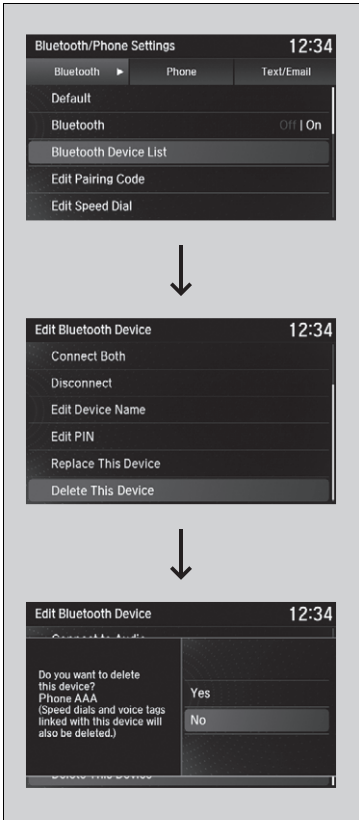
■ To replace an already-paired phone with a new phone

1. Press the **SETTINGS** button.
2. Rotate ⟲ to select **Bluetooth/Phone Settings**, then press ⟲.
   ▶ Repeat the procedure to select **Bluetooth Device List**.
3. Rotate ⟲ to select a paired phone you want to replace, then press ⟲.
4. Rotate ⟲ to select **Replace This Device**, then press ⟲.
5. HFL enters the pairing process and searches a new phone.
   ▶ Follow the prompts to pair a new phone.
6. A notification appears on the screen if pairing is successful.

To replace an already-paired phone with a new phone

The replaced phone will keep the same speed dial entries, and security PIN information from the previously paired phone.

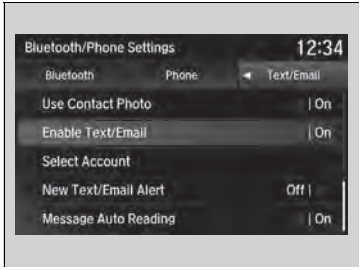
Continued



■ **To delete a paired phone**

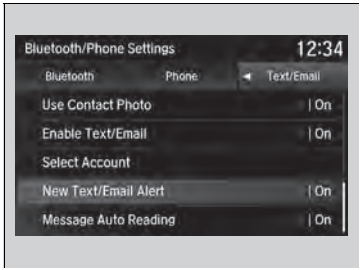
1. Press the **SETTINGS** button.
2. Rotate ⟲ to select **Bluetooth/Phone Settings**, then press ⟲.
   ▶ Repeat the procedure to select **Bluetooth Device List**.
3. Rotate ⟲ to select a phone you want to delete, then press ⟲.
4. Rotate ⟲ to select **Delete This Device**, then press ⟲.
5. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Rotate ⟲ to select **Yes**, then press ⟲.
6. A notification appears on the screen if pairing is successful.

To Set Up a Text/e-mail Message Option



To turn on or off the text/e-mail message function

1. Press the **SETTINGS** button.
2. Rotate ⟲ to select **Bluetooth/Phone Settings**, then press ⟲.
3. Rotate ⟲ to select **Enable Text/Email**.
4. Press ⟲ to select **On** or **Off**.



To turn on or off the text/e-mail message notice

1. Press the **SETTINGS** button.
2. Rotate ⟲ to select **Bluetooth/Phone Settings**, then press ⟲.
3. Rotate ⟲ to select **New Text/Email Alert**.
4. Press ⟲ to select **On** or **Off**.

To Set Up a Text/e-mail Message Option

To use the text/e-mail message function, you need a *Bluetooth*-compatible cell phone. For a list of compatible phones, pairing procedures, and special feature capabilities:

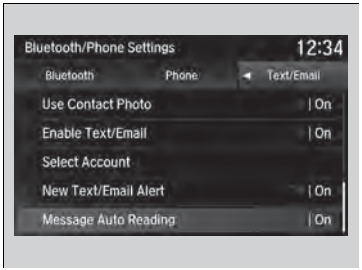
- U.S.: Visit *www.handsfreelink.com/Acura*, or call 1-888-528-7876.
- Canada: For more information on smartphone compatibility, call 1-855-490-7351.

Some text/e-mail features may not be available depending on a cellular phone.

To turn on or off the text/e-mail message notice

On: A pop-up notification comes on every time you receive a new text message.
Off: The message you receive is stored in the system without notification.

Continued



■ To set up the auto reading option*

1. Press the **SETTINGS** button.
2. Rotate ⟲ to select **Bluetooth/Phone Settings**, then press ⟲.
3. Rotate ⟲ to select **Message Auto Reading**.
4. Press ⟲ to select **On** or **Off**.

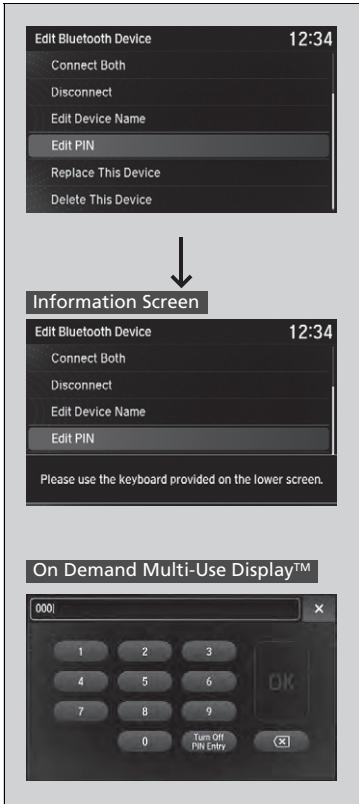
To set up the auto reading option*

On: A text/e-mail message is always read aloud.
Off: A text/e-mail message is not read aloud.

 * Not available on all models

To Create a Security PIN

You can protect each of the six cell phones with a security PIN.



1. Press the **SETTINGS** button.
2. Rotate to select **Bluetooth/Phone Settings**, then press .
   ▶ Repeat the procedure to select **Bluetooth Device List**.
3. Rotate to select a phone you want to add a security PIN to, then press .
4. Rotate to select **Edit PIN**, then press .
5. Enter a new four-digit number.
   ▶ Select X to delete. Select X of the right side upper screen, the screen returns to the previous screen.
6. Select **OK** to enter the security PIN.
7. Re-enter the four-digit number.
   ▶ The screen returns to the screen in step 4.

To Create a Security PIN

If the phone is already security PIN protected, you need to enter the current security PIN before clearing the PIN or creating a new one.

Continued

■ Editing User Name*



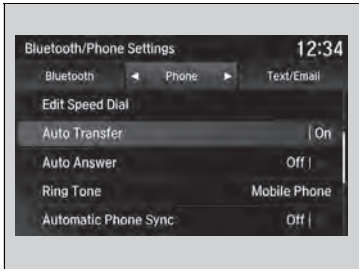
Edit the user name of a paired phone as follows:

1. Press the **SETTINGS** button.
2. Rotate ⟲ to select **Bluetooth/Phone Settings**, then press ⟲.
   ▶ Repeat the procedure to select **Bluetooth Device List**.
3. Rotate ⟲ to select a phone you want to edit, then press ⟲.
4. Rotate ⟲ to select **Edit Device Name**, then press ⟲.
5. Enter a new name of the phone.
   ▶ Use the keyboard on the On Demand Multi-Use Display™ to enter the name, then select **OK**.

 * Not available on all models

■ Automatic Transferring

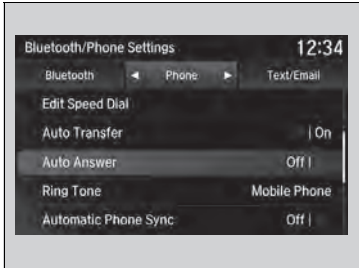
If you get into the vehicle while you are on the phone, the call can be automatically transferred to HFL.



1. Press the **SETTINGS** button.
2. Rotate ⟲ to select **Bluetooth/Phone Settings**, then press ⟲.
3. Rotate ⟲ to select **Auto Transfer**.
4. Press ⟲ to select **On** or **Off**.

■ Auto Answer

You can set HFL to automatically answer an incoming call in four seconds.



1. Press the **SETTINGS** button.
2. Rotate ⟲ to select **Bluetooth/Phone Settings**, then press ⟲.
3. Rotate ⟲ to select **Auto Answer**.
4. Press ⟲ to select **On** or **Off**.

Continued

■ Ring Tone

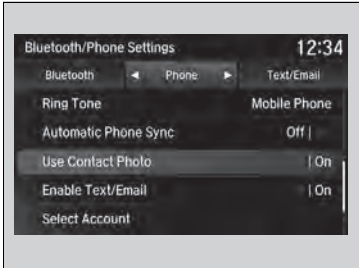
You can change the ring tone setting.



1. Press the **SETTINGS** button.
2. Rotate ⟲ to select **Bluetooth/Phone Settings**, then press ⟲.
   ▶ Repeat the procedure to select **Ring Tone**.
3. Rotate ⟲ to select **Fixed**, **Mobile Phone** or **Off**, then press ⟲.

■ Use Contact Photo

You can display a caller's picture on an incoming call screen.



1. Press the **SETTINGS** button.
2. Rotate ⟲ to select **Bluetooth/Phone Settings**, then press ⟲.
3. Rotate ⟲ to select **Use Contact Photo**.
4. Press ⟲ to select **On** or **Off**.

Ring Tone

Fixed: The fixed ring tone sounds from the speaker.
Mobile Phone: The ring tone stored in the connected cell phone sounds from the speaker.
Off: No ring tones sound from the speaker.

■ Automatic Import of Cellular Phonebook and Call History



■ When Automatic Phone Sync is set to On:

When your phone is paired, the contents of its phonebook and call history are automatically imported to HFL.



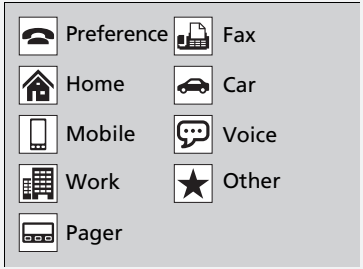
■ Changing the Automatic Phone Sync setting

1. Press the **SETTINGS** button.
2. Rotate ⟲ to select **Bluetooth/Phone Settings**, then press ⟲.
   ▶ Repeat the procedure to select **Automatic Phone Sync**.
3. Rotate ⟲ to select **On** or **Off**, then press ⟲.

Continued

Automatic Import of Cellular Phonebook and Call History

When you select a person from the list in the cellular phonebook, you can see up to three category icons. The icons indicate what types of numbers are stored for that name.

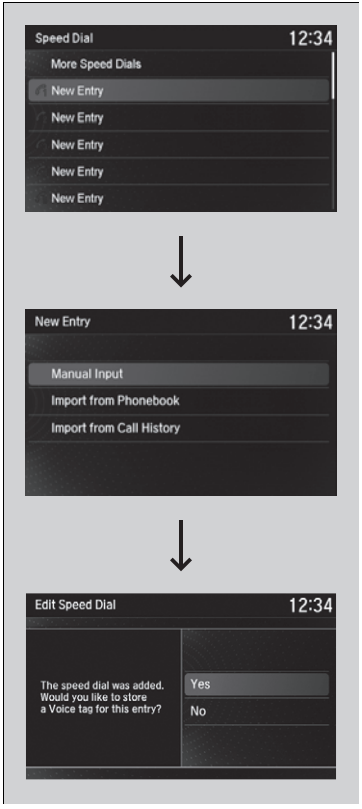


On some phones, it may not be possible to import the category icons to HFL.

The phonebook is updated after every connection. Call history is updated after every connection or call.

■ Speed Dial

Up to 20 speed dial numbers can be stored per phone.

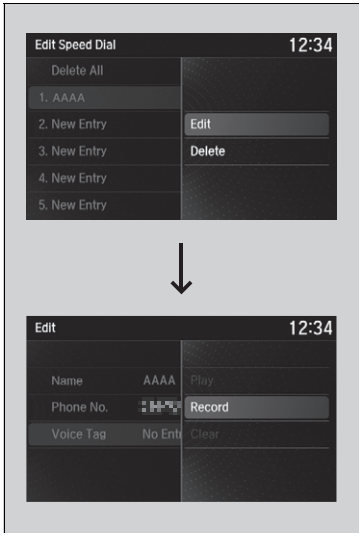


To store a speed dial number:

1. Press the **PHONE** button.
2. Rotate ⟲ to select **Speed Dial**, then press ⊙.
   ▶ Repeat the procedure to select **New Entry**.
3. Rotate ⟲ to select a place to choose a number from, then press ⊙.
   From **Manual Input**:
   ▶ Input the number manually.
   From **Import from Phonebook**:
   ▶ Select a number from the linked cell phone's imported phonebook.
   From **Import from Call History**:
   ▶ Select a number from the call history.
4. When the speed dial is successfully stored from **Import from Call History** or **Import from Phonebook**, you are asked to create a voice tag for the number. Rotate ⟲ to select **Yes** or **No**, then press ⊙.
5. Using the 🎤 button, follow the prompts to store a voice tag for the speed dial entry.

Speed Dial

When a voice tag is stored, press the 🎤 button to call the number using the voice tag. Say *"Call"* and the voice tag name.



■ To add a voice tag to a stored speed dial number

1. Press the **SETTINGS** button.
2. Rotate ⟲ to select **Bluetooth/Phone Settings**, then press ⊛.
   ▶ Repeat the procedure to select **Edit Speed Dial**.
3. Select an existing speed dial entry.
   ▶ From the pop-up menu, rotate ⟲ to select **Edit**, then press ⊛.
4. Rotate ⟲ to select **Voice Tag**, then press ⊛.
   ▶ From the pop-up menu, rotate ⟲ to select **Record**, then press ⊛.

Models without navigation system

5. Using the 🎤 button, follow the prompts to complete the voice tag.

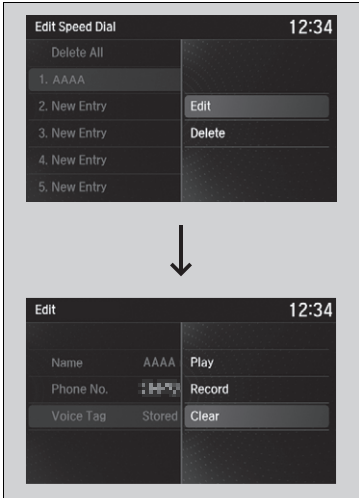
Models with navigation system

5. Press ⊛.
   ▶ Using the 🎤 button, follow the prompts to complete the voice tag.
6. You will receive a confirmation message on the screen. Rotate ⟲ to select **OK**, then press ⊛.

Speed Dial

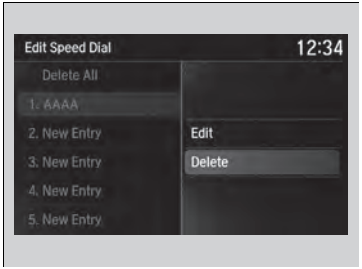
Avoid using duplicate voice tags.
Avoid using "home" as a voice tag.
It is easier for HFL to recognize a longer name. For example, use "John Smith" instead of "John."

Continued



■ To delete a voice tag

1. Press the **SETTINGS** button.
2. Rotate ☜ to select **Bluetooth/Phone Settings**, then press ⍥.
   ▶ Repeat the procedure to select **Edit Speed Dial**.
3. Select an existing speed dial entry.
   ▶ From the pop-up menu, rotate ☜ to select **Edit**, then press ⍥.
4. Rotate ☜ to select **Voice Tag**, then press ⍥.
   ▶ From the pop-up menu, rotate ☜ to select **Clear**, then press ⍥.
5. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Rotate ☜ to select **Yes**, then press ⍥.



■ To delete a speed dial

1. Press the **SETTINGS** button.
2. Rotate ☜ to select **Bluetooth/Phone Settings**, then press ⍥.
   ▶ Repeat the procedure to select **Edit Speed Dial**.
3. Select an existing speed dial entry.
   ▶ From the pop-up menu, rotate ☜ to select **Delete**, then press ⍥.
4. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Rotate ☜ to select **Yes**, then press ⍥.

■ Phonebook Phonetic Modification*

Add phonetic modifications or a new voice tag to the phone's contact name so that it is easier for HFL to recognize voice commands.



■ To add a new voice tag

1. Press the **SETTINGS** button.
2. Rotate to select **System Settings**, then press.
3. Rotate to select **Phonebook Phonetic Modification**, then press.
4. Rotate to select the phone you want to add phonetic modification to, then press.
5. Rotate to select **Options...**, then press.
6. Rotate to select **New Voice Tag**, then press.

Phonebook Phonetic Modification*

You can store up to 20 phonetic modification items.

* Not available on all models

Continued



7. Move ◁○ or ○▷ and rotate ⟲ to select a contact name, then press ⟲.
▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.

8. Rotate ⟲ to select **Modify**, then press ⟲.
9. Press ⟲.
▶ Using the button, follow the prompts to complete the voice tag.
10. You will receive a confirmation message on the screen. Rotate ⟲ to select **OK**, then press ⟲.
11. Rotate ⟲ to select **Options...**, then press ⟲.
12. Rotate ⟲ to select **OK**, then press ⟲.



■ To modify a voice tag

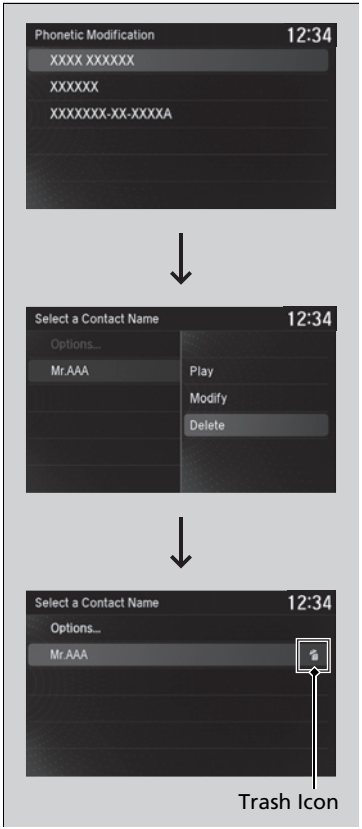
1. Press the **SETTINGS** button.
2. Rotate ⟲ to select **System Settings**, then press ⊙.
3. Rotate ⟲ to select **Phonebook Phonetic Modification**, then press ⊙.
4. Rotate ⟲ to select the phone you want to add phonetic modification to, then press ⊙.
5. Rotate ⟲ to select a contact name you want to modify, then press ⊙.
   ▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
6. Rotate ⟲ to select **Modify**, then press ⊙.
7. Press ⊙.
   ▶ Using the 🎤 button, follow the prompts to complete the voice tag.
8. You will receive a confirmation message on the screen. Rotate ⟲ to select **OK**, then press ⊙.
9. Rotate ⟲ to select **Options...**, then press ⊙.
10. Rotate ⟲ to select **OK**, then press ⊙.

Phonebook Phonetic Modification*

You can only modify or delete contact names for the currently connected phone.

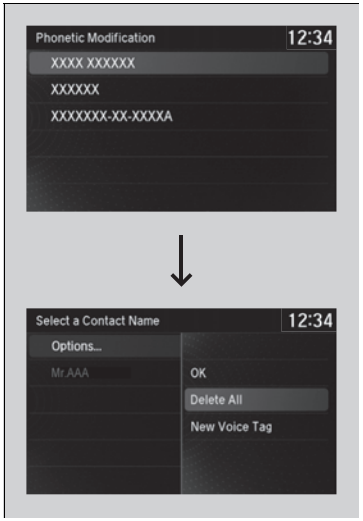
* Not available on all models

Continued



■ **To delete a modified voice tag**

1. Press the **SETTINGS** button.
2. Rotate to select **System Settings**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Phonebook Phonetic Modification**, then press .
4. Rotate to select the phone you want to delete phonetic modification, then press .
5. Rotate to select a contact name you want to delete, then press .
   ▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
6. Rotate to select **Delete**, then press .
   ▶ Items to be deleted are indicated with a trash icon.
7. Rotate to select **Options...**, then press .
8. Rotate to select **OK**, then press .

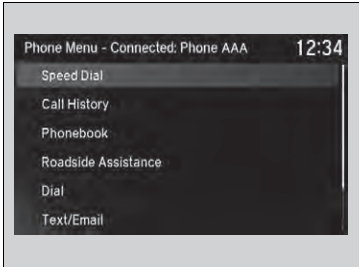


■ **To delete all modified voice tags**

1. Press the **SETTINGS** button.
2. Rotate ☎ to select **System Settings**, then press ⊛.
3. Rotate ☎ to select **Phonebook Phonetic Modification**, then press ⊛.
4. Rotate ☎ to select the phone you want to delete phonetic modification, then press ⊛.
5. Rotate ☎ to select **Options...**, then press ⊛.
6. Rotate ☎ to select **Delete All**, then press ⊛.
7. You will receive a confirmation message on the screen. Rotate ☎ to select **Yes**, then press ⊛.

Continued

■ Making a Call



You can make calls by inputting any phone number, or by using the imported phonebook, call history, speed dial entries, or redial.

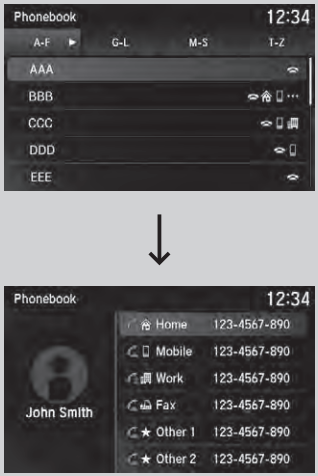
Making a Call

Any voice-tagged speed dial entry, phonebook name, or number can be dialed by voice from most screens. Press the button and say *"Call"* and the voice tag name, *"Call by name"* and the phonebook name, or *"Call"* and the phone number.

The maximum range between your phone and vehicles is 30 feet (10 meters).

Once a call is connected, you can hear the voice of the person you are calling through the audio speakers.

While there is an active connection with Apple CarPlay, phone calls cannot be made with HandsFreeLink® and are only made from Apple CarPlay.



■ To make a call using the imported phonebook

1. Press the **PHONE** button.
2. Rotate ⟲ to select **Phonebook**, then press ⊛.
3. Rotate ⟲ to select a contact name, then press ⊛.
   ▶ The phonebook is stored alphabetically.
4. Rotate ⟲ to select a number, then press ⊛.
   ▶ Dialing starts automatically.

To make a call using the imported phonebook

You can call a stored voice-tagged speed dial number, phonebook name, or number using voice commands.

Speed Dial P. 388

Models with navigation system

You can use the keyboard on the On Demand Multi-Use Display™ for a partial match search.



Models without navigation system

You can use the keyboard on the On Demand Multi-Use Display™ for an alphabetical search.

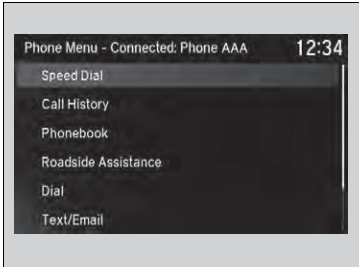


Continued



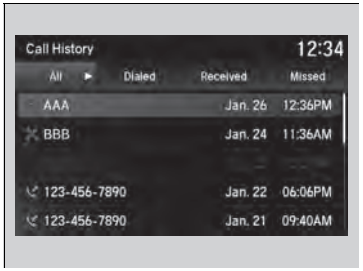
■ To make a call using a phone number

1. Press the **PHONE** button.
2. Rotate ⟲ to select **Dial**, then press ⟲.
3. Select a number.
▶ Use the keyboard on the On Demand Multi-Use Display™ for entering numbers.
4. Select ✆.



■ To make a call using redial

1. Press the **PHONE** button.
2. Rotate ⟲ to select **Redial**, then press ⟲.
▶ Dialing starts automatically.



■ To make a call using the call history

Call history is stored by **All**[*1], **Dialed**, **Received**, and **Missed**.

1. Press the **PHONE** button.
2. Rotate ⟲ to select **Call History**, then press ⊛.
3. Move ◁◯ or ◯▷ to select **All**[*1], **Dialed**, **Received**, and **Missed**.
4. Rotate ⟲ to select a number, then press ⊛.
   ▶ Dialing starts automatically.

To make a call using the call history

The call history displays the last 20 dialed, received, or missed calls.
(Appears only when a phone is connected to HFL.)

These icons next to the number indicate the following:
: Dialed calls.
: Received calls.
: Missed calls.

*1: This function may not be available depending on a cellular phone.

Continued



■ To make a call using a speed dial entry

1. Press the **PHONE** button.
2. Rotate ⟲ to select **Speed Dial**, then press ⊙.
3. Rotate ⟲ to select a number, then press ⊙.
▶ Dialing starts automatically.

To make a call using a speed dial entry

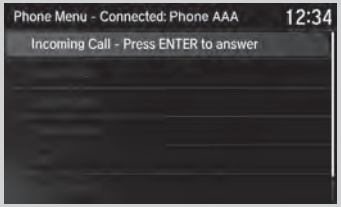
Rotate ⟲ to select **More Speed Dials** to view another paired phone's speed dial list. You can make a call from that list using the currently connected phone.

When a voice tag is stored, press the 🎙 button to call the number using the voice tag.
➡ **Speed Dial** P. 388

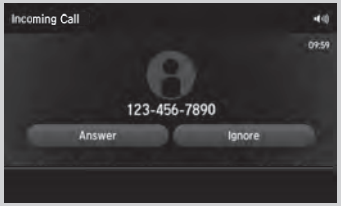
Any voice-tagged speed dial entry, phonebook name or number can be dialed by voice from any screen. Press the 🎙 button and follow the prompts.

Receiving a Call

Information Screen



On Demand Multi-Use Display™



When there is an incoming call, an audible notification sounds (if activated) and the **Incoming Call** screen appears.

Press the button to answer the call.
Press the button to decline or end the call.

Receiving a Call

Call Waiting

Press the button to put the current call on hold to answer the incoming call.

Press the button again to return to the current call.

Ignore the incoming call if you do not want to answer it.

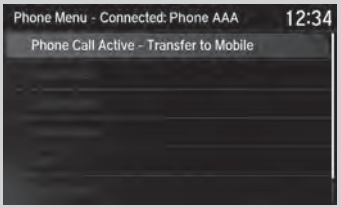
Press the button if you want to hang up the current call.

Continued

■ Options During a Call

The following options are available during a call.

Information Screen



On Demand Multi-Use Display™



Mute Icon

Information Screen

Phone Call Active - Transfer to Mobile: Transfer a call from HFL to your phone.

On Demand Multi-Use Display™

Mute: Mute your voice.
Transfer to Mobile: Transfer a call from HFL to your phone.
Touch Tones: Send numbers during a call. This is useful when you call a menu-driven phone system.

The available options are shown on the On Demand Multi-Use Display™.
Select the option.

▶ The **Mute** icon is checked when **Mute** is selected. Select **Mute** again to turn it off.

Options During a Call

Touch Tones: Available on some phones.

Features

■ Receiving a Text/E-mail Message

HFL can display newly received text and e-mail messages as well as 20 of the most recently received messages on a linked cell phone. Each received message can be read aloud and replied to using a fixed common phrase.



1. A pop-up appears and notifies you of a new text or e-mail message.
2. Rotate ⟲ to select **Read** to listen to the message, then press ⏻.
   ▶ The text or e-mail message is displayed. The system automatically starts reading out the message.
3. To discontinue the message read-out, press ⏻.

Receiving a Text/E-mail Message

The system does not display any received messages while you are driving. You can only hear them read aloud.

With some phones, you may be able to display up to 20 most recent text and e-mail messages.

State or local laws may limit your use of the HFL text/e-mail message feature. Only use the text/e-mail message feature when conditions allow you to do so safely.

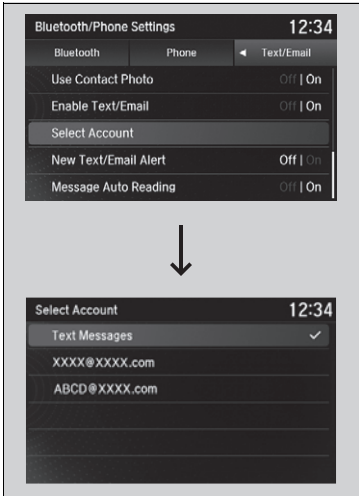
When you receive a text or e-mail message for the first time since the phone is paired to HFL, you are asked to turn the **New Text/Email Alert** setting to **On**.

➡ **To turn on or off the text/e-mail message notice** P. 381

Continued

■ Selecting a Mail Account

If a paired phone has text message or mail accounts, you can select one of them to be active and receive notifications.



1. Press the **SETTINGS** button.
2. Rotate ⟲ to select **Bluetooth/Phone Settings**, then press ⊙.
   ▶ Repeat the procedure to select **Select Account**.
3. Rotate ⟲ to select **Text Messages** or an e-mail account you want, then press ⊙.

Selecting a Mail Account

You can also select a mail account from the folder list screen or the message list screen.
Rotate ⟲ to select **Select Account**, then press ⊙.



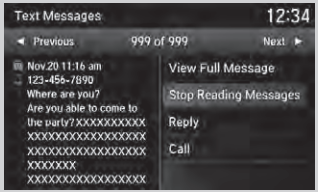
You can only receive notifications from one text message or mail account at a time.

■ Displaying Messages

Message List



Text Message



■ Displaying text messages

1. Press the **PHONE** button.

2. Rotate ⟲ to select **Text/Email**, then press ⊛.

▶ Select account if necessary.

3. Rotate ⟲ to select a message, then press ⊛.

▶ The text message is displayed. The system automatically starts reading the message aloud.

4. Rotate ⟲ to select **View Full Message**.

5. Press ⊛ to displays the full text of the message.

Displaying Messages

The ✉ icon appears next to an unread message.

If you delete a message on the phone, the message will also be deleted from the system. If you send a message from the system, the message goes to your phone's outbox.

To see the previous or next message, move ◁○ or ○▷ on the text message screen.

Continued

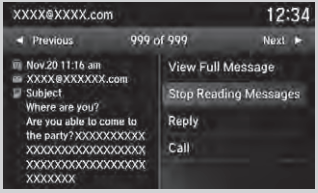
Folder List



Message List



E-mail Message

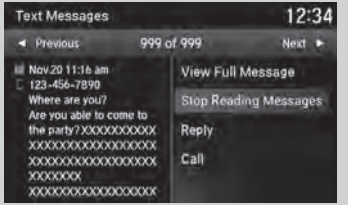


■ Displaying e-mail messages

1. Press the **PHONE** button.
2. Rotate ⟲ to select **Text/Email**, then press ⟲.
3. Rotate ⟲ to select a folder, then press ⟲.
4. Rotate ⟲ to select a message, then press ⟲.
   ▶ The e-mail is displayed. The system automatically starts reading the message aloud.
5. Rotate ⟲ to select **View Full Message**.
6. Press ⟲ to displays the full text of the message.

Displaying e-mail messages

Received text and e-mail messages may appear in the message list screen at the same time. In this case, text messages are titled **No Subject**.



■ Read or stop reading a message

1. Go to the text or e-mail message screen.
▶ The system automatically starts reading the message aloud.
➡ **Displaying Messages** P. 405

2. Rotate ⟲ to select **Stop Reading Messages**.

3. Press ⟲ to stop reading.
Press ⟲ again to start reading the message from the beginning.



■ Reply to a message

1. Go to the text or e-mail message screen.
▶ The system automatically starts reading the message aloud.
➡ **Displaying Messages** P. 405

2. Rotate ⟲ to select **Reply**, then press ⟲.

3. Rotate ⟲ to select the reply message, then press ⟲.
▶ **Message sent** appears on the screen when the reply message was successfully sent.

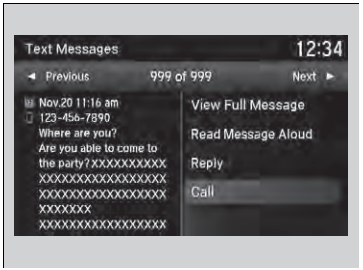
Reply to a message

The available fixed reply messages are as follows:
- **Talk to you later, I'm driving.**
- **I'm on my way.**
- **I'm running late.**
- **OK**
- **Yes**
- **No**

You cannot add, edit, or delete reply messages.

Only certain phones receive and send messages when paired and connected. For a list of compatible phones:
- U.S.: Visit *www.handsfreelink.com/Acura*, or call 1-888-528-7876.
- Canada: For more information on smartphone compatibility, call 1-855-490-7351.

Continued



■ Making a call to a sender

1. Go to the text message screen.
▶ The system automatically starts reading the message aloud.
➔ **Displaying text messages** P. 405
2. Rotate ⟲ to select **Call**, then press ⏏.

■ Roadside Assistance*

Provides a nationwide service for unexpected incidents. You can call for assistance using a phone paired and connected to *Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink®.



1. Press the **PHONE** button.
2. Rotate ⟲ to select **Roadside Assistance**, then press ⟲.
3. Rotate ⟲ to select a phone number, then press ⟲.
   ▶ Dialing starts automatically.

Roadside Assistance*

If you are subscribed to a paid AcuraLink package, you can call roadside assistance using the **LINK** button instead of your phone.

AcuraLink®* P. 410

* Not available on all models

Is a subscription-based service that provides convenient features such as voice communication in case of emergency, online security, one-on-one operator assistance, and the transmission of important messages regarding your vehicle's status.

Canadian models

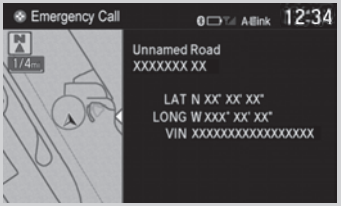
For information on traffic rerouting and traffic information updates, provided by the AcuraLink server, see the Navigation System Manual.

In Case of Emergency

Automatic collision notification

When connected to the AcuraLink operator:

Information screen



On Demand Multi-Use Display™



If your vehicle's airbags deploy or if the unit detects that the vehicle is severely impacted, your vehicle will automatically attempt to connect to the AcuraLink operator. Once connected, information about your vehicle, its positioning, and its condition will be sent to the operator; you also can speak to the operator when connected.

AcuraLink®*

AcuraLink also provides services you can operate from the Internet or your smartphone.

To subscribe to AcuraLink, or to get more information about all of its features, contact an Acura dealer, or visit *owners.acura.com* (U.S.) or *www.acura.ca/owners/acuralink* (Canada).

In Case of Emergency

Your vehicle may not be able to connect to the operator if the battery level is low, the line is disconnected, or you do not have adequate cellular coverage.

You cannot use emergency services when:
- You travel outside the AcuraLink service coverage areas.
- There is a problem with the connecting devices, such as the **ASSIST** button, microphone, speakers, or the unit itself.
- You are not subscribed to the service or your subscription is no longer valid.

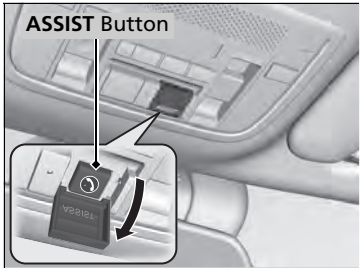
You cannot operate other navigation or phone related functions using the screens while talking to the operator.
Only the operator can terminate the connection to your vehicle.

Automatic collision notification

If the unit fails to connect to the operator, it repeatedly tries until it succeeds.

* Not available on all models

■ Manual operator connection



If you need to talk to the AcuraLink operator in an emergency situation, you can manually connect to them by pressing the **ASSIST** button with the power mode in ACCESSORY or ON.

1. Open the cover attached to the ceiling console.
2. Press the **ASSIST** button.
   ▶ You are connected to the AcuraLink operator.

Manual operator connection

Do not press the button while driving. When you need to contact the operator, park the vehicle in a safe place.

If the unit fails to connect to the operator, it automatically cancels the action after three minutes.

In an emergency, the cover can be broken through to press the **ASSIST** button.

Continued

■ Security Features

Your subscribed telematics service provider can track your vehicle's location, remotely lock or unlock doors, and help you find your vehicle.
To use these features, you need your user ID and personal identification number (PIN).

■ Stolen vehicle tracking

This feature searches and tracks down your vehicle position even if it is on the move. If you believe that your vehicle has been stolen, contact the police as well as the provider.

■ Remote door lock/unlock

The provider can remotely lock or unlock doors upon your request.

■ Vehicle finder

This feature is convenient to use when trying to locate your vehicle in large areas, such as a crowded parking lot. If you cannot locate your vehicle after using the remote transmitter's answerback function, you can contact the provider which can then flash your vehicle's exterior lights and sound the horn.

■ Security alarm notification

If the security system in your vehicle detects an abnormal condition, such as someone tampering with the lock on your vehicle, the provider notifies you by your preferred method.

Security Features

The contact information of your provider, your user ID and PIN will be given when you subscribe to AcuraLink. If you forget any of the above, contact a dealer, or visit *owners.acura.com* (U.S.) or *www.acura.ca/owners/acuralink* (Canada).

You can also activate the remote door lock/unlock and vehicle finder features from the Internet or using your smartphone app. Ask a dealer, or visit *owners.acura.com* (U.S.) or *www.acura.ca/owners/acuralink* (Canada) for details.

Vehicle finder

The lights will stop flashing and horn will stop sounding under the following conditions:
- When 30 seconds have elapsed.
- You unlock the doors using the remote transmitter.
- You unlock the doors using the keyless access system.
- You unlock the doors using the built-in key.
- The power mode is set to ACCESSORY or ON.

■ Operator Assistance

Connect to the AcuraLink operator when trying to find a destination or for roadside assistance.



1. Press the **LINK** button.
▶ Connection to the operator begins.



2. Talk to the operator.
▶ To disconnect, select **End Call** or press the (Hang-up/back) button on the steering wheel.

Operator Assistance

Remain attentive to road conditions and driving during operator assistance.

Continued

■ AcuraLink Message



AcuraLink sends you messages on vehicle features, safety and emissions recall campaigns, maintenance reminders, and diagnostic information.
When you receive a new message, an icon appears on the information screen.

■ Message category

There are six message categories.

- **Feature Guide**: Appears for the first 30 days of ownership, introducing vehicle features each day.
- **Quick Tips**: Supplements your Owner's Manual with updated vehicle information.
- **Diagnostic Information**: Appears when a warning indicator or message comes on.
  Rotate ⟲ to select **Check Later** or **Check Now**.
  ▶ Selecting **Check Now** lets you know if you should see a dealer immediately or later in accordance with the warning severity level.
- **Scheduled Dealer Appointment**: An appointment made through the Acura server or Acura Owners website can be rescheduled or canceled from this option.
  ➡ P. 416
- **Maintenance Minder**: Lets you know which maintenance item is due along with a reminder message.
- **Recalls/Campaigns**: Reminds you of a recall or important safety information. You should also be notified by mail.

AcuraLink Message

Messages may not appear immediately after your vehicle purchase. It can take several days for your dealer to register your vehicle's ID.

If an icon includes an exclamation point, it indicates that Acura gives high priority to this message compared to the one without.

- A!: An unread message with high priority
- A✓: An unread message

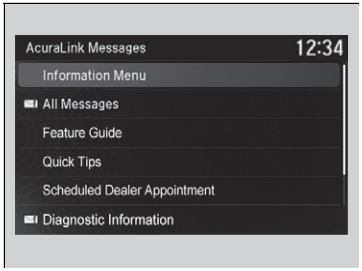
Message category

Message categories can be added, edited, or deleted through broadcast messages from Acura.

You can call your dealer, find the nearest dealer, or schedule appointments from the message options in **Maintenance Minder**, **Recalls/Campaigns**, and **Diagnostic Information**.

➡ **Message Options** P. 415

■ Reading a message



1. Press the **INFO** button or press , follow the message on the information screen.
2. Rotate to select **AcuraLink/Messages**, then press .
   ▶ AcuraLink messages appears.
3. Rotate to select a category, then press .
   ▶ If there are unread messages in a category, a message icon appears next to that category.
4. Rotate to select a message you want to read, then press .

■ Message Options

While a message is displayed, you can use options to take immediate action to the message.

Available options are:

- **Read Messages Aloud**: Reads the message aloud. Select **Stop Reading Messages** to cancel it.
- **View Full Message**: Displays the entire message.
- **Phone number**: Dials a number displayed in the message via HFL.
- **Delete**: Deletes the displayed message.
- **Call Your Dealer**: Calls your Acura dealer using HFL.
- **Find Acura Dealer**: Searches for the nearest Acura dealer.
- **Roadside Assistance**: Makes a call to the number for the Roadside Assistance service.
- **Schedule Dealer Appoi...**: Automatically sets an appointment date at your dealer.

Reading a message

If there is no message listed on the menu, each category items are grayed out and cannot be selected.

The message icon disappears once you read the message.

However, the exclamation mark that indicates that the message has a high priority remains.

- : A read message with high priority.

Message Options

The available options vary by message category.

You can delete all messages in a category at once.

Customized Features P. 310

Continued

■ Dealer Appointments

You can confirm the scheduled appointment date when you receive a **Maintenance Minder**, **Recalls/Campaigns**, or **Diagnostic Information** message, or reschedule any existing appointments.

1. Select a **Maintenance Minder**, **Recalls/Campaigns**, **Diagnostic Information**, or **Scheduled Dealer Appointment** message.
2. Rotate ⟲ to select **Schedule Dealer Appoi...** or **Reschedule Appoint...** (depending on the screen). Press ⟲.
   ▶ A suggested time and date are displayed.
3. Rotate ⟲ to select **Confirm Appointment**. Press ⟲ to accept the time and date.
4. Press ⟲ to select **OK**.

Dealer Appointments

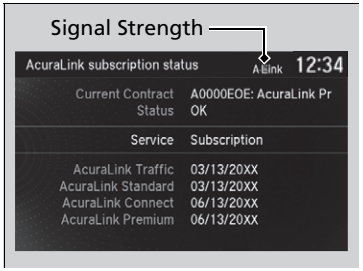
To set up an automated dealer appointment when a regular maintenance is due, visit the Acura Owners website at *owners.acura.com* (U.S.) or *www.acura.ca/owners/acuralink* (Canada), and set the required option. A reminder message will be sent as the date for the dealer appointment approaches. A reminder message will also be sent if you schedule an appointment online using Schedule Service Appointment function.

If you are not satisfied with the proposed appointment date and time, call your dealer directly.

To cancel the scheduled appointment, select **Cancel Appointment** when a message is displayed.

■ AcuraLink Subscription Status

You can confirm your AcuraLink subscription status.

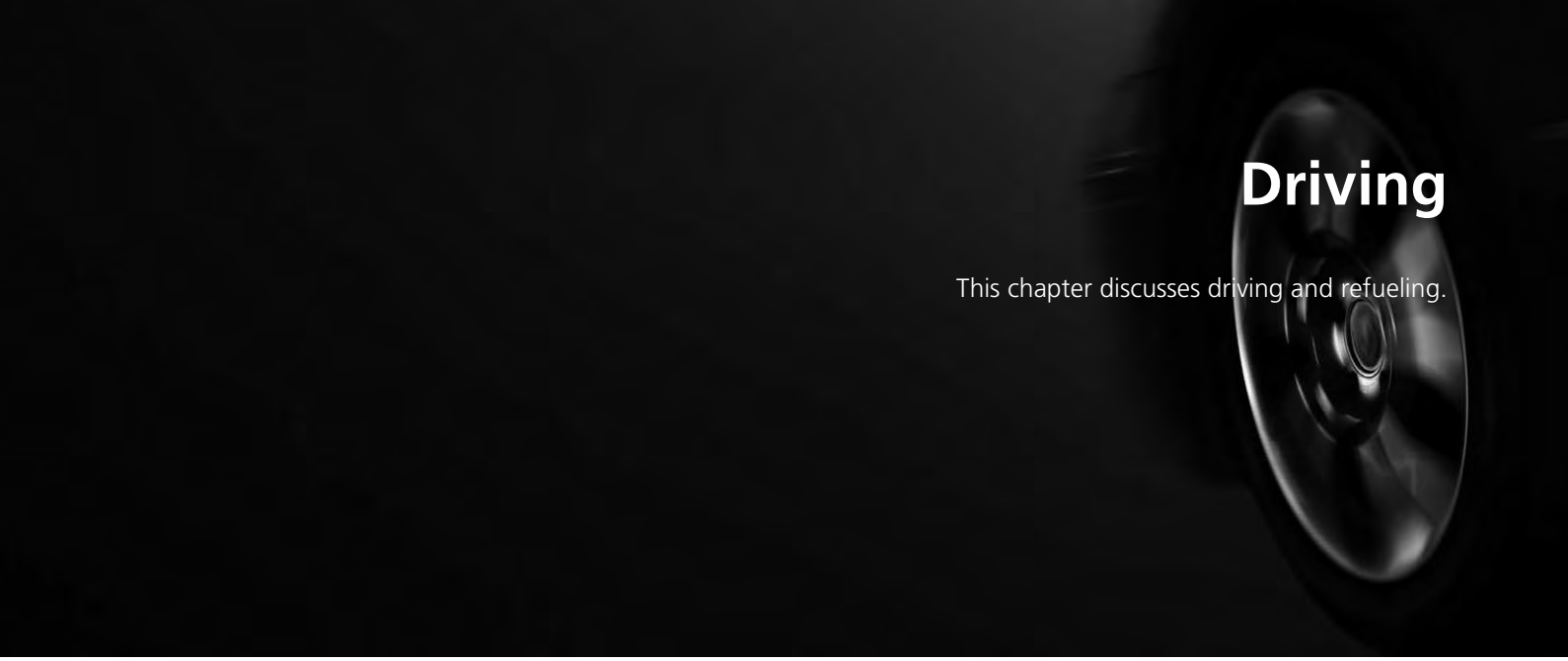


1. Press the **SETTINGS** button.
2. Rotate ⟲ to select **AcuraLink Settings**, then press ⟲.
   ▶ Repeat the procedure to select **AcuraLink Subscription Status**.

Item	Information
A-link	You can check the signal strength.
Current Contract	The AcuraLink subscription number and subscription level is displayed.
Service	You can confirm the type of service.
Subscription	You can confirm the expiration date.
Status	The following message can be displayed: • **Check Antenna**: There is a problem with the AcuraLink antenna. Contact a dealer. • **No Signal**: Signal is not received. • **No data**: The signal is received, but some error has occurred in the system. • **OK**: The system is receiving the signal or traffic data*.

* Not available on all models

This page intentionally left blank.



Driving

This chapter discusses driving and refueling.

Before Driving 420
Maximum Load Limit 423
Towing a Trailer 425
When Driving
Starting the Engine 426
Dual Clutch Transmission 432
Shifting 433
Vehicle Stability Assist® (VSA®), aka Electronic Stability Control (ESC), System 437
Blind spot information System* 439
Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) .. 442
Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) - Required Federal Explanation 444
AcuraWatch™ 446
Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™) 449
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) 459
Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) 474
Road Departure Mitigation (RDM) System ... 483
Front Sensor Camera 488
Radar Sensor 490
Braking
Brake System 491
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) 493
Parking Your Vehicle
When Stopped 495
Cross Traffic Monitor* 497
Multi-View Rear Camera 500
Refueling
Fuel Information 502
How to Refuel 503
Fuel Economy and CO_2 Emissions 504
Improving Fuel Economy and Reducing CO_2 Emissions 504

* Not available on all models

Driving Preparation

Check the following items before you start driving.

■ Exterior Checks

- Make sure there are no obstructions on the windows, door mirrors, exterior lights, or other parts of the vehicle.
  ▶ Remove any frost, snow, or ice.
  ▶ Remove any snow on the roof, as this can slip down and obstruct your field of vision while driving. If frozen solid, remove ice once it has softened.
  ▶ When removing ice from around the wheels, be sure not to damage the wheel or wheel components.
- Make sure the hood is securely closed.
  ▶ If the hood opens while driving, your front view will be blocked.
- Make sure the tires are in good condition.
  ▶ Check air pressures, and check for damage and excessive wear.
  ➡ **Checking and Maintaining Tires** P. 532
- Make sure there are no people or objects behind or around the vehicle.
  ▶ There are blind spots from the inside.

Exterior Checks

NOTICE

When doors are frozen shut, use warm water around the door edges to melt any ice. Do not try to force them open, as this can damage the rubber trim around the doors. When done, wipe dry to avoid further freezing.

Do not pour warm water into the key cylinder. You will be unable to insert the key if the water freezes in the hole.

Heat from the engine and exhaust can ignite flammable materials left under the hood, causing a fire. If you've parked your vehicle for an extended period, inspect and remove any debris that may have collected, such as dried grass and leaves that have fallen or have been carried in for use as a nest by a small animal. Also check under the hood for leftover flammable materials after you or someone else has performed maintenance on your vehicle.

Interior Checks

- Store or secure all items on board properly.
  ▶ Carrying too much cargo, or improperly storing it, can affect your vehicle's handling, stability, stopping distance, and tires, and make it unsafe.
  ➡ **Maximum Load Limit** P. 423
- Do not pile items higher than the seat height.
  ▶ They can block your view and may be thrown forward in the event of sudden braking.
- Do not place anything in the front seat footwells. Make sure to secure the floor mat.
  ▶ An object or unsecured floor mat can interfere with your brake and accelerator pedal operation while driving.
- If you have any animals on board, do not let them move around in the vehicle.
  ▶ They may interfere with driving and a crash could occur.
- Securely close and lock all doors and the trunk.
  ➡ **Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside** P. 120
- Adjust your seating position properly.
  ▶ Adjust the head restraint, too.
  ➡ **Adjusting the Seats** P. 154
  ➡ **Adjusting the Front and Rear Outer Head Restraint Positions** P. 158
- Adjust the mirrors and steering wheel properly.
  ▶ Adjust them while sitting in the proper driving position.
  ➡ **Adjusting the Mirrors** P. 152
  ➡ **Adjusting the Steering Wheel** P. 149

Interior Checks

The headlight aim is set by the factory, and does not need to be adjusted. However, if you regularly carry heavy items in the trunk have the aiming readjusted at a dealer or by a qualified technician.

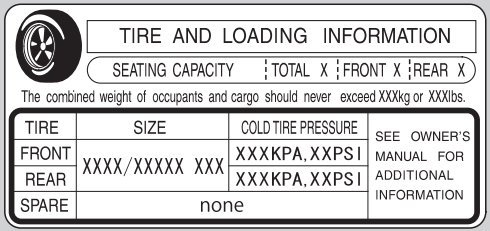
Continued

- Be sure items placed on the floor behind the front seats cannot roll under the seats.
  ▶ They can interfere with the driver's ability to operate the pedals, the operation of the seats, or the operation of the sensors under the seats.
- Everyone in the vehicle must fasten their seat belt.
  ➡ **Fastening a Seat Belt** P. 35
- Make sure that the indicators in the instrument panel come on when you start the vehicle, and go off soon after.
  ▶ Always have a dealer check the vehicle if a problem is indicated.
  ➡ **Indicators** P. 68

Maximum Load Limit

The maximum load for your vehicle is 850 lbs (385 kg). See the Tire and Loading Information label attached to the driver's doorjamb.

Label Example


TIRE AND LOADING INFORMATION

SEATING CAPACITY | TOTAL X | FRONT X | REAR X

The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXXkg or XXXlbs.

TIRE	SIZE	COLD TIRE PRESSURE	SEE OWNER'S MANUAL FOR ADDITIONAL INFORMATION
FRONT	XXXX/XXXXX XXX	XXXKPA, XXPSI	
REAR		XXXKPA, XXPSI	
SPARE	none		

This figure includes the total weight of all occupants, cargo, and accessories, and the tongue load if you are towing a trailer.

Steps for Determining Correct Load Limit -

(1) Locate the statement "The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs." on your vehicle's placard.

(2) Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.

(3) Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lbs.

(4) The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the "XXX" amount equals 1,400 lbs. and there will be five 150 lb. passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs.
(1,400 - 750 (5 x 150) = 650 lbs.)

Continued

Maximum Load Limit

⚠WARNING

Overloading or improper loading can affect handling and stability and cause a crash in which you can be hurt or killed.

Follow all load limits and other loading guidelines in this manual.

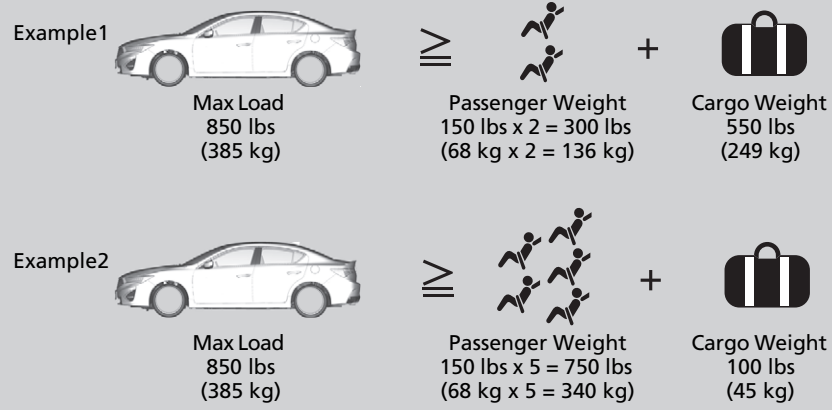
Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR):
The maximum allowable weight of the vehicle, all occupants, all accessories, and all cargo.
Specifications P. 596

Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR):
The maximum allowable weight of the vehicle axle.
Specifications P. 596

(5) Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in step 4.
(6) If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

In addition, the total weight of the vehicle, all occupants, accessories, cargo, and trailer tongue load must not exceed the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) or the Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR). Both are on a label on the driver's doorjamb.

Load Limits Example



Maximum Load Limit

Towing a Trailer:
See Towing a Trailer to determine whether your vehicle is designed to tow a trailer.
Towing a Trailer P. 425

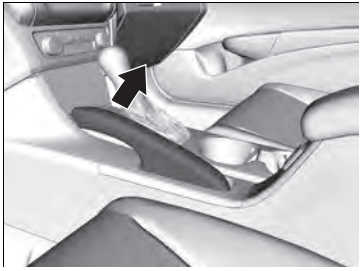
Your vehicle is not designed to tow a trailer. Attempting to do so can void your warranties.

Towing Your Vehicle

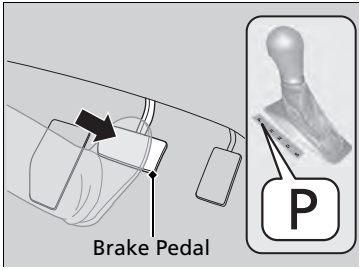
Your vehicle is not designed to be towed behind a motor home. If your vehicle needs to be towed in an emergency, refer to the emergency towing information.

Emergency Towing P. 593

Starting the Engine



1. Make sure the parking brake is applied.



2. Check that the transmission is in P, then depress the brake pedal.

▶ Although it is possible to start the vehicle in N, it is safer to start it in P.

Starting the Engine

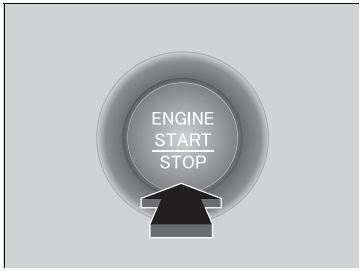
Keep your foot firmly on the brake pedal when starting the engine.

The engine is harder to start in cold weather and in thinner air found at altitudes above 8,000 feet (2,400 meters).

When starting the engine in cold weather, turn off all electrical accessories such as the lights, climate control system, and rear defogger in order to reduce battery drain.

If you live in a region where winter is extremely cold, an engine block heater will improve starting and warming of the engine. Consult a dealer for details.

If the exhaust system sounds abnormal or you can smell exhaust gas inside the vehicle, have your vehicle checked by a dealer. There may be a problem with the engine or exhaust system.



3. Press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button without depressing the accelerator pedal.

■ Stopping the Engine

You can turn the engine off when the vehicle is completely stopped.

1. Put the transmission into P.

2. Press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.

Starting the Engine

Bring the keyless access remote close to the **ENGINE START/STOP** button if the battery in the keyless access remote is weak.

➡ **If the Keyless Access Remote Battery is Weak** P. 578

The engine may not start if the keyless access remote is subjected to strong radio waves.

Do not hold the **ENGINE START/STOP** button to start the engine.
If the engine does not start, wait at least 30 seconds before starting the engine again.

The immobilizer system protects your vehicle from theft.
If an improperly coded device is used, the engine's fuel system is disabled.

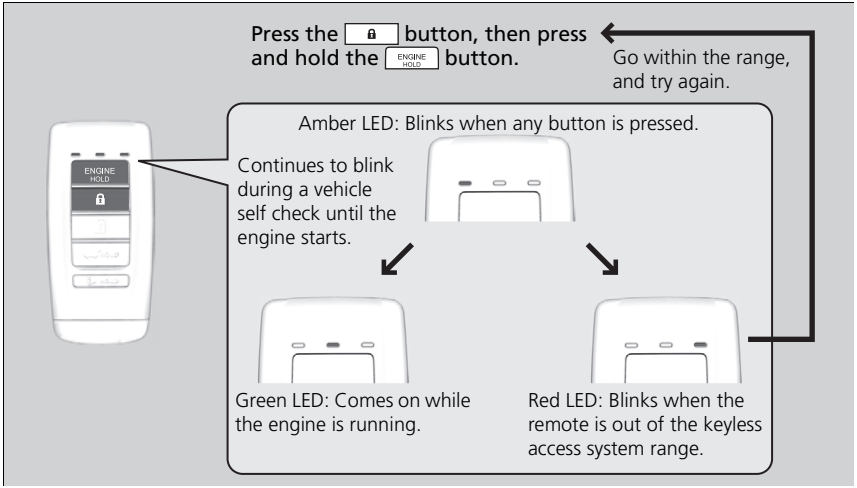
➡ **Immobilizer System** P. 128

Continued

■ Remote Engine Start*

You can remotely start the engine using the two-way keyless access remote from extended distances.

■ To start the engine



The engine runs for up to 10 minutes without you starting the vehicle.
To extend the run time for another 10 minutes during the first run, press the button, then press and hold the ENGINE HOLD button.

▶ The amber LED blinks, then the green LED comes back on if a 10-minute extension request was transmitted successfully.

After pressing the button, wait for the green LED to blink. This indicates that the all the doors and the trunk are locked.

* Not available on all models

Remote Engine Start*

⚠WARNING

Carbon monoxide gas is toxic and can rapidly accumulate in closed or even partly enclosed areas.

Breathing it can cause unconsciousness and even kill you.

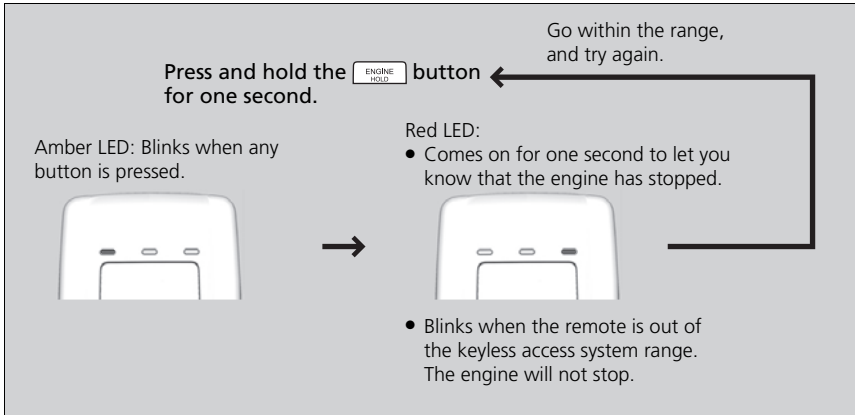
Never use the remote engine starter with the vehicle parked in a garage or other areas with limited ventilation.

The remote engine start may violate local laws. Before using the remote engine start, check your local laws.

If there are buildings and obstacles between your vehicle and the remote, the range will be reduced. This distance may vary by external electrical interference.
The engine may not start by the remote engine start if:

- You have disabled a remote engine start setting using the multi-information display.
- The power mode is not in VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).
- The transmission is in a position other than P.
- The hood is open, or any door or the trunk is unlocked.

■ To stop the engine



Remote Engine Start*

- You have already used the remote twice to start the engine.
- Another registered keyless access remote is in the vehicle.
- There is any antenna failure.
- The door is unlocked with the built-in key.
- The engine oil pressure is low.
- The engine coolant temperature is extremely high.
- The telematics* unit malfunctions.
- The security system alarm is not set.

Before starting the engine, make sure to check the door lock status using the remote. When you press the button, wait for the green LED to blink. If the red LED turns on, the doors and trunk did not lock, and the engine does not start.

While the engine is running, the vehicle will automatically precondition inside the vehicle.
When it is warm outside:
- The climate control system is activated in recirculation mode.

When it is cold outside:
- The defroster is activated at a moderately warm temperature.
- The rear defogger and door mirror heaters are activated.
- The seat heater is activated.

Seat Heaters P. 170

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Starting to Drive

When the engine was started using the two-way keyless access remote*

1. Depress the brake pedal and press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button simultaneously.

When the engine was started in any case

2. Keeping your right foot on the brake pedal, release the parking brake. Check that the parking brake indicator has gone off.
3. Put the transmission into D. Select R when reversing.
4. Gradually release the brake pedal and gently depress the accelerator pedal to pull away.

■ Hill Start Assist System

Hill start assist keeps the brake engaged briefly to help prevent the vehicle from rolling on inclines as you move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator.

Put the transmission into D or S when facing uphill, or R when facing downhill, then release the brake pedal.

Hill Start Assist System

Hill start assist may not prevent the vehicle from rolling downhill on a very steep or slippery slope, and will not operate on small inclines.

Hill start assist will operate even when VSA® is switched off.

Hill start assist is not a replacement for the parking brake.

* Not available on all models

Precautions While Driving

In Rain

Avoid driving in deep water and on flooded roads. This can damage the engine or driveline, or cause electrical component failure.

Other Precautions

If there is a strong impact with something under the vehicle, stop in a safe location. Check the underside of the vehicle for damage or any fluid leaks.

Precautions While Driving

NOTICE

Do not operate the shift lever while pressing the accelerator pedal. You could damage the transmission.

NOTICE

If you repeatedly turn the steering wheel at an extremely low speed, or hold the steering wheel in the full left or right position for a while, the electric power steering (EPS) system heats up. The system goes into a protective mode, and limits its performance. The steering wheel becomes harder and harder to operate. Once the system cools down, the EPS system is restored.
Repeated operation under these conditions can eventually damage the system.

If the power mode is set to ACCESSORY while driving, the engine will shut down and all steering and brake power assist functions will stop, making it difficult to control the vehicle.

Do not put the shift lever in N, as you will lose engine braking (and acceleration) performance.

During the first 600 miles (1,000 km) of operation, avoid sudden acceleration or full throttle operation so as not to damage the engine or powertrain.

Avoid hard braking for the first 200 miles (300 km). You should also follow this when the brake pads are replaced.

Dual Clutch Transmission

■ Creeping

The engine runs at a higher idle speed and creeping increases.
Keep the brake pedal firmly depressed when stopped.

■ Kickdown

Quickly depressing the accelerator pedal while driving uphill may cause the transmission to drop to a lower gear, unexpectedly increasing vehicle speed. Depress the accelerator pedal carefully, especially on slippery roads and curves.

Precautions While Driving

NOTICE

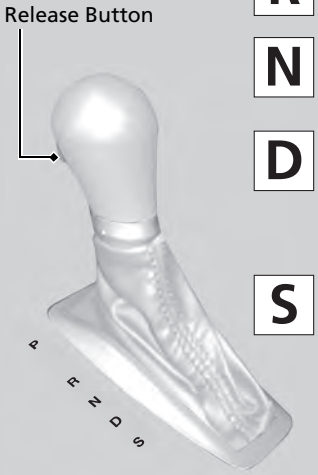
The following can damage the under spoiler:

- Parking the vehicle by a parking block
- Parallel parking along the road shoulder
- Driving towards the bottom of a hill
- Driving up or down to a different surface level (such as a road shoulder)
- Driving on a rutted or bumpy road
- Driving on a road with potholes.

Shifting

Change the shift position in accordance with your driving needs.

■ Shift lever positions



P **Park**
Used when parking, before turning off or starting the engine

R **Reverse**
Used when reversing

N **Neutral**
Transmission is not locked

D **Drive**
Used:
- For normal driving (gears change between 1st and 8th automatically)
- When temporarily driving in the sequential mode

S **Drive (S)**
Used for:
- Automatically changing gears between 1st and 7th (7th gear is used only at high speed)
- Driving in the sequential mode

Shift lever positions

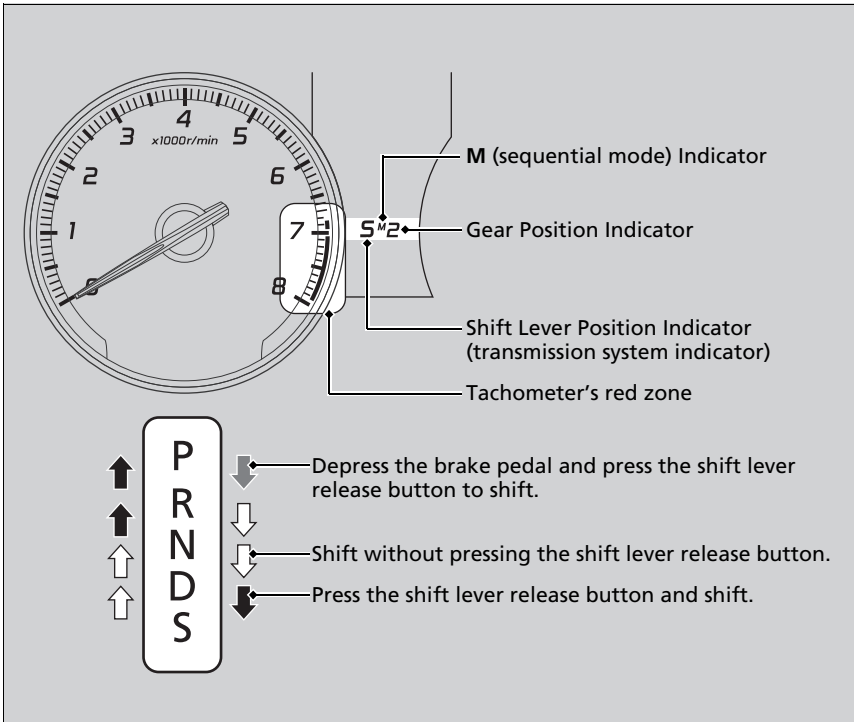
You cannot change the power mode from ON to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) unless the shift lever is in P.

The vehicle may move very slightly even in N while the engine is cold.
Depress the brake pedal firmly and, when necessary, apply the parking brake.

When shifting gears in extremely low temperatures (-22°F/-30°C), there may be a short delay before the shift is indicated in the display. Always confirm you are in the correct gear before driving.

Continued

■ Shift Lever Operation



Shifting

NOTICE

When you change the shift lever from D to R and vice versa, come to a complete stop and keep the brake pedal depressed.
Operating the shift lever before the vehicle has come to a complete standstill can damage the transmission.

Use the shift lever position indicator to check the lever position before pulling away.

Whichever position the shift lever is in when driving, a blinking transmission system indicator indicates a transmission problem.
Avoid sudden acceleration and have the transmission checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

The fuel supply may be cut off if you drive at engine speeds in or over the tachometer's red zone (engine speed limit). If this happens, you may experience a slight jolt.

When the engine speed is increased while the shift lever is in N, P or R, the fuel supply may be cut off even without the engine speed entering the tachometer's red zone.

It may not be possible to operate the shift lever if the brake pedal is applied while the shift lever release button is held down.
Depress the brake pedal first.

■ Sequential Mode

Use the paddle shifters to change between 1st and 8th gears without releasing your hands from the steering wheel. The transmission will switch to the sequential mode.

■ When the transmission is in [D]:
The vehicle will go into the sequential mode momentarily, and the gear position indicator will come on.
Once you start traveling at a constant speed, the sequential mode will automatically switch off, and the gear position indicator will go off.

Hold the [+] paddle shifter for two seconds to return to normal drive.

■ When the transmission is in [S]:
The vehicle will go into the sequential mode, and the **M** (sequential mode) indicator and gear position indicator will come on. At speeds of 2 mph (4 km/h) or less, the vehicle automatically shifts down into 1st gear. It will not automatically shift up, even if vehicle speed increases.
If you are in 1st through 6th gears and do not operate the paddle shifters as engine speed increases approaches the tachometer red zone, the transmission automatically shifts up to the next gear.
When switching out of the sequential mode, move the shift lever from [S] to [D].
When the sequential mode is canceled, the **M** indicator and gear position indicator will turn off.

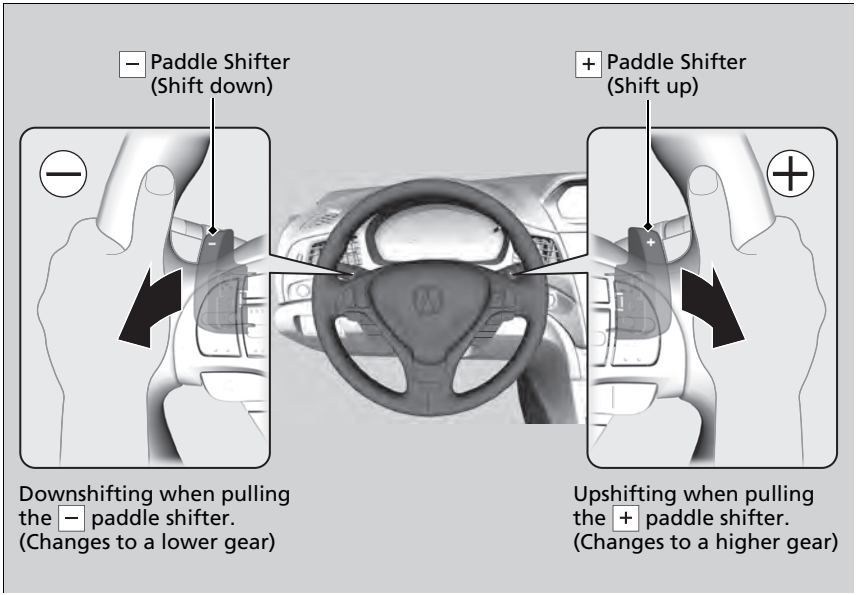
Continued

■ Second gear lock mode

If you pull the [+] paddle shifter while stopped or driving at 6 mph (10 km/h) or less, the gear position will be locked in 2nd gear. This makes it easier to pull away on slippery surfaces such as snow covered roads.

To cancel the 2nd gear lock mode, pull the [−] paddle shifter, or move the shift lever from [S] to [D].

■ Sequential Mode Operation



Sequential Mode Operation

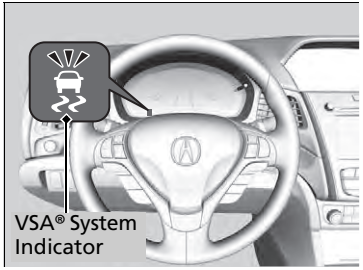
Each paddle shift operation makes a single gear change.
To change gears continuously, release the paddle shifter before pulling it again for the next gear.

If the gear position indicator blinks when you try to shift up or down, this means your vehicle speed is not in its allowable gear range.
Slightly accelerate to shift up and decelerate to shift down while the indicator is blinking.

Vehicle Stability Assist® (VSA®), aka Electronic Stability Control (ESC), System

VSA® helps to stabilize the vehicle during cornering if the vehicle turns more or less than what was intended. It also assists in maintaining traction on slippery surfaces. It does so by regulating engine output and selectively applying the brakes.

■ VSA® Operation



When VSA® activates, you may notice that the engine does not respond to the accelerator. You may also notice some noise from the hydraulic system. You will also see the indicator blink.

Vehicle Stability Assist® (VSA®), aka Electronic Stability Control (ESC), System

The VSA® may not function properly if tire type and size are mixed. Make sure to use the same size and type of tire, and the air pressures as specified.

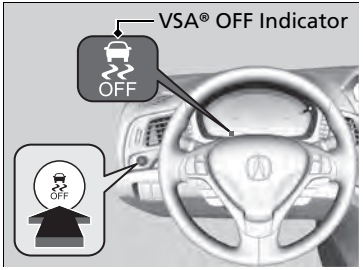
When the VSA® system indicator comes on and stays on while driving, there may be a problem with the system. While this may not interfere with normal driving, have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

VSA® cannot enhance stability in all driving situations and does not control the entire braking system. You still need to drive and corner at speeds appropriate for the conditions and always leave a sufficient margin of safety.

The main function of the VSA® system is generally known as Electronic Stability Control (ESC). The system also includes a traction control function.

Continued

■ VSA® On and Off



This button is on the driver side control panel. To partially disable VSA® functionality/ features, press and hold it until you hear a beep.

Your vehicle will have normal braking and cornering ability, but traction control function will be less effective.

To restore VSA® functionality/features, press the (VSA® OFF) button until you hear a beep.

VSA® is turned on every time you start the engine, even if you turned it off the last time you drove the vehicle.

Vehicle Stability Assist® (VSA®), aka Electronic Stability Control (ESC), System

In certain unusual conditions when your vehicle gets stuck in shallow mud or fresh snow, it may be easier to free it with the VSA® temporarily switched off.

When the button is pressed, the traction control function becomes less effective. This allows for the wheels to spin more freely at low speed. You should only attempt to free your vehicle with the VSA® off if you are not able to free it when the VSA® is on.

Immediately after freeing your vehicle, be sure to switch VSA® on again. We do not recommend driving your vehicle with the VSA® system switched off.

You may hear a motor sound coming from the engine compartment while system checks are being performed immediately after starting the engine or while driving. This is normal.

Blind spot information System*

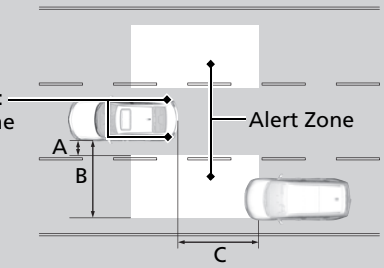
Is designed to detect vehicles in specified alert zones adjacent to your vehicle, particularly in harder to see areas commonly known as "blind spots."

When the system detects vehicles approaching from behind in adjacent lanes, the appropriate indicator comes on for a few seconds, providing assistance when you change lanes.

■ How the system works

- The transmission is in D or S.
- Your vehicle speed is between 20 mph (32 km/h) and 100 mph (160 km/h)

Alert zone range
A: Approx. 1.6 ft. (0.5 m)
B: Approx. 9.5 ft. (2.9 m)
C: Approx. 10 ft. (3 m)



▶Blind spot information System*

⚠WARNING

Failure to visually confirm that it is safe to change lanes before doing so may result in a crash and serious injury or death.
Do not rely only on the blind spot information system when changing lanes.

Always look in your mirrors, to either side of your vehicle, and behind you for other vehicles before changing lanes.

Important Safety Reminder
Like all assistance systems, blind spot information system has limitations. Over reliance on blind spot information system may result in a collision.

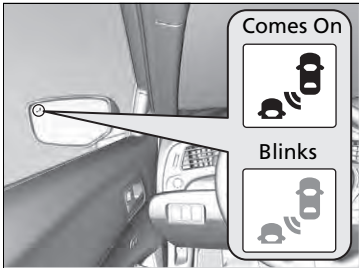
The system is for your convenience only. Even if an object is within the alert zone, the following situations may occur.

- The blind spot information system alert indicator may not come on due to obstruction (splashes, etc.) even without the **Blind Spot Info Not Available** multi-information display appearing.
- The blind spot information system alert indicator may come on even with the message appearing.

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ When the system detects a vehicle



Blind spot information System Alert Indicator: Located on the outside rearview mirror on both sides.

Comes on when:

- A vehicle enters the alert zone from behind to overtake you with a speed difference of no more than 31 mph (50 km/h) from your vehicle.
- You pass a vehicle with a speed difference of no more than 12 mph (20 km/h).

Blinks and a beeper sounds when:

You move the turn signal lever in the direction of the detected vehicle. The beeper sounds three times.

Blind spot information System*

The blind spot information system alert indicator may not come on under the following conditions:

- A vehicle does not stay in the alert zone for more than two seconds.
- A vehicle is parked in a side lane.
- The speed difference between your vehicle and the vehicle you are passing is greater than 6 mph (10 km/h).
- An object not detected by the radar sensors approaches or passes your vehicle.
- A vehicle running in the adjacent lane is a motorcycle or other small vehicle.

You can turn off the audible alert, or all the blind spot information system alert using the information screen or multi-information display.

Customized Features P. 95, 310

The system is not active when the shift lever is in R.

Blind spot information system may be adversely affected when:

- Objects (guard rails, poles, trees, etc,.) are detected.
- An object that does not reflect radio waves well, such as a motorcycle, is in the alert zone.
- Driving on a curved road.
- A vehicle is moving from a far lane to the adjacent lane.
- The system picks up external electrical interference.

 * Not available on all models

Blind spot information System*

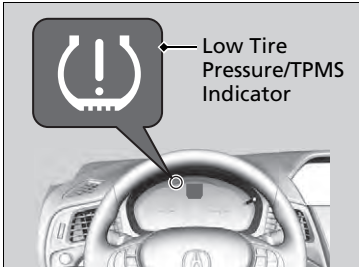
- The rear bumper or the sensors have been improperly repaired or the rear bumper has been deformed.
- The orientation of the sensors has been changed.
- In bad weather (Heavy rain, snow, and fog).

For a proper blind spot information system operation:

- Always keep the rear bumper corner area clean.
- Do not cover the rear bumper corner area with labels or stickers of any kind.
- Take your vehicle to a dealer if you need the rear bumper corner area or the radar sensors to be repaired, or the rear bumper corner area is strongly impacted.

* Not available on all models

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)



Monitors the tire pressure while you are driving. If your vehicle's tire pressure becomes significantly low, the low tire pressure/TPMS indicator comes on and a message appears on the multi-information display.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

Conditions such as low ambient temperature and altitude change directly affect tire pressure and can trigger the low tire pressure/TPMS indicator to come on.

If the Low Tire Pressure/TPMS Indicator Comes On or Blinks P. 589

Tire pressure checked and inflated in:

- Warm weather can become under-inflated in colder weather.
- Cold weather can become over-inflated in warmer weather.

The low tire pressure/TPMS indicator will not come on as a result of over inflation.

Tire Pressure Monitor



To select the tire pressure monitor, set the power mode to ON, and press the ▲/▼ (information) button until you see the tire pressure screen.

The pressure for each tire is displayed in psi (U.S.) or kPa (Canada).



Tire Pressures Low is displayed when a tire has significantly low pressure. The specific tire is displayed on the screen.

Tire Pressure Monitor

The pressure displayed on the multi-information display can be slightly different from the actual pressure as measured by a gauge. If there is a significant difference between the two values, or if the low tire pressure/TPMS indicator and the message on the multi-information display do not go off after you have inflated the tire to the specified pressure, have the system checked by a dealer.

Tire Pressure Monitor Problem may appear if you drive with the compact spare tire*, or there is a problem with the TPMS.

* Not available on all models

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) - Required Federal Explanation

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label.

(If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale



when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated.

Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure.

Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended.

TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly.

Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

AcuraWatch™ is a driver support system which employs the use of two distinctly different kinds of sensors: a radar sensor located behind the emblem and a front sensor camera mounted to the interior side of the windshield, behind the rearview mirror.

AcuraWatch™ has the following functions.

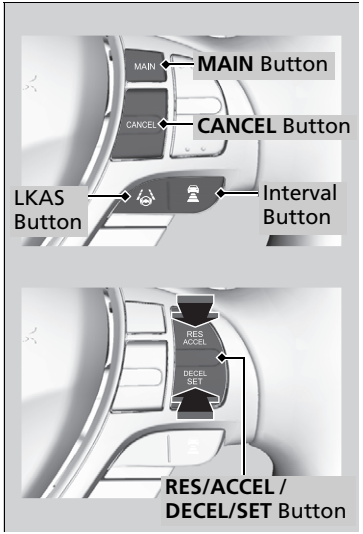
■ The functions which do not require switch operations to activate

- Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™) ➡ P. 449
- Road Departure Mitigation (RDM) System ➡ P. 483

■ The functions which require switch operations to activate

- Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) ➡ P. 459
- Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) ➡ P. 474

■ Operation Switches for the ACC/LKAS



■ MAIN Button

Press to activate standby mode for ACC and LKAS. Or press to cancel these systems.

■ LKAS Button

Press to activate or cancel the LKAS.

■ RES/ACCEL / DECEL/SET Button

Press **RES/ACCEL** to resume the ACC or increase the vehicle speed.
Press **DECEL/SET** to set the ACC or decrease the vehicle speed.

■ Interval Button

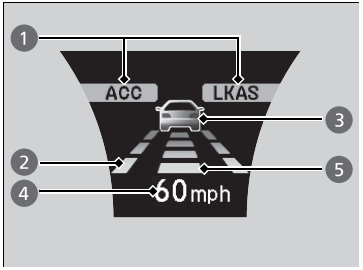
Press the (interval) button to change the ACC following-interval.

■ CANCEL Button

Press to cancel ACC.

Continued

■ Multi-Information Display Content



You can see the current state of ACC and LKAS.

❶ Indicates that ACC and LKAS are ready to be activated.

❷ Indicates that LKAS is activated and whether or not traffic lane lines are detected.

❸ Indicates whether or not a vehicle is detected ahead.

❹ Shows the set vehicle speed.

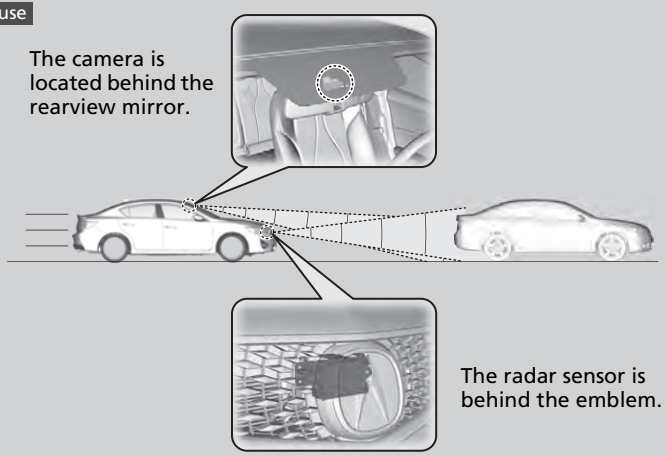
❺ Shows the set vehicle interval.

Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™)

Can assist you when there is a possibility of your vehicle colliding with a vehicle or a pedestrian detected in front of yours. The CMBS™ is designed to alert you when a potential collision is determined, as well as to reduce your vehicle speed to help minimize collision severity when a collision is deemed unavoidable.

■ How the system works

When to use



The system starts monitoring the roadway ahead when your vehicle speed is about 3 mph (5 km/h) and there is a vehicle in front of you.

The CMBS™ activates when:
- The speed difference between your vehicle and a vehicle or pedestrian detected in front of you becomes about 3 mph (5 km/h) and over with a chance of a collision.
- Your vehicle speed is about 62 mph (100 km/h) or less and there is a chance of a collision with an oncoming detected vehicle or a pedestrian in front of you.

Continued

Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™)

Important Safety Reminder

The CMBS™ is designed to reduce the severity of an unavoidable collision. It does not prevent a collision nor stop the vehicle automatically. It is still your responsibility to operate the brake pedal and steering wheel appropriately according to the driving conditions.

The CMBS™ may not activate or may not detect a vehicle in front of your vehicle under certain conditions:

➡ **CMBS™ Conditions and Limitations** P. 453

You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.

➡ **Front Sensor Camera** P. 488

For directions on the proper handling of the radar sensor, refer to the following page.

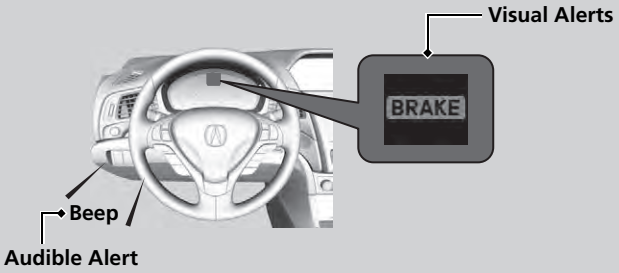
➡ **Radar Sensor** P. 490

When the CMBS™ activates, it may automatically apply the brake. It will be canceled when your vehicle stops or a potential collision is not determined.

■ When the system activates

The system provides visual and audible alerts of a possible collision, and stops if the collision is avoided.

▶ Take appropriate action to prevent a collision (apply the brakes, change lanes, etc.)



At system's earliest collision alert stage, you can change the distance (**Long**/**Normal**/**Short**) between vehicles at which alerts will come on through multi-information display or information screen setting options.

List of customizable options P. 98, 316

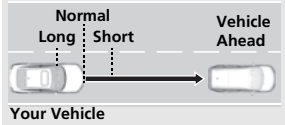
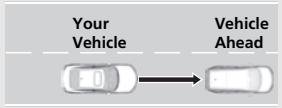
When the system activates

The camera in the CMBS™ is also designed to detect pedestrians.
However, this pedestrian detection feature may not activate or may not detect a pedestrian in front of your vehicle under certain conditions.
Refer to the ones indicating the pedestrian detection limitations from the list.

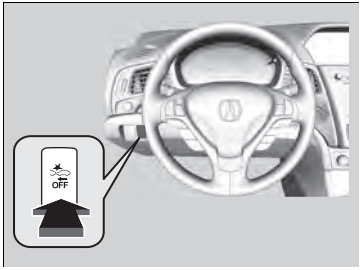
CMBS™ Conditions and Limitations P. 453

■ Collision Alert Stages

The system has three alert stages for a possible collision. However, depending on circumstances, the CMBS™ may not go through all of the stages before initiating the last stage.

Distance between vehicles		CMBS™		
		The sensors detect a vehicle	Audible & Visual WARNINGS	Braking
Stage one		There is a risk of a collision with the vehicle ahead of you.	When in **Long**, visual and audible alerts come on at a longer distance from a vehicle ahead than in **Normal** setting, and in **Short**, at a shorter distance than in **Normal**.	—
Stage two		The risk of a collision has increased, time to respond is reduced.	Visual and audible alerts.	Lightly applied
Stage three		The CMBS™ determines that a collision is unavoidable.		Forcefully applied

■ CMBS™ On and Off



Press and hold the button until the beeper sounds to switch the system on or off.

When the CMBS™ is off:

- The CMBS™ indicator in the instrument panel comes on.
- A message on the multi-information display reminds you that the system is off.

The CMBS™ is turned on every time you start the engine, even if you turned it off the last time you drove the vehicle.

Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™)

The CMBS™ may automatically shut off, and the CMBS™ indicator will come and stay on under certain conditions:

CMBS™ Conditions and Limitations P. 453

■ CMBS™ Conditions and Limitations

The system may automatically shut off and the CMBS™ indicator will come on under certain conditions. Some examples of these conditions are listed below. Other conditions may reduce some of the CMBS™ functions.

➡ **Front Sensor Camera** P. 488

■ Environmental conditions

- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as an entrance or exit of a tunnel.
- There is little contrast between objects and the background.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.
- Driving in the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Roadway objects or structures are misinterpreted as vehicles and pedestrians.
- Reflections on the interior of the windshield.
- Driving at night or in a dark condition such as a tunnel.

■ Roadway conditions

- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway (obscured lane marking, vehicle tracks, reflected lights, road spray, high contrast).
- Driving on curvy, winding, or undulating roads.
- The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.

CMBS™ Conditions and Limitations

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if you find any unusual behavior of the system (e.g., the warning message appears too frequently).

Continued

■ **Vehicle conditions**

- Headlight lenses are dirty or the headlights are not properly adjusted.
- The outside of the windshield is blocked by dirt, mud, leaves, wet snow, etc.
- The inside of the windshield is fogged.
- An abnormal tire or wheel condition (wrong sized, varied size or construction, improperly inflated, compact spare tire*, etc.).
- When tire chains are installed.
- The vehicle is tilted due to a heavy load or suspension modifications.
- The camera temperature gets too high.
- Driving with the parking brake applied.
- When the radar sensor behind the emblem gets dirty.

 * Not available on all models

■ **Detection limitations**

- A vehicle or pedestrian suddenly crosses in front of you.
- The distance between your vehicle and the vehicle or pedestrian ahead of you is too short.
- A vehicle cuts in front of you at a slow speed, and it brakes suddenly.
- When you accelerate rapidly and approach the vehicle or pedestrian ahead of you at high speed.
- The vehicle ahead of you is a motorcycle, bicycle, mobility scooter or other small vehicle.
- When there are animals in front of your vehicle.
- When you drive on a curved, winding or undulating road that makes it difficult for the sensor to properly detect a vehicle in front of you.
- The speed difference between your vehicle and a vehicle or pedestrian in front of you is significantly large.
- An oncoming vehicle suddenly comes in front of you.
- Another vehicle suddenly comes in front of you at an intersection, etc.
- Your vehicle abruptly crosses over in front of an oncoming vehicle.
- When driving through a narrow iron bridge.
- When the lead vehicle suddenly slows down.

Continued

Limitations applicable to pedestrian detection only

- When there is a group of people in front of your vehicle walking together side by side.
- Surrounding conditions or belongings of the pedestrian alter the pedestrian's shape, preventing the system from recognizing that the person is a pedestrian.
- When the pedestrian is shorter than about 3.3 feet (1 meter) or taller than about 6.6 feet (2 meter) in height.
- When a pedestrian blends in with the background.
- When a pedestrian is bent over or squatting, or when their hands are raised or they are running.
- When several pedestrians are walking ahead in a group.
- When the camera cannot correctly identify that a pedestrian is present due to an unusual shape (holding luggage, body position, size).

■ Automatic shutoff

The CMBS™ may automatically shut itself off and the CMBS™ indicator comes and stays on when:

- The temperature inside the system is high.
- You drive off-road or on a mountain road, or curved and winding road for an extended period.
- An abnormal tire condition is detected (wrong tire size, flat tire, etc.).
- The camera behind the rearview mirror, or the area around the camera, including the windshield, gets dirty.

Once the conditions that caused the CMBS™ to shut off improve or are addressed (e.g., cleaning), the system comes back on.

With Little Chance of a Collision

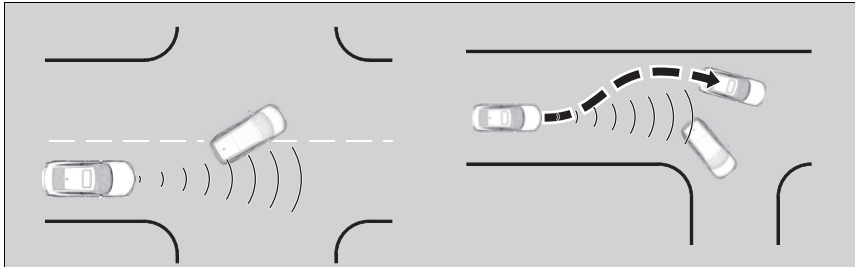
The CMBS™ may activate even when you are aware of a vehicle ahead of you, or when there is no vehicle ahead. Some examples of this are:

When Passing

Your vehicle approaches another vehicle ahead of you and you change lanes to pass.

At an intersection

Your vehicle approaches or passes another vehicle that is making a left or right turn.



CMBS™ Conditions and Limitations

For the CMBS™ to work properly:

Always keep the radar sensor cover clean.

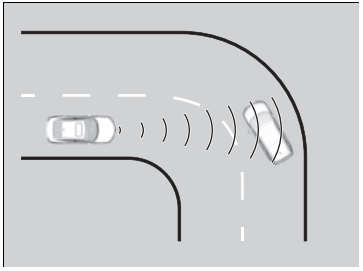
Never use chemical solvents or polishing powder for cleaning the sensor cover. Clean it with water or a mild detergent.

Do not put a sticker on the radar sensor cover or replace the radar sensor cover.

Continued

■ **On a curve**

When driving through curves, your vehicle comes to a point where an oncoming vehicle is right in front of you.

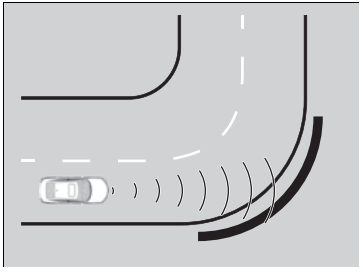


■ **Through a low bridge at high speed**

You drive under a low or narrow bridge at high speed.

■ **Speed bumps, road work sites, train tracks, roadside objects, etc.**

You drive over speed bumps, steel road plates, etc., or your vehicle approaches train tracks or roadside objects [such as a traffic sign and guard rail] on a curve or, when parking, stationary vehicles and walls.

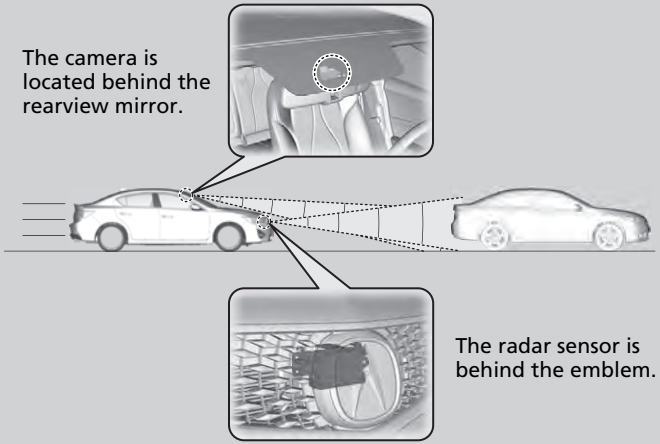


Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

Helps maintain a constant vehicle speed and a set following-interval behind a vehicle detected ahead of yours, without you having to keep your foot on the brake or the accelerator.

When ACC slows your vehicle by applying the brakes, your vehicle's brake lights will illuminate.

When to use



■ Vehicle speed for adaptive cruise control: Desired speed in a range above roughly 25 mph (40 km/h) ~
■ Shift positions for ACC: In D or S.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

⚠WARNING

Improper use of ACC can lead to a crash.

Use ACC only when driving on expressways or freeways and in good weather conditions.

⚠WARNING

ACC has limited braking capability.

When your vehicle speed drops below 22 mph (35 km/h), ACC will automatically cancel and no longer will apply your vehicle's brakes.

Always be prepared to apply the brake pedal when conditions require.

Important Reminder

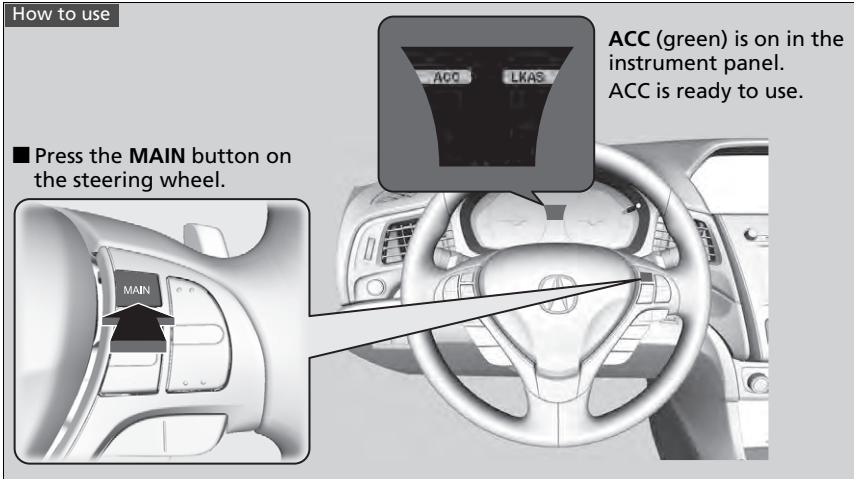
As with any system, there are limits to ACC. Use the brake pedal whenever necessary, and always keep a safe interval between your vehicle and other vehicles.

For directions on the proper handling of the radar sensor, refer to the following page.

➡ **Radar Sensor** P. 490

Continued

■ How to activate the system



Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.

➡ **Front Sensor Camera** P. 488

When the **MAIN** button is pressed, both ACC and the Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) are either turned on or off.

ACC may not work properly under certain conditions.

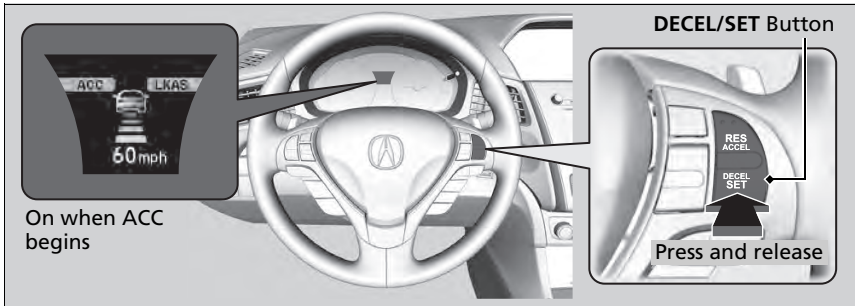
➡ **ACC Conditions and Limitations** P. 464

When not using ACC: Turn off adaptive cruise by pressing the **MAIN** button. This also will turn off the Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS).

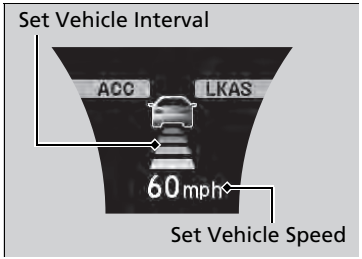
Do not use ACC under the following conditions:

- On roads with heavy traffic or while driving in continuous stop and go traffic.
- On roads with sharp turns.
- On roads with steep downhill sections, as the set vehicle speed can be exceeded by coasting. In such cases, ACC will not apply the brakes to maintain the set speed.
- On roads with toll collection facilities or other objects between lanes of traffic, or in parking areas, or facilities with drive through access.

To Set the Vehicle Speed



Take your foot off the pedal and press the **DECEL/SET** button when you reach the desired speed.



The moment you release the button, the set speed is fixed, and ACC begins.

▶ When ACC starts operating, the vehicle icon, interval bars and set speed appear on the multi-information display.

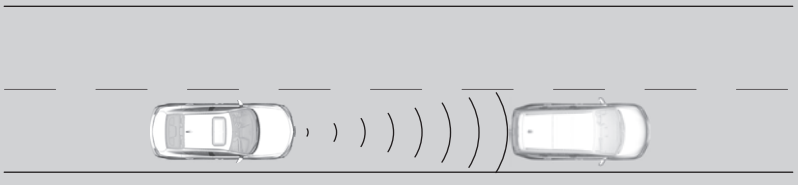
Continued

■ When in Operation

■ There is a vehicle ahead

ACC monitors if a vehicle ahead of you enters the ACC range. If a vehicle is detected doing so, the ACC system maintains or decelerates your vehicle's set speed in order to keep the vehicle's set following-interval from the vehicle ahead.

➡ **To Set or Change Following-interval** P. 468



ACC Range: 394 ft. (120 m)

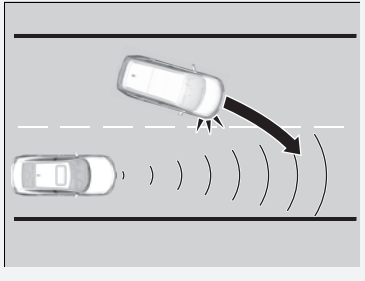


A vehicle icon appears on the multi-information display

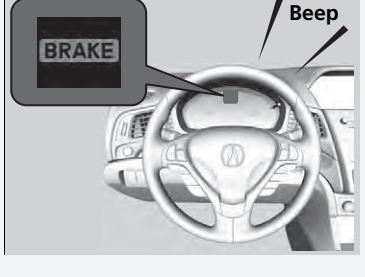
When a vehicle whose speed is slower than your set speed is detected in front of you, your vehicle starts to slow down.

When in Operation

If the vehicle detected ahead of you slows down abruptly, or if another vehicle is detected cutting in front of you, the beeper sounds and a message appears on the multi-information display.



Depress the brake pedal, and keep an appropriate interval from the vehicle ahead.



■ There is no vehicle ahead



A vehicle icon with dotted-line contour appears on the multi-information display

Your vehicle maintains the set speed without having to keep your foot on the brake or accelerator pedal.
If there previously was a vehicle detected ahead that kept your vehicle from traveling at the set speed, ACC accelerates your vehicle to the set speed, and then maintains it.

■ When you depress the accelerator pedal

You can temporarily increase the vehicle speed. In this case, there is no audible or visual alerts even if a vehicle is in the ACC range.
ACC stays on unless you cancel it. Once you release the accelerator pedal, the system resumes the set speed.
There are times when the vehicle speed will decrease when the accelerator pedal is lightly applied.

When in Operation

Even if the interval between your vehicle and the vehicle detected ahead is short, ACC may start accelerating your vehicle under the following circumstances:

- The vehicle ahead of you is going at almost the same speed as, or faster than, your vehicle.
- A vehicle that cuts in front of you is going faster than your vehicle, gradually increasing the interval between the vehicles.

You can also set the system to beep when a vehicle in front of you comes in and goes out of the ACC detecting range. Change the **ACC Forward Vehicle Detect Beep** setting.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 95, 310

Limitations

You may need to use the brake to maintain a safe interval when using ACC. Additionally, ACC may not work properly under certain conditions.

➡ **ACC Conditions and Limitations** P. 464

Continued

■ ACC Conditions and Limitations

The system may automatically shut off and the **ACC** indicator will come on under certain conditions. Some examples of these conditions are listed below. Other conditions may reduce some of the ACC functions.

Front Sensor Camera P. 488

■ Environmental conditions

Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).

■ Roadway conditions

Driving on a snowy or wet roadway (obscured lane marking, vehicle tracks, reflected lights, road spray, high contrast).

■ Vehicle conditions

- The outside of the windshield is blocked by dirt, mud, leaves, wet snow, etc.
- An abnormal tire or wheel condition (wrong sized, varied size or construction, improperly inflated, compact spare tire*, etc.).
- The camera temperature gets too high.
- The parking brake is applied.
- When the front grille is dirty.
- The vehicle is tilted due to a heavy load or suspension modifications.
- When tire chains are installed.

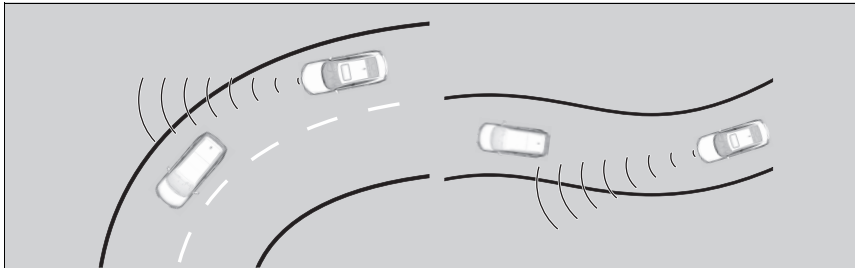
ACC Conditions and Limitations

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if you find any unusual behavior of the system (e.g., the warning message appears too frequently).

* Not available on all models

■ **Detection limitations**

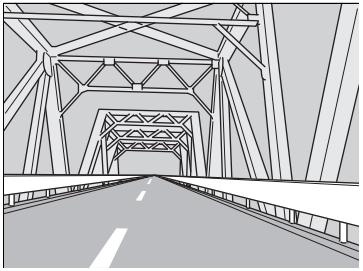
- A vehicle suddenly crosses in front of you.
- The interval between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too short.
- A vehicle cuts in front of you at a slow speed, and it brakes suddenly.
- When you accelerate rapidly and approach the vehicle ahead of you at high speed.
- The vehicle ahead of you is a motorcycle, bicycle, mobility scooter, or other small vehicle.
- When there are animals in front of your vehicle.
- When you drive on a curved or winding or undulating road that makes it difficult for the sensor to properly detect a vehicle in front of you.



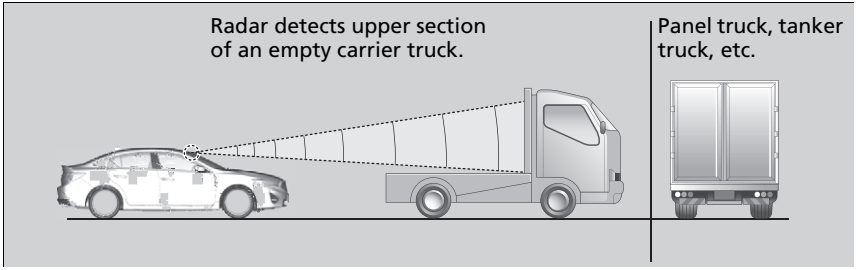
- The speed difference between your vehicle and a vehicle in front of you is significantly large.
- An oncoming vehicle suddenly comes in front of you.
- Your vehicle abruptly crosses over in front of an oncoming vehicle.

Continued

- When driving through a narrow iron bridge.



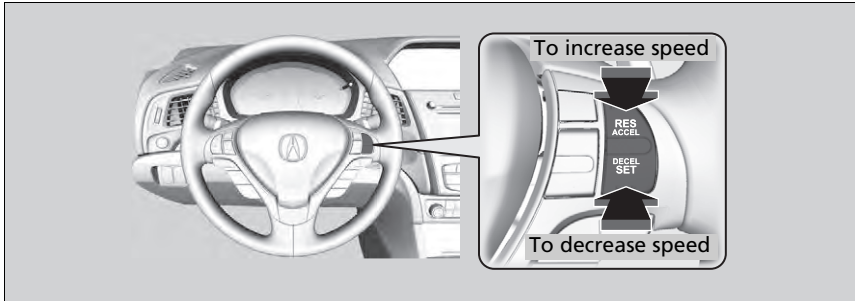
- When the vehicle ahead of you brakes suddenly.
- When the vehicle ahead of you has a unique shape.



- When your vehicle or the vehicle ahead of you is driving on one edge of the lane.

To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

Increase or decrease the vehicle speed using the **RES/ACCEL** or **DECEL/SET** buttons on the steering wheel.



- Each time you press the button, the vehicle speed is increased or decreased by about 1 mph or 1 km/h accordingly.
- If you keep the button pressed, the vehicle speed increases or decreases by about 5 mph or 5 km/h accordingly.

To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

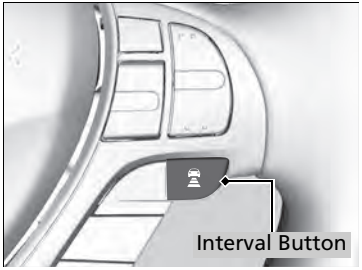
If a vehicle detected ahead is going at a speed slower than your increased set speed, ACC may not accelerate your vehicle. This is to maintain the set interval between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead.

You can switch the displayed set speed measurements on the multi-information display or information screen between mph and km/h.

Customized Features P. 95, 310

Continued

■ To Set or Change Following-interval



Press the (interval) button to change the ACC following-interval.
Each time you press the button, the following-interval (the interval behind a vehicle detected ahead of you) setting cycles through extra long, long, middle, and short following-intervals.

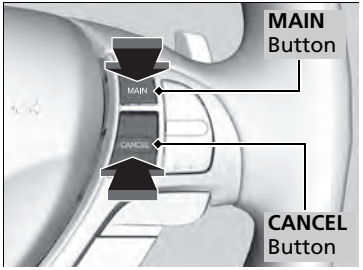
Determine the most appropriate following-interval setting based on your specific driving conditions. Be sure to adhere to any following-interval requirements set by local regulation.

The higher your vehicle's following-speed is, the longer the short, middle, long or extra long following-interval becomes. See the following examples for your reference.

Following-interval		When the Set Speed is:	
		50 mph (80 km/h)	65 mph (104 km/h)
Short		84 feet 26 meters 1.1 sec	102 feet 31 meters 1.1 sec
Middle		111 feet 34 meters 1.5 sec	139 feet 43 meters 1.5 sec
Long		155 feet 48 meters 2.1 sec	202 feet 62 meters 2.1 sec
Extra Long		215 feet 66 meters 3.0 sec	285 feet 87 meters 3.0 sec

Continued

■ To Cancel



To cancel ACC, do any of the following:

- Press the **CANCEL** button.
- Press the **MAIN** button.
  ▶ **ACC** indicator goes off.
- Depress the brake pedal.

To Cancel

Resuming the prior set speed: After you have canceled ACC, you can resume the prior set speed while it is still displayed. Press the **RES/ACCEL** button when driving at a speed of at least 25 mph (40 km/h) or more.

The set speed cannot be set or resumed when ACC has been turned off using the **MAIN** button. Press the **MAIN** button to activate the system, then set the desired speed.

■ Automatic cancellation

The beeper sounds and a message appears on the multi-information display when ACC is automatically canceled. Any of these conditions may cause the ACC to automatically cancel:

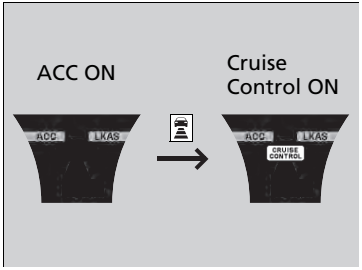
- Bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.)
- When the radar sensor behind the emblem gets dirty.
- The vehicle ahead of you cannot be detected.
- An abnormal tire condition is detected, or the tires are skidding.
- Driving on a mountainous road, or driving off road for extended periods.
- Abrupt steering wheel movement.
- When the ABS, VSA® or CMBS™ is activated.
- When the **ABS** or VSA® system indicator comes on.
- When you manually apply the parking brake.
- When the detected vehicle within the ACC range is too close to your vehicle.
- The camera behind the rearview mirror, or the area around the camera, including the windshield, gets dirty.

Automatic cancellation

Even though ACC has been automatically canceled, you can still resume the prior set speed. Wait until the condition that caused ACC to cancel improves, then press the **RES/ACCEL** button.

Continued

■ To Switch ACC to Cruise Control



Press and hold the (interval) button for one second. **Cruise Mode Selected** appears on the multi-information display for two seconds, and then the mode switches to Cruise.
To switch back to ACC, press and hold the button again for one second. **ACC Mode Selected** appears on the multi-information display for two seconds.

■ When to use

Desired speed in a range above roughly 25 mph (40 km/h) ~.

■ To Set the Vehicle Speed

Take your foot off the pedal and press the **DECEL/SET** button when you reach the desired speed.
The moment you release the **DECEL/SET** button, the set speed is fixed, and cruise control begins. The **CRUISE CONTROL** indicator comes on.

■ To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

Each time you press the **RES/ACCEL** or **DECEL/SET** button, the vehicle speed is increased or decreased by about 1 mph (1.6 km/h).
If you keep the **RES/ACCEL** or **DECEL/SET** button pressed, the vehicle speed increases or decreases until you release it. This speed is then set.

To Switch ACC to Cruise Control

Always be aware which mode you are in. When you are driving in Cruise mode, the system will not assist you to maintain a following-interval from a vehicle ahead of you.

You can switch the displayed set speed measurements on the multi-information display or information screen between mph and km/h.
➡ **Customized Features** P. 95, 310

To Cancel

To cancel cruise control, do any of the following:

- Press the **CANCEL** button.
- Press the **MAIN** button.
- Depress the brake pedal.

The **CRUISE CONTROL** indicator goes off.

To Cancel

Resuming the prior set speed:
After cruise control has been canceled, you can still resume the prior set speed by pressing the **RES/ ACCEL** button while driving at a speed of at least 25 mph (40 km/h) or more.

You cannot set or resume in the following situations:

- When vehicle speed is less than 25 mph (40 km/h).
- When the **MAIN** button is turned off.

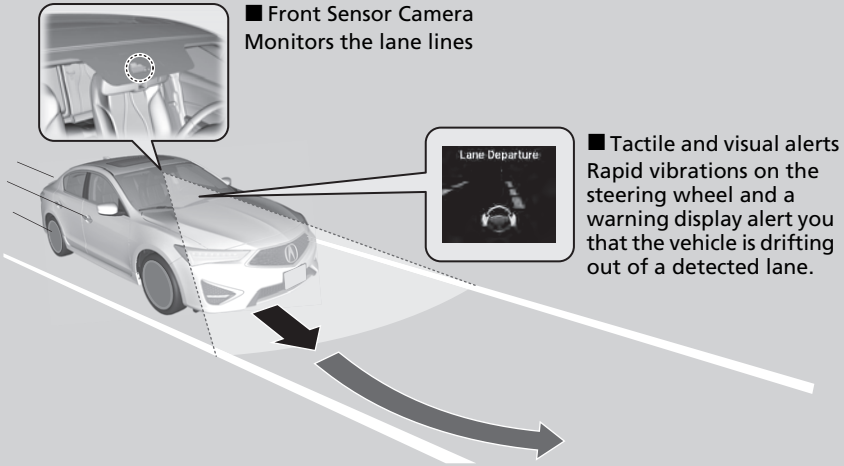
At vehicle speeds of 22 mph (35 km/h) or less, cruise control is canceled automatically.

Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)

Provides steering input to help keep the vehicle in the middle of a detected lane and provides visual alert if the vehicle is detected drifting out of its lane.

■ Steering input assist

The system applies torque to the steering to keep the vehicle between the left and right lane lines. The applied torque becomes stronger as the vehicle gets closer to either of the lane lines.



■ Front Sensor Camera

Monitors the lane lines

■ Tactile and visual alerts

Rapid vibrations on the steering wheel and a warning display alert you that the vehicle is drifting out of a detected lane.

When you operate the turn signals to change lanes, the system is suspended, and resumes after the signals are off.

If you make a lane change without operating the turn signals, the LKAS alerts activate, and torque is applied to the steering.

Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)

Important Safety Reminders

The LKAS is for your convenience only. It is not a substitute for your vehicle control. The system does not work if you take your hands off the steering wheel or fail to steer the vehicle.

Multi-Information Display Warning and Information Messages P. 87

Do not place objects on the instrument panel. Objects may reflect on the windshield and prevent correct detection of the traffic lanes.

The LKAS only alerts you when lane drift is detected without a turn signal in use. The LKAS may not detect all lane markings or lane departures; accuracy will vary based on weather, speed, and lane marker condition. It is always your responsibility to safely operate the vehicle and avoid collisions.

The LKAS is convenient when it is used on freeways.

The LKAS may not work properly or may work improperly under the certain conditions:

LKAS Conditions and Limitations P. 480

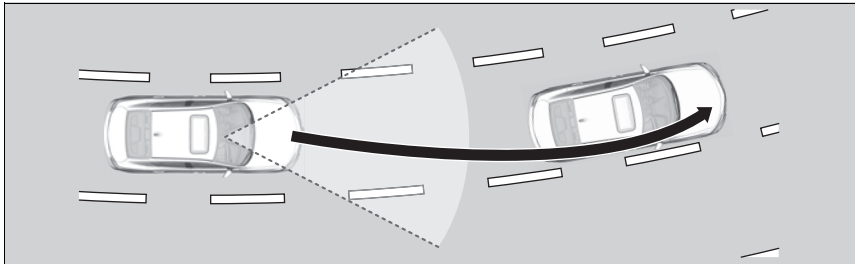
You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.

Front Sensor Camera P. 488

The LKAS may not function as designed while driving in frequent stop and go traffic, or on roads with sharp curves.

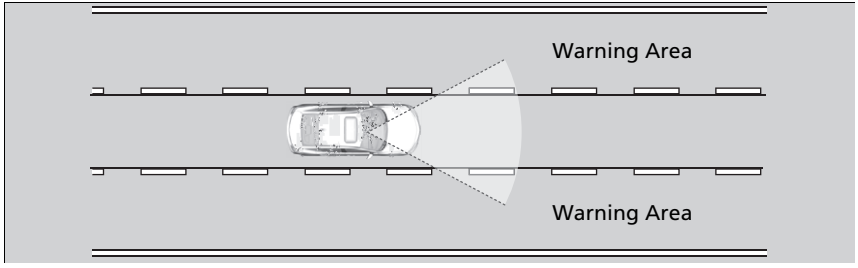
Lane Keep Support Function

Provides assistance to keep the vehicle in the center of the lane. When the vehicle nears a white or yellow line, steering force of the electric power steering will become stronger.



Lane Departure Warning Function

When the vehicle enters the warning area, the LKAS alerts you with slight steering wheel vibration as well as a warning display.



Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)

When it fails to detect lanes, the system will temporarily be canceled. When a lane is detected, the system will recover automatically.

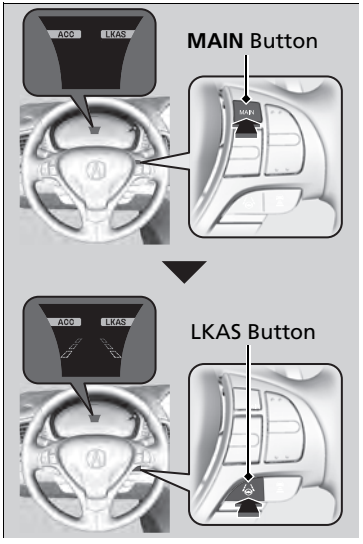
Continued

■ When the System can be Used

The system can be used when the following conditions are met.

- The lane in which you are driving has detectable lane markers on both sides, and your vehicle is in the center of the lane.
- The vehicle speed is between 45 and 90 mph (72 and 145 km/h).
- You are driving on a straight or slightly curved road.
- The turn signals are off.
- The brake pedal is not depressed.
- The wipers are not in continuous operation.

■ How to activate the system

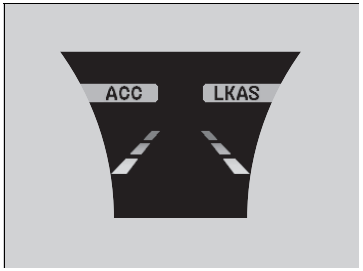


1. Press the **MAIN** button.
▶ The LKAS is on in the multi-information display.
The system is ready to use.

2. Press the LKAS button.
▶ Lane outlines appear on the multi-information display.
The system is activated.

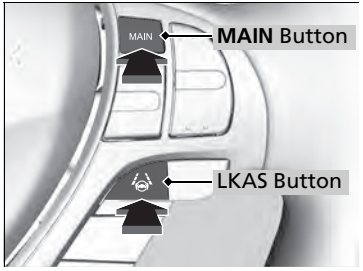
When the System can be Used

If the vehicle drifts toward either left or right lane line due to the system applying torque, turn off the LKAS and have your vehicle checked by a dealer.



3. Keep your vehicle near the center of the lane while driving.
▶ The dotted outer lines change to solid ones once the system starts operating after detecting the left and right lane markings.

To Cancel



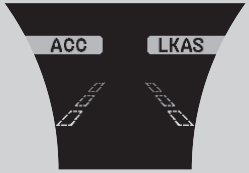
To cancel the LKAS:
Press the **MAIN** or LKAS button.

The LKAS is turned off every time you stop the engine, even if you turned it on the last time you drove the vehicle.

To Cancel

Pressing the **MAIN** button also turns ACC on and off.

Continued



When the LKAS is suspended, the lane lines on the multi-information display change to contour lines, and the beeper sounds (if activated).

■ **The system operation is suspended if you:**

- Set the wipers to continuous operation.
  ▶ Turning the wipers off resumes the LKAS.

Models with automatic intermittent wipers

- Set the wiper switch to **AUTO** and the wipers operate continuously.
  ▶ The LKAS resumes when the wipers stop or operate intermittently.

All models

- Decrease the vehicle speed to about 40 mph (64 km/h) or less.
  ▶ Increasing the vehicle speed to about 45 mph (72 km/h) or more resumes the LKAS.
- Depress the brake pedal.
  ▶ The LKAS resumes and starts detecting the lane lines again once you release the brake pedal.

■ **The LKAS may automatically be suspended when:**
- The system fails to detect lane lines.
- The steering wheel is quickly turned.
- You fail to steer the vehicle.
- Driving through a sharp curve.
- Driving at a speed in excess of approximately 90 mph (145 km/h).

Once these conditions no longer exist, the LKAS automatically resumes.

■ **The LKAS may automatically be canceled when:**
- The camera temperature gets extremely high or low.
- The camera behind the rearview mirror, or the area around the camera, including the windshield, gets dirty.
- The ABS or VSA® system engages.

The beeper sounds if the LKAS is automatically canceled.

Continued

■ LKAS Conditions and Limitations

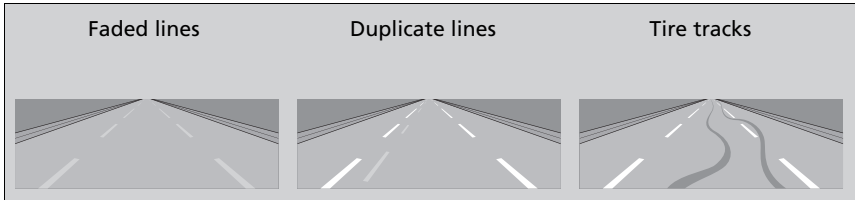
The system may not detect lane markings and therefore may not keep the vehicle in the middle of a lane under certain conditions, including the following:

■ Environmental conditions

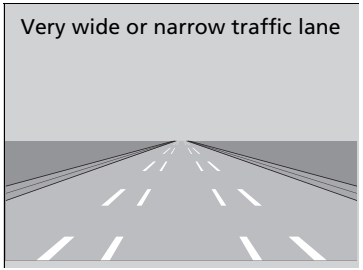
- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as an entrance or exit of a tunnel.
- There is little contrast between lane lines and the roadway surface.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.
- Driving in the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Shadows of adjacent objects are parallel to lane markings.
- Roadway objects or structures are misinterpreted as lane markers.
- Reflections on the interior of the windshield.
- Driving at night or in a dark condition such as a tunnel.

■ **Roadway conditions**

- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway (obscured lane marking, vehicle tracks, reflected lights, road spray, high contrast).
- Driving on a road with temporary lane markings.
- Faint, multiple, or varied lane markings are visible on the roadway due to road repairs or old lane markings.



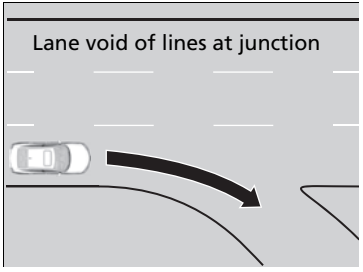
- The roadway has merging, split, or crossing lines (e.g., such as at an intersection or crosswalk).
- The lane markings are extremely narrow, wide, or changing.



- The vehicle in front of you is driving near the lane lines.
- The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.
- Driving on rough or unpaved roads, or over bumpy surfaces.

Continued

- When objects on the road (curb, guard rail, pylons, etc.) are recognized as white lines (or yellow lines).
- Driving on roads with double lines.



■ Vehicle conditions

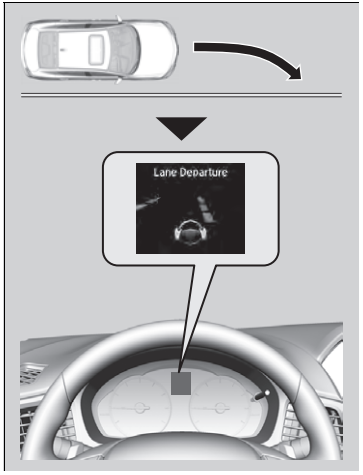
- Headlight lenses are dirty or the headlights are not properly adjusted.
- The outside of the windshield is streaked or blocked by dirt, mud, leaves, wet snow, etc.
- The inside of the windshield is fogged.
- The camera temperature gets too high.
- An abnormal tire or wheel condition (wrong sized, varied size or construction, improperly inflated, compact spare tire*, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to a heavy load or suspension modifications.

 * Not available on all models

Road Departure Mitigation (RDM) System

Alerts and helps to assist you when the system detects a possibility of your vehicle unintentionally crossing over detected lane markings and/or leaving the roadway altogether.

How the System Works



The front camera behind the rearview mirror monitors left and right lane markings (in white or yellow). If your vehicle is getting too close to detected lane markings without a turn signal activated, the system, in addition to a visual alert, applies steering torque and alerts you with rapid vibrations on the steering wheel, to help you remain within the detected lane.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 95, 310

As a visual alert, the **Lane Departure** message appears on the multi-information display.

If the system determines that its steering input is insufficient to keep your vehicle on the roadway, it may apply braking.

▶ Braking is applied only when the lane markings are solid continuous lines.

The system cancels assisting operations when you turn the steering wheel to avoid crossing over detected lane markings.

If the system operates several times without detecting driver response, the system beeps to alert you.

Continued

Road Departure Mitigation (RDM) System

Important Safety Reminder

Like all assistance systems, the RDM system has limitations.

Over-reliance on the RDM system may result in a collision. It is always your responsibility to keep the vehicle within your driving lane.

The RDM system only alerts you when lane drift is detected without a turn signal in use. The RDM system may not detect all lane markings or lane or roadway departures; accuracy will vary based on weather, speed and lane marker condition. It is always your responsibility to safely operate the vehicle and avoid collisions.

You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.

➡ **Front Sensor Camera** P. 488

The RDM system may not work properly or may work improperly under the certain conditions:

➡ **RDM Conditions and Limitations** P. 486

There are times when you may not notice RDM functions due to your operation of the vehicle, or road surface conditions.

How the System Activates

The system becomes ready to start searching for lane markings when all the following conditions are met:

- The vehicle is traveling between about 45 and 90 mph (72 and 145 km/h).
- The vehicle is on a straight or slightly curved road.
- The turn signals are off.
- The brake pedal is not depressed.
- The wipers are not in continuous operation.
- The vehicle is not accelerating or braking, and the steering wheel is not being turned.
- The system makes a determination that the driver is not actively accelerating, braking or steering.

How the System Activates

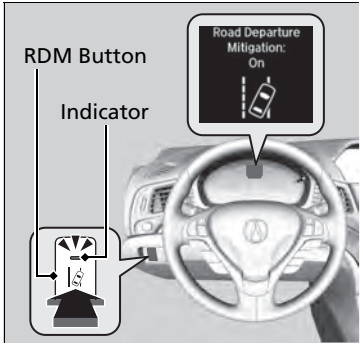
The RDM system may automatically shut off and the indicator comes and stays on.

➔ **Indicators** P. 76

RDM system function can be impacted when the vehicle is:

- Not driven within a traffic lane.
- Driven on the inside edge of a curve, or outside of a lane.
- Driven in a narrow lane.

RDM On and Off



Press the RDM button to turn the system on and off.

▶ The indicator in the button comes on and the message appears on the multi-information display when the system is on.

RDM On and Off

When you have selected **Warning Only** from the customized options using the multi-information display or information screen*, the system does not operate the steering wheel and braking.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 95, 310

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ RDM Conditions and Limitations

The system may not properly detect lane markings and the position of your vehicle under certain conditions. Some examples of these conditions are listed below.

■ Environmental conditions

- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as an entrance or exit of a tunnel.
- There is little contrast between lane lines and the roadway surface.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.
- Driving in the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Shadows of adjacent objects are parallel to lane markings.
- Roadway objects or structures are misinterpreted as lane markers.
- Reflections on the interior of the windshield.
- Driving at night or in a dark condition such as a tunnel.

■ **Roadway conditions**
- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway (obscured lane marking, vehicle tracks, reflected lights, road spray, high contrast).
- Driving on a road with temporary lane markings.
- Faint, multiple, or varied lane markings are visible on the roadway due to road repairs or old lane markings.
- The roadway has merging, split, or crossing lines (e.g., such as at an intersection or crosswalk).
- The lane markings are extremely narrow, wide, or changing.
- The vehicle in front of you is driving near the lane lines.
- The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.
- Driving on rough or unpaved roads, or over bumpy surfaces.
- When objects on the road (curb, guard rail, pylons, etc.) are recognized as white lines (or yellow lines).
- Driving on roads with double lines.

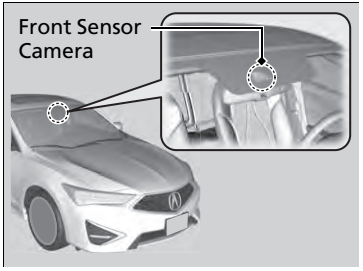
■ **Vehicle conditions**
- Headlight lenses are dirty or the headlights are not properly adjusted.
- The outside of the windshield is streaked or blocked by dirt, mud, leaves, wet snow, etc.
- The inside of the windshield is fogged.
- The camera temperature gets too high.
- An abnormal tire or wheel condition (wrong sized, varied size or construction, improperly inflated, compact spare tire*, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to a heavy load or suspension modifications.
- When tire chains are installed.

* Not available on all models

Front Sensor Camera

The camera, used in systems such as LKAS, RDM, ACC, and CMBS™, is designed to detect an object that triggers any of the systems to operate their functions.

■ Camera Location and Handling Tips



This camera is located behind the rearview mirror.

To help reduce the likelihood that high interior temperatures will cause the camera's sensing system to shut off, when parking, find a shady area or face the front of the vehicle away from the sun. If you use a reflective sun shade, do not allow it to cover the camera housing. Covering the camera can concentrate heat on it.

Front Sensor Camera

Never apply a film or attach any objects to the windshield, hood, or front grille that could obstruct the camera's field of vision and cause the system to operate abnormally.
Scratches, nicks, and other damage to the windshield within the camera's field of vision can cause the system to operate abnormally. If this occurs, we recommend that you replace the windshield with a genuine Acura replacement windshield. Making even minor repairs within the camera's field of vision or installing an aftermarket replacement windshield may also cause the system to operate abnormally. After replacing the windshield, have a dealer recalibrate the camera. Proper calibration of the camera is necessary for the system to operate properly.

Do not place an object on the top of the instrument panel. It may reflect onto the windshield and prevent the system from detecting lane lines properly.

Front Sensor Camera

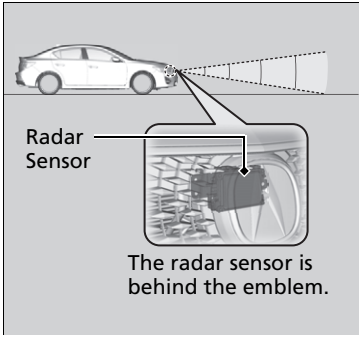
If the **Some Driver Assist Systems Cannot Operate: Camera Temperature Too High** message appears:

- Use the climate control system to cool down the interior and, if necessary, also use defroster mode with the airflow directed towards the camera.
- Start driving the vehicle to lower the windshield temperature, which cools down the area around the camera.

If the **Some Driver Assist Systems Cannot Operate: Clean Front Windshield** message appears:

- Park your vehicle in a safe place, and clean the windshield. If the message does not disappear after you have cleaned the windshield and driven for a while, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Radar Sensor



The radar sensor is behind the emblem.

Radar Sensor

Avoid strong impacts to the radar sensor cover.

For the CMBS™ to work properly:
- Always keep the radar sensor cover clean.
- Never use chemical solvents or polishing powder for cleaning the sensor cover. Clean it with water or a mild detergent.
- Do not put a sticker on the radar sensor cover or replace the radar sensor cover.

If you need the radar sensor to be repaired, or removed, or the radar sensor cover is strongly impacted, turn off the system by using the CMBS™ off button and take your vehicle to a dealer.

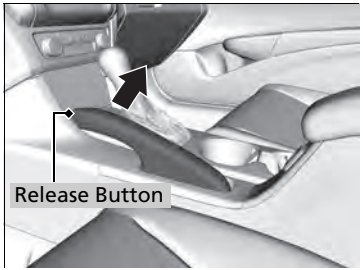
➡ **CMBS™ On and Off** P. 452

If the vehicle is involved in any of the following situations, the radar sensor may not work properly. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer:
- Your vehicle is involved in a frontal collision
- Your vehicle drives through deep water or is submerged in deep water
- Your vehicle strongly strikes a bump, curb, chock, or embankment that could jar the radar sensor

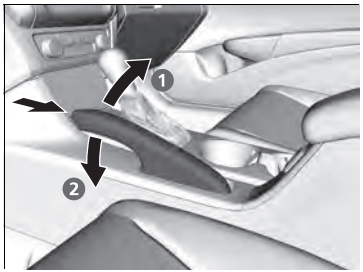
Brake System

Parking Brake

Use the parking brake to keep the vehicle stationary when parking.



To apply:
Pull the lever fully up without pressing the release button.



To release:

1. Pull the lever slightly, and press and hold the release button.
2. Lower the lever down all the way, then release the button.

Parking Brake

NOTICE

Release the parking brake fully before driving. The rear brakes and axle can be damaged if you drive with the parking brake applied.

If you start driving without fully releasing the parking brake, a buzzer sounds as a warning, and **Release Parking Brake** appears on the multi-information display.

Always apply the parking brake when parking.

Continued

■ Foot Brake

Your vehicle is equipped with disc brakes at all four wheels. A vacuum power assist helps reduce the effort needed on the brake pedal. The brake assist system increases the stopping force when you depress the brake pedal hard in an emergency situation. The anti-lock brake system (ABS) helps you retain steering control when braking very hard.

➲ **Brake Assist System** P. 494
➲ **Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)** P. 493

Foot Brake

Check the brakes after driving through deep water, or if there is a buildup of road surface water. If necessary, dry the brakes by lightly depressing the pedal several times.

If you hear a continuous metallic friction sound when applying the brakes, this is caused by the brake wear indicator rubbing on the brake rotor and indicates that the brake pads need to be replaced. Have the vehicle checked by a dealer. If you hear only an occasional squeak or squeal when you initially apply the brake pedal, this may be normal and caused by high frequency vibration of the brake pads against the rotating brake disc.

Constantly using the brake pedal while going down a long hill builds up heat, which reduces the brake effectiveness. Apply engine braking by taking your foot off the accelerator pedal and downshifting to a lower gear.

Do not rest your foot on the brake pedal while driving, as it will lightly apply the brakes and cause them to lose effectiveness over time and reduce pad life. It will also confuse drivers behind you.

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

■ ABS

Helps prevent the wheels from locking up, and helps you retain steering control by pumping the brakes rapidly, much faster than you.

The electronic brake distribution (EBD) system, which is part of the ABS, also balances the front-to-rear braking distribution according to vehicle loading.

You should never pump the brake pedal. Let the ABS work for you by always keeping firm, steady pressure on the brake pedal. This is sometimes referred to as "stomp and steer."

■ ABS operation

The brake pedal may pulsate slightly when the ABS is working. Depress the brake pedal and keep holding the pedal firmly down. On dry pavement, you will need to press on the brake pedal very hard before the ABS activates. However, you may feel the ABS activate immediately if you are trying to stop on snow or ice.

ABS may activate when you depress the brake pedal when driving on:
- Wet or snow covered roads.
- Roads paved with stone.
- Roads with uneven surfaces, such as potholes, cracks, manholes, etc.

When the vehicle speed goes under 6 mph (10 km/h), the ABS stops.

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

NOTICE

The ABS may not function correctly if you use a tire of the wrong size or type.

If the **ABS** indicator comes on while driving, there may be a problem with the system.
While normal braking will not be affected, there is a possibility that the ABS will not be operating. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

The ABS is not designed for the purpose of reducing the time or distance it takes for a vehicle to stop: It is designed to limit brake lockup which can lead to skidding and loss of steering control.

In the following cases, your vehicle may need more distance to stop than a vehicle without the ABS:
- You are driving on rough or uneven road surfaces, such as gravel or snow.
- The tires are equipped with tire chains.

The following may be observed with the ABS system:
- Motor sounds coming from the engine compartment when the brakes are applied, or when system checks are being performed after the engine has been started and while the vehicle accelerates.
- Brake pedal and/or the vehicle body vibration when ABS activates.

These vibrations and sounds are normal to ABS systems and are no cause for concern.

Brake Assist System

Designed to assist the driver by generating greater braking force when you depress the brake pedal hard during emergency braking.

■ Brake assist system operation

Press the brake pedal firmly for more powerful braking.

When brake assist operates, the pedal may wiggle slightly and an operating noise may be heard. This is normal. Keep holding the brake pedal firmly down.

When Stopped

1. Depress the brake pedal firmly.
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Change the shift position to P.
4. Turn off the engine.

Parking Your Vehicle

⚠WARNING

The vehicle can roll away if left unattended without confirming that Park is engaged.

A vehicle that rolls away could cause a crash resulting in serious injury or death.

Always keep your foot on the brake pedal until you have confirmed that P is shown on the shift lever position indicator.

Do not park your vehicle near flammable objects, such as dry grass, oil, or timber.
Heat from the exhaust can cause a fire.

When Stopped

NOTICE

The following can damage the transmission:
- Depressing the accelerator and brake pedals simultaneously.
- Holding the vehicle in place when facing uphill by depressing the accelerator pedal.
- Moving the shift lever into P before the vehicle stops completely.

Continued

Always set the parking brake firmly, in particular if you are parked on an incline.

When Stopped

In extremely cold temperatures, the parking brake may freeze up if applied. If such temperatures are expected, do not apply the parking brake but, if parking on a slope, either turn the front wheels so they will contact the curb if the vehicle rolls down the slope or block the wheels to keep the vehicle from moving. If you do not take either precaution, the vehicle may roll unexpectedly, leading to a crash.

Cross Traffic Monitor*

Monitors the rear corner areas using the radar sensors when reversing, and alerts you if a vehicle approaching from a rear corner is detected.

The system is convenient when you are backing out of a parking space.

Cross Traffic Monitor*

⚠CAUTION

Cross Traffic Monitor cannot detect all approaching vehicles and may not detect an approaching vehicle at all.

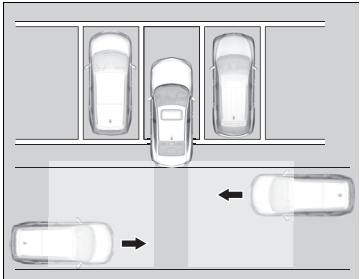
Failure to visually confirm that it is safe to back up the vehicle before doing so may result in a collision.

Do not solely rely on the system when reversing; always also use your mirrors, and look behind and to the sides of your vehicle before reversing.

* Not available on all models

Continued

How the System Works



Radar sensors:
Underneath the rear bumper corners

The system activates when:

- The power mode is in ON.
- The Cross Traffic Monitor is turned on.
  - **Cross Traffic Monitor On and Off** P. 499
  - **Customized Features** P. 310
- The transmission is in R.
- Your vehicle is moving at 3 mph (5 km/h) or lower.

When a vehicle is detected approaching from a rear corner, Cross Traffic Monitor alerts you with a buzzer and a displayed warning.

The system will not detect a vehicle that approaches from directly behind your vehicle, nor will it provide alerts about a detected vehicle when it moves directly behind your vehicle.

The system does not provide alerts for a vehicle that is moving away from your vehicle, and it may alert for pedestrians, bicycles, or stationary objects.

Cross Traffic Monitor*

Cross traffic monitor may not detect or may delay alerting an approaching vehicle, or may alert without an approaching vehicle under the following conditions:

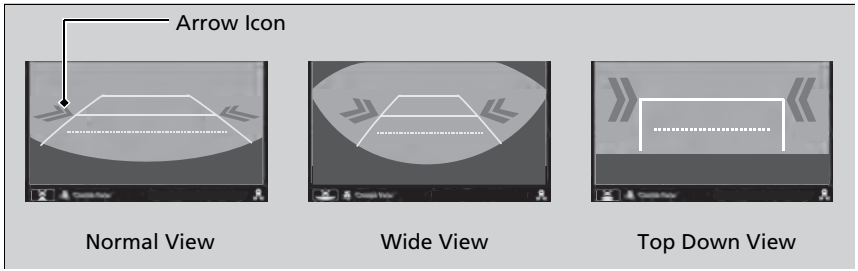
- An obstacle, such as another vehicle and a wall, near your vehicle's rear bumper, is blocking the radar sensor's scope.
- Your vehicle is moving at the speed of about 3 mph (5 km/h) or higher.
- A vehicle is approaching at the speed other than between about 6 mph (10 km/h) and 16 mph (25 km/h).
- The system picks up external interference such as other radar sensors from another vehicle or strong radio wave transmitted from a facility nearby.
- Either corner of the rear bumper is covered with snow, ice, mud or dirt.
- When there is bad weather.
- Your vehicle is on an incline.
- Your vehicle is tilted due to a heavy load in the rear.
- Your vehicle is reversing towards a wall, a pole, a vehicle, and so on.

The rear bumper or the sensors have been improperly repaired or the rear bumper has been deformed. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

For proper operation, always keep the rear bumper corner area clean.
Do not cover the rear bumper corner area with labels or stickers of any kind.

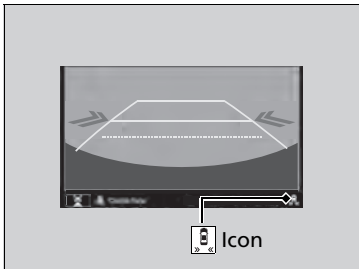
 * Not available on all models

When the System Detects a Vehicle



An arrow icon appears on the side a vehicle is approaching on the information screen.

Cross Traffic Monitor On and Off



You can switch on and off the system using the information screen.

Customized Features P. 310

When the System Detects a Vehicle

If the [icon] on the lower right changes to [icon] in amber when the transmission is in R, mud, snow or ice, etc. may have accumulated in the vicinity of the sensor. The system is temporarily canceled. Check the bumper corners for any obstructions, and thoroughly clean the area if necessary.

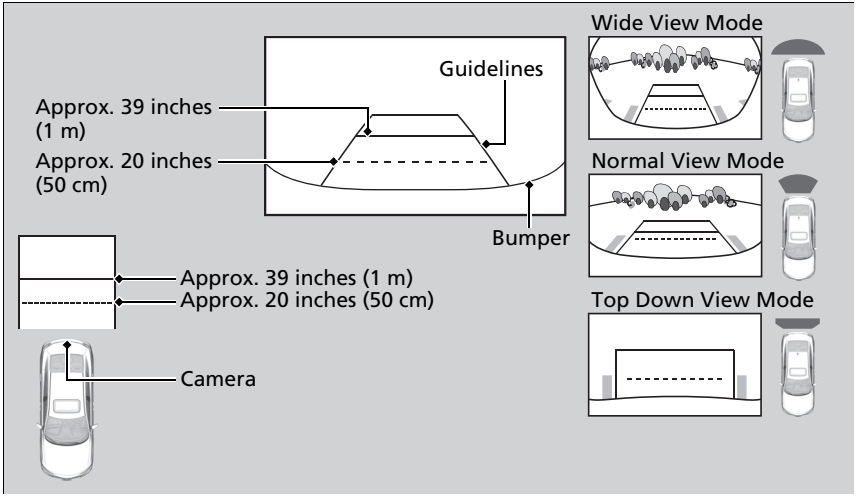
If the [icon] comes on in amber when the transmission is in R, there may be a problem with the Cross Traffic Monitor system. Do not use the system and have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

If the display remains the same with the transmission in R, there may be a problem with the rear camera system and the Cross Traffic Monitor system.
Do not use the system and have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

About Your Multi-View Rear Camera

The audio/information screen* or information screen* can display your vehicle's rear view. The display automatically changes to the rear view when the transmission is put into R.

■ Multi-View Rear Camera Display Area



About Your Multi-View Rear Camera

The rear camera view is restricted. You cannot see the corner ends of the bumper or what is underneath the bumper. Its unique lens also makes objects appear closer or farther than they actually are.

Visually confirm that it is safe to drive before backing up. Certain conditions (such as weather, lighting, and high temperatures) may also restrict the rear view. Do not rely on the rearview display which does not give you all information about conditions at the back of your vehicle.

If the camera lens is covered with dirt or moisture, use a soft, moist cloth to keep the lens clean and free of debris.

Models with two displays

You can change the **Fixed Guideline** and **Dynamic Guideline** settings.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 310

Fixed Guideline
On: Guidelines appear when you put the transmission into R.
Off: Guidelines do not appear.
Dynamic Guideline
On: Guidelines move according to the steering wheel direction.
Off: Guidelines do not move.

* Not available on all models

You can view three different camera modes on the rearview display. Press the selector knob to switch the mode.

 : Wide view mode

 : Normal view mode

 : Top down view mode

- If the last used viewing mode was Wide or Normal view mode, the same mode is selected the next time you put the transmission into R.
- If Top down view mode was last used before you turned the power mode to OFF, Wide View mode is selected next time you set the power mode to ON and put the transmission into R.
- If Top down view mode was last used more than 10 seconds after you change from R, Wide View mode is selected the next time you put the transmission into R.

Fuel Information

■ **Fuel recommendation**

Unleaded premium gasoline, pump octane number 91 or higher

Use of a lower octane gasoline can cause occasional metallic knocking noise in the engine and will result in decreased engine performance.
Use of a gasoline with a pump octane less than 87 can lead to engine damage.

■ **Top tier detergent gasoline**

Because the level of detergency and additives in gasoline vary in the market, Acura endorses the use of "TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline" where available to help maintain the performance and reliability of your vehicle. TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline meets a new gasoline standard jointly established by leading automotive manufacturers to meet the needs of today's advanced engines.

Qualifying gasoline retailers will, in most cases, identify their gasoline as having met "TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline" standards at the retail location. This fuel is guaranteed to contain the proper level of detergent additives and be free of metallic additives. The proper level of detergent additives, and absence of harmful metallic additives in gasoline, help avoid build-up of deposits in your engine and emission control system.

For further important fuel-related information for your vehicle, or on information on gasoline that does not contain MMT, visit Acura Owners at *owners.acura.com.* In Canada, visit *www.acura.ca* for additional information on gasoline. For more information on top tier gasoline, visit *www.toptiergas.com*.

■ **Fuel tank capacity: 13.2 US gal (50 L)**

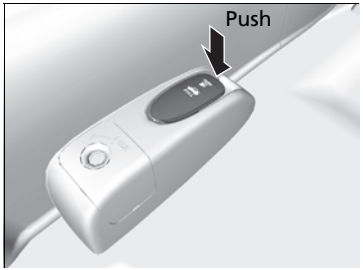
Fuel Information

NOTICE

We recommend quality gasoline containing detergent additives that help prevent fuel system and engine deposits. In addition, in order to maintain good performance, fuel economy, and emissions control, we strongly recommend the use of gasoline that does NOT contain harmful manganese-based fuel additives such as MMT, if such gasoline is available.

Use of gasoline with these additives may adversely affect performance, and cause the malfunction indicator lamp on your instrument panel to come on. If this happens, contact a dealer for service.
Some gasoline today is blended with oxygenates such as ethanol. Your vehicle is designed to operate on oxygenated gasoline containing up to 15% ethanol by volume. Do not use gasoline containing methanol. If you notice any undesirable operating symptoms, try another service station or switch to another brand of gasoline.

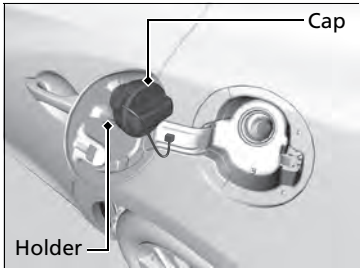
How to Refuel



1. Stop your vehicle with the service station pump on the left side of the vehicle in the rear.
2. Turn off the engine.
3. Push on the fuel fill door release handle at the foot of the driver's seat.
▶ The fuel fill door opens.



4. Remove the fuel fill cap slowly. If you hear a release of air, wait until this stops, then turn the knob slowly to open the fuel fill cap.



5. Place the fuel fill cap in the holder.
6. Insert the fuel filler nozzle fully.
▶ When the tank is full, the filler nozzle will click off automatically. This leaves space in the fuel tank in case the fuel expands with a change in the temperature.
7. After filling, replace the fuel fill cap, tightening it until you hear it click at least once.
▶ Shut the fuel fill door by hand.

How to Refuel

⚠WARNING

Gasoline is highly flammable and explosive. You can be burned or seriously injured when handling fuel.

- **Stop the engine, and keep heat, sparks, and flame away.**
- **Handle fuel only outdoors.**
- **Wipe up spills immediately.**

If the filler nozzle keeps turning off when the tank is not full, there may be a problem with the pump's fuel vapor recovery system. Try filling at another pump. If this does not fix the problem, consult a dealer.

Do not continue to add fuel after the filler nozzle has automatically stopped. Additional fuel can exceed the full tank capacity.

The filler nozzle automatically stops to leave space in the fuel tank so that fuel does not overflow as a result of changes in air temperature.

Improving Fuel Economy and Reducing CO_2 Emissions

Achieving fuel economy and reducing CO_2 emissions is dependent on several factors, including driving conditions, load weight, idling time, driving habits, and vehicle condition. Depending on these and other factors, you may not achieve the rated fuel economy of this vehicle.

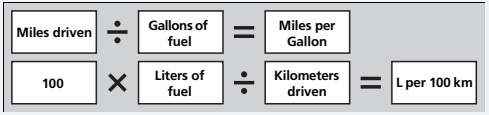
■ Maintenance and Fuel Economy

You can optimize your fuel economy with proper maintenance of your vehicle. Always maintain your vehicle in accordance with the messages displayed on the multi-information display.

- Use engine oil with the viscosity recommended.
  ➡ **Recommended Engine Oil** P. 516
- Maintain the specified tire pressure.
- Do not load the vehicle with excess cargo.
- Keep your vehicle clean. A buildup of snow or mud on your vehicle's underside adds weight and increases wind resistance.

Improving Fuel Economy and Reducing CO_2 Emissions

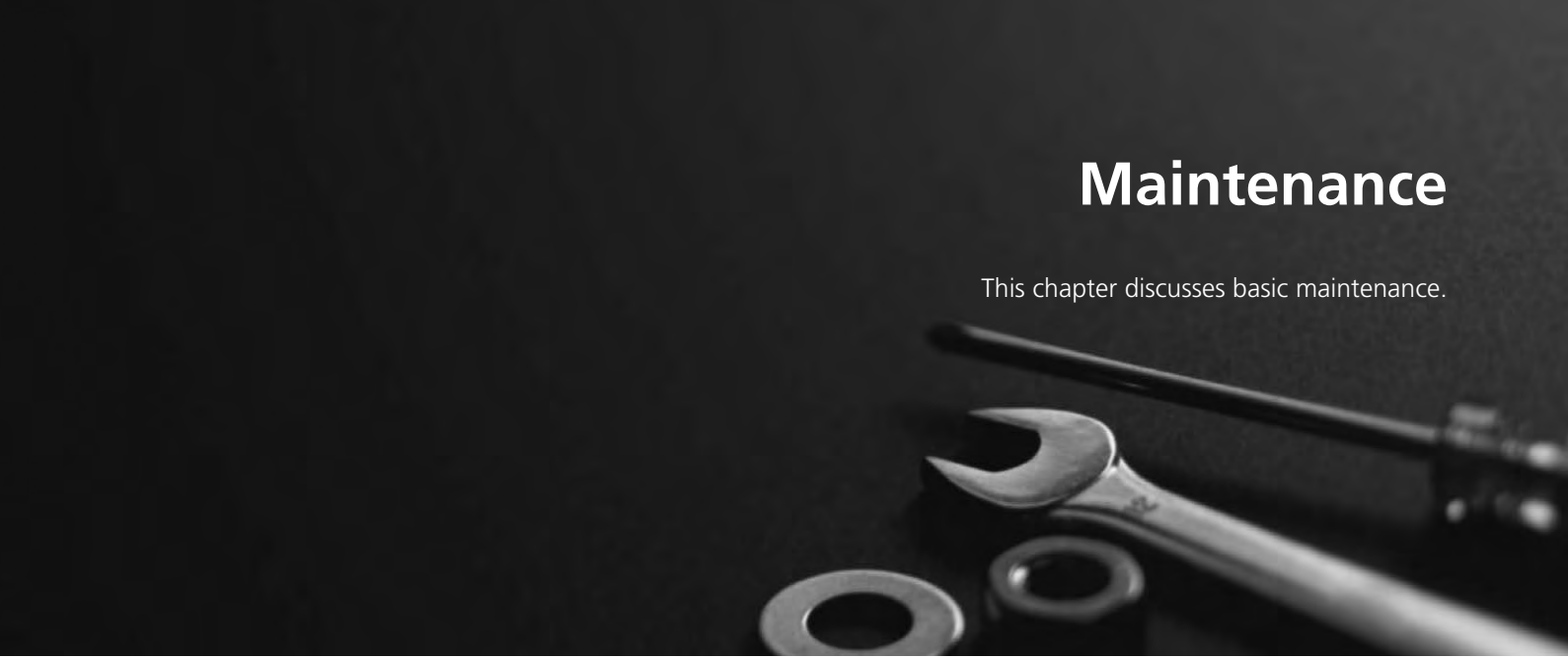
Direct calculation is the recommended method to determine actual fuel consumed while driving.



In Canada, posted fuel economy numbers are established following a simulated test. For more information on how this test is performed, please visit *http://oee.nrcan.gc.ca/*

Maintenance

This chapter discusses basic maintenance.



Before Performing Maintenance
Inspection and Maintenance 506
Safety When Performing Maintenance..507
Parts and Fluids Used in Maintenance Service 508
Maintenance Minder™ 509
Maintenance Under the Hood
Maintenance Items Under the Hood.. 514
Opening the Hood 515
Recommended Engine Oil 516
Oil Check 517
Adding Engine Oil 518
Changing the Engine Oil and Oil Filter ...519
Engine Coolant 521
Transmission Fluid 523
Brake Fluid 524
Refilling Window Washer Fluid 524
Replacing Light Bulbs 525
Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades 530
Checking and Maintaining Tires
Checking Tires 532
Tire and Loading Information Label .. 533
Tire Labeling 533
DOT Tire Quality Grading (U.S. Vehicles)..535
Wear Indicators 537
Tire Service Life 537
Tire and Wheel Replacement 538
Tire Rotation 539
Winter Tires 540
Battery 541
Remote Transmitter Care
Replacing the Button Battery 542
Climate Control System Maintenance ..544
Cleaning
Interior Care 545
Exterior Care 548
Accessories and Modifications 551

Inspection and Maintenance

For your safety, perform all listed inspections and maintenance to keep your vehicle in good condition. If you become aware of any abnormality (noise, smell, insufficient brake fluid, oil residue on the ground, etc.), have your vehicle inspected by a dealer. (Note, however, that service at a dealer is not mandatory to keep your warranties in effect.) Refer to the separate maintenance booklet for detailed maintenance and inspection information.

■ Types of Inspection and Maintenance

■ Daily inspections

Perform inspections before long distance trips, when washing the vehicle, or when refueling.

■ Periodic inspections

- Check the brake fluid level monthly.
  ➡ **Brake Fluid** P. 524
- Check the tire pressure monthly. Examine the tread for wear and foreign objects.
  ➡ **Checking and Maintaining Tires** P. 532
- Check the operation of the exterior lights monthly.
  ➡ **Replacing Light Bulbs** P. 525
- Check the condition of the wiper blades at least every six months.
  ➡ **Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades** P. 530

Inspection and Maintenance

U.S. models

Maintenance, replacement, or repair of emissions control devices and systems may be done by any automotive repair establishment or individuals using parts that are "certified" to EPA standards.

According to state and federal regulations, failure to perform maintenance on the maintenance main items marked with # will not void your emissions warranties. However, all maintenance services should be performed in accordance with the intervals indicated by the multi-information display (MID).

➡ **Maintenance Service Items** P. 512

If you want to perform complex maintenance tasks that require more skills and tools, you can purchase a subscription to the Service Express website at *www.techinfo.honda.com*.

➡ **Authorized Manuals** P. 605

If you want to perform maintenance yourself, make sure that you have the necessary tools and skills first. After performing maintenance, update the records in the separate maintenance booklet.

Safety When Performing Maintenance

Some of the most important safety precautions are given here.
However, we cannot warn you of every conceivable hazard that can arise in performing maintenance. Only you can decide whether you should perform a given task.

■ Maintenance Safety

- To reduce the possibility of fire or explosion, keep cigarettes, sparks, and flames away from the battery and all fuel related parts.
- Never leave rags, towels, or other flammable objects under the hood.
  ▶ Heat from the engine and exhaust can ignite them, causing a fire.
- To clean parts, use a commercially available degreaser or parts cleaner, not gasoline.
- Wear eye protection and protective clothing when working with the battery or compressed air.
- Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide, which is poisonous and can kill you.
  ▶ Only operate the engine if there is sufficient ventilation.

■ Vehicle Safety

- The vehicle must be in a stationary condition.
  ▶ Make sure your vehicle is parked on level ground, the parking brake is set, and the engine is off.
- Be aware that hot parts can burn you.
  ▶ Make sure to let the engine and exhaust system cool thoroughly before touching vehicle parts.
- Be aware that moving parts can injure you.
  ▶ Do not start the engine unless instructed, and keep your hands and limbs away from moving parts.

Safety When Performing Maintenance

⚠WARNING

Improperly maintaining this vehicle or failing to correct a problem before driving can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Always follow the inspection and maintenance recommendations according to the schedules in this owner's manual.

⚠WARNING

Failure to properly follow maintenance instructions and precautions can cause you to be seriously hurt or killed.

Always follow the procedures and precautions in this owner's manual.

Parts and Fluids Used in Maintenance Service

The use of Acura genuine parts and fluids is recommended when maintaining and servicing your vehicle. Acura genuine parts are manufactured according to the same high quality standards used in Acura vehicles.

Parts and Fluids Used in Maintenance Service

NOTICE

Do not press the engine cover forcibly. This may damage the engine cover and component parts.

If the engine oil life is less than 15%, you will see the Maintenance Minder messages appear on the multi-information display every time you set the power mode to ON. The messages notify you when to change the engine oil, or when to bring your vehicle to a dealer for indicated maintenance services.

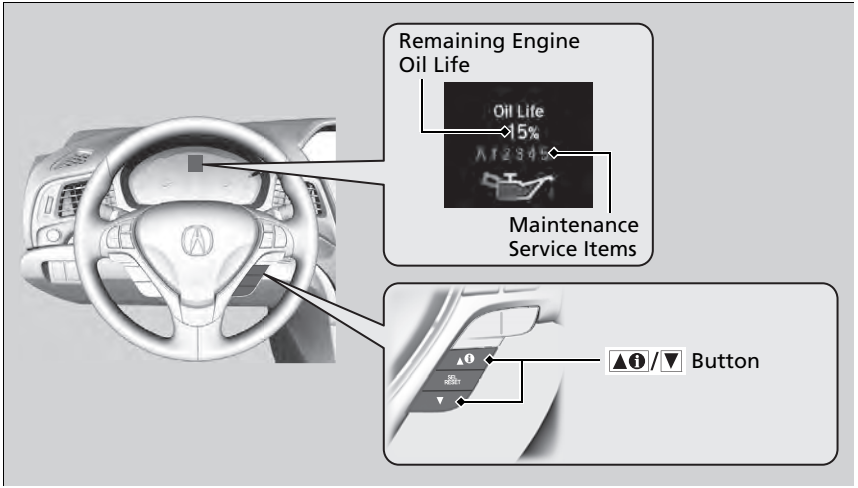
To Use Maintenance Minder™

■ Displaying the Maintenance Minder Information

Maintenance items, which should be serviced at the same time that you replace the engine oil, appear on the multi-information display.
You can view them on the engine oil life screen at any time.

1. Set the power mode to ON.

2. Press the ▲i/▼ button repeatedly until the **Oil Life** appears on the multi-information display.



Displaying the Maintenance Minder Information

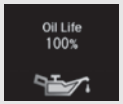
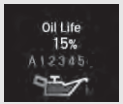
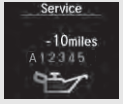
Based on the engine operating conditions, the remaining engine oil life is calculated and displayed as a percentage.

Displayed Engine Oil Life (%)	Calculated Engine Oil Life (%)
100	100 to 91
90	90 to 81
80	80 to 71
70	70 to 61
60	60 to 51
50	50 to 41
40	40 to 31
30	30 to 21
20	20 to 16
15	15 to 11
10	10 to 6
5	5 to 1
0	0

There is a list of maintenance main and sub items you can view on the multi-information display.

➔ **Maintenance Service Items** P. 512

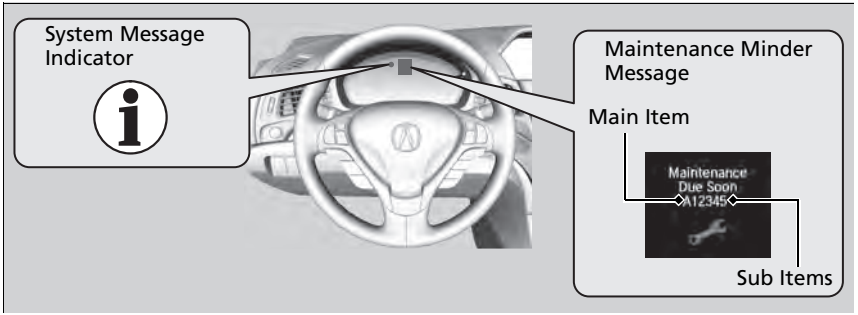
Maintenance Minder Messages on the Multi-Information Display

Maintenance Message	Oil Life Display	Explanation	Information
—		When you select the Maintenance Minder screen, it displays codes for maintenance items due at the next engine oil change, along with the percentage of engine oil life remaining.	—
Maintenance Due Soon 	15 % 	The remaining engine oil life is 15 to 6 percent. Once you switch the display by pressing the ▲ⓘ/▼ (information) button, this message will go off.	The engine oil is approaching the end of its service life, and the maintenance items should be inspected and serviced soon.
Maintenance Due Now 	5 % 	The remaining engine oil life is 5 to 1 percent. Press the ▲ⓘ/▼ button to switch to another display.	The engine oil has almost reached the end of its service life, and the maintenance items should be inspected and serviced as soon as possible.
Maintenance Past Due 	Negative Distance 	The remaining engine oil life has passed its service life, and a negative distance appears after driving over 10 miles (U.S. models) or 10 km (Canadian models). Press the ▲ⓘ/▼ button to switch to another display.	The engine oil life has passed. The maintenance items must be inspected and serviced immediately.

The system message indicator (ⓘ) comes on along with the Maintenance Minder message.

Continued

■ Maintenance Service Items



Maintenance Service Items

- Independent of the Maintenance Minder information, replace the brake fluid every 3 years.
- Adjust the valves during services A, B, 1, 2, or 3 if they are noisy.

CODE	Maintenance Main Items
A	• Replace engine oil*1
B	• Replace engine oil*1 and oil filter • Inspect front and rear brakes • Check parking brake adjustment • Check expiry date for tire repair kit bottle • Inspect tie rod ends, steering gearbox, and boots • Inspect suspension components • Inspect driveshaft boots • Inspect brake hoses and lines (Including ABS/VSA®) • Inspect all fluid levels and condition of fluids • Inspect exhaust system# • Inspect fuel lines and connections#

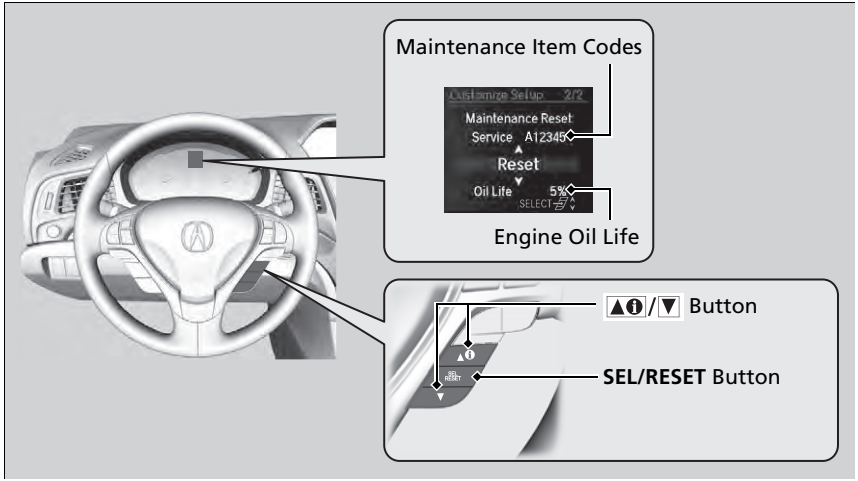
*1: If a message **SERVICE** does not appear more than 12 months after the display is reset, change the engine oil every year.
#: See information on maintenance and emissions warranty.

CODE	Maintenance Sub Items
1	• Rotate tires
2	• Replace air cleaner element*2 • Replace dust and pollen filter*3 • Inspect drive belt
3	• Replace transmission fluid*4
4	• Replace spark plugs • Inspect valve clearance
5	• Replace engine coolant

*2: If you drive in dusty conditions, replace the air cleaner element every 15,000 miles (24,000 km).
*3: If you drive primarily in urban areas that have high concentrations of soot in the air from industry and from diesel-powered vehicles, replace the dust and pollen filter every 15,000 miles (24,000 km).
*4: Driving in mountainous areas at very low vehicle speeds results in higher transmission temperature. This requires transmission fluid changes more frequently than recommended by the Maintenance Minder. If you regularly drive your vehicle under these conditions, have the transmission fluid changed at 40,000 miles (64,000 km), then every 30,000 miles (48,000 km).

■ Resetting the Display

Reset the engine oil life display if you have performed the maintenance service.



1. Set the power mode to ON.

2. Go to the **Maintenance Info** group.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 95

3. Press the **SEL/RESET** button.

▶ The oil life reset mode is displayed on the multi-information display.

4. Select **Reset** with the ▲i/▼ button, then press the **SEL/RESET** button.

▶ The displayed maintenance items disappear, and the engine oil life display returns to **100%**.

To cancel the oil life reset mode, select **Cancel**, then press the **SEL/RESET** button.

Resetting the Display

NOTICE

Failure to reset the engine oil life after a maintenance service results in the system showing incorrect maintenance intervals, which can lead to serious mechanical problems.

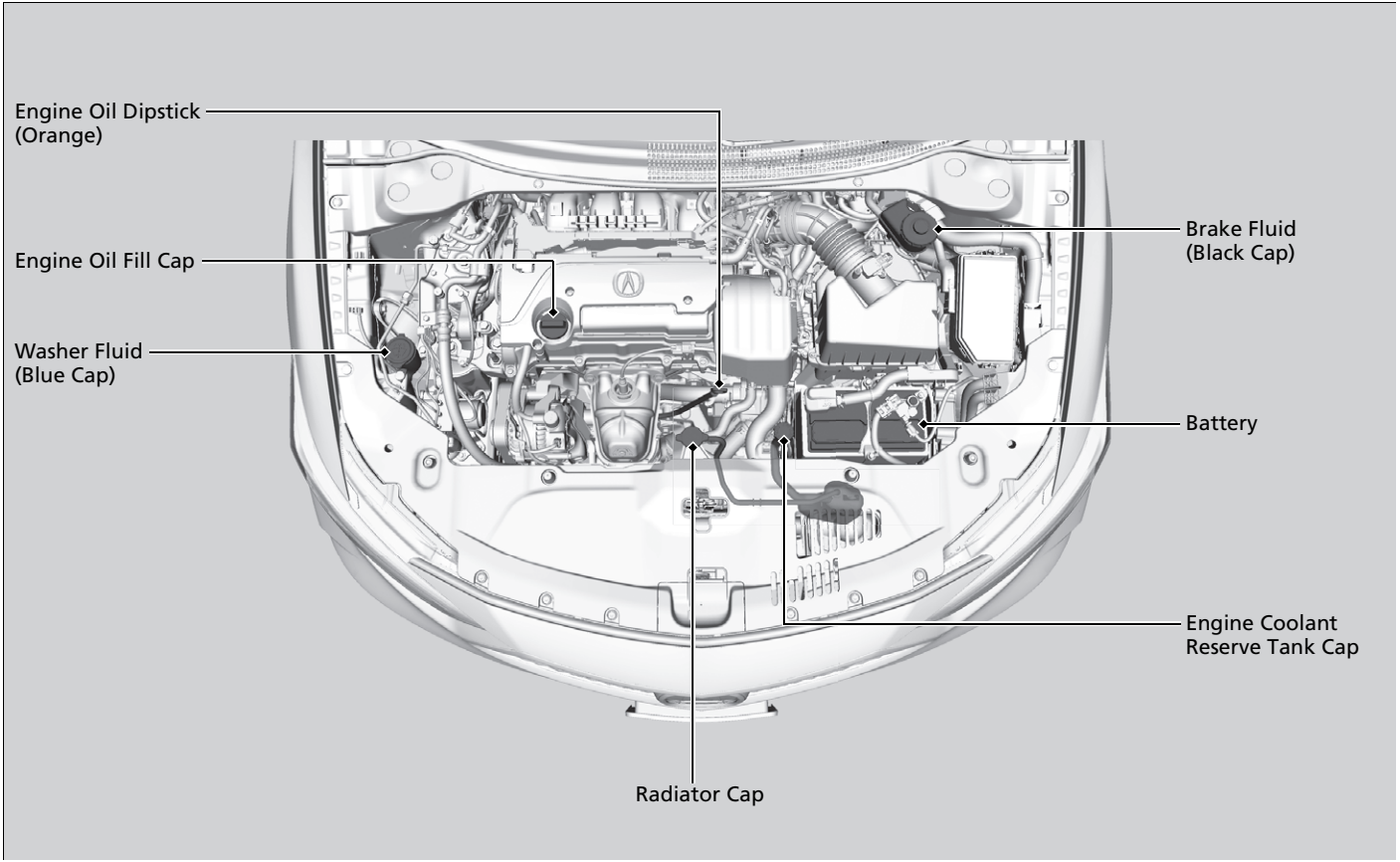
The dealer will reset the engine oil life display after completing the required maintenance service. If someone other than a dealer performs maintenance service, reset the engine oil life display yourself.

Models with two displays

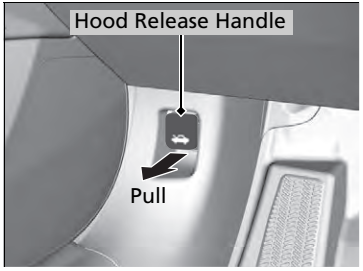
You can also reset the engine oil life display using the information screen.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 310

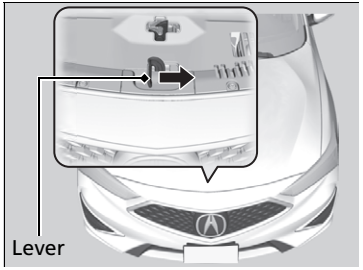
Maintenance Items Under the Hood



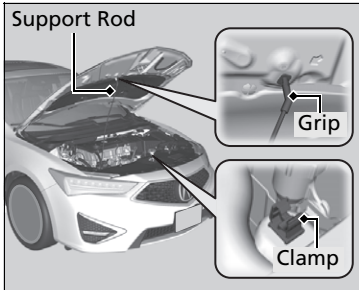
Opening the Hood



1. Park the vehicle on a level surface, and set the parking brake.
2. Pull the hood release handle under the driver's side lower corner of the dashboard.
▶ The hood will pop up slightly.



3. Push the hood latch lever (located under the front edge of the hood to the center) to the side and raise the hood. Once you have raised the hood slightly, you can release the lever.



4. Remove the support rod from the clamp using the grip. Mount the support rod in the hood.

When closing, remove the support rod, and stow it in the clamp, then gently lower the hood. Remove your hand at a height of approximately 12 inches (30 cm) and let the hood close.

Opening the Hood

NOTICE

Do not open the hood when the wiper arms are raised. The hood will strike the wipers, resulting in possible damage to the hood and/or the wipers.

Do not press the engine cover forcibly. This may damage the engine cover and component parts.

When closing the hood, check that the hood is securely latched.

If the hood latch lever moves stiffly, or if you can open the hood without lifting the lever, the latch mechanism should be cleaned and lubricated.

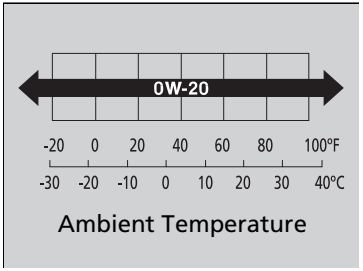
Recommended Engine Oil

- **Genuine Acura Motor Oil**
- **Premium-grade 0W-20 detergent oil with an API Certification Seal on the container.**



Oil is a major contributor to your engine's performance and longevity. If you drive the vehicle with insufficient or deteriorated oil, the engine may fail or be damaged.

This seal indicates the oil is energy conserving and that it meets the American Petroleum Institute's latest requirements.



Use a Genuine Acura Motor Oil or another commercial engine oil of suitable viscosity for the ambient temperature as shown.

■ Synthetic oil

You may also use synthetic motor oil if it is labeled with the API Certification Seal and is the specified viscosity grade.

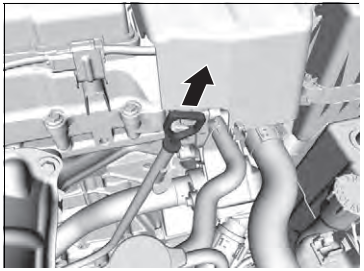
Recommended Engine Oil

Engine Oil Additives

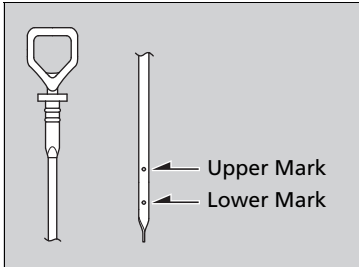
Your vehicle does not require oil additives. In fact, they may adversely affect the engine performance and durability.

Oil Check

We recommend that you check the engine oil level every time you refuel.
Park the vehicle on level ground.
Wait approximately three minutes after turning the engine off before you check the oil.



1. Remove the dipstick (orange).
2. Wipe the dipstick with a clean cloth or paper towel.
3. Insert the dipstick back all the way into its hole.

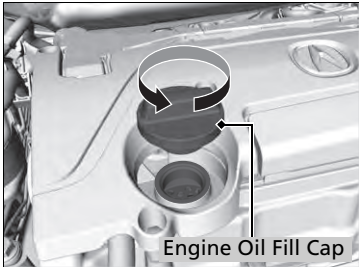


4. Remove the dipstick again, and check the level. It should be between the upper and lower marks. Add oil if necessary.

Oil Check

If the oil level is near or below the lower mark, slowly add oil, being careful not to overfill.

Adding Engine Oil



1. Unscrew and remove the engine oil fill cap.
2. Add oil slowly.
3. Reinstall the engine oil fill cap, and tighten it securely.
4. Wait for three minutes and recheck the engine oil dipstick.

Adding Engine Oil

NOTICE

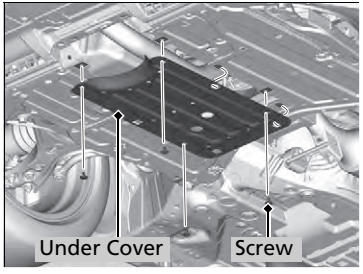
Do not fill the engine oil above the upper mark. Overfilling the engine oil can result in leaks and engine damage.

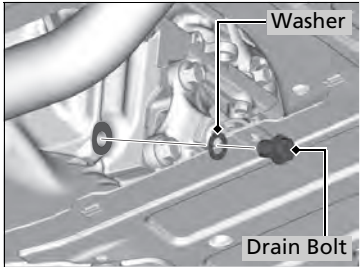
If any oil spills, wipe it away immediately. Spilled oil may damage the engine compartment components.

Changing the Engine Oil and Oil Filter

You must change the engine oil and oil filter regularly in order to maintain the engine's lubrication. The engine may be damaged if they are not changed regularly.

Change the oil and filter in accordance with the maintenance message on the multi-information display.





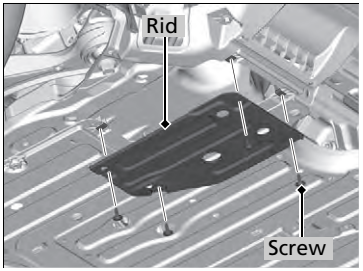
1. Run the engine until it reaches normal operating temperature, and then turn the engine off.
2. Open the hood and remove the engine oil fill cap.
3. Remove the screws on the undercarriage and remove the under cover.
4. Remove the drain bolt and washer from the bottom of the engine, and drain the oil into a suitable container.

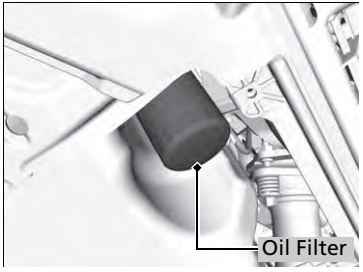
Changing the Engine Oil and Oil Filter

NOTICE

You may damage the environment if you do not dispose of the oil in a suitable way. If you are changing the oil by yourself, appropriately dispose of the used oil. Put the oil in a sealed container and take it to a recycling center. Do not throw the oil away into a garbage can or onto the ground.

Continued





5. Remove the screws and remove the rid.
6. Remove the oil filter and dispose of the remaining oil.
7. Check that the filter gasket is not stuck to the engine contact surface.
▶ If it is stuck, you must detach it.
8. Wipe away dirt and dust adhering to the contact surface of the engine block, and install a new oil filter.
▶ Apply a light coat of new engine oil to the filter gasket.
9. Put a new washer on the drain bolt, then reinstall the drain bolt.
▶ Tightening torque:
30 lbf·ft (40 N·m, 4.0 kgf·m)
10. Pour the recommended engine oil into the engine.
▶ Engine oil change capacity (including filter):
4.6 US qt (4.4 L)
11. Reinstall the engine oil fill cap securely and start the engine.
12. Run the engine for a few minutes, and then check that there is no leak from the drain bolt or oil filter.
13. Stop the engine, wait for three minutes, and then check the oil level on the dipstick.
▶ If necessary, add more engine oil.

Changing the Engine Oil and Oil Filter

You will need a special wrench to replace the oil filter. You can buy this wrench from a dealer.

When installing the new oil filter, follow the instructions supplied with the oil filter.

Reinstall the engine oil fill cap. Start the engine. The low oil pressure indicator should go off within five seconds. If it does not, turn off the engine, and check your work.

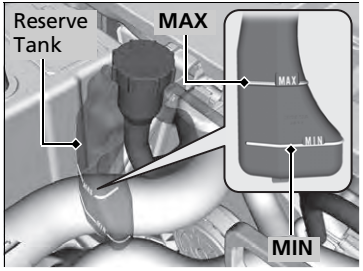
Engine Coolant

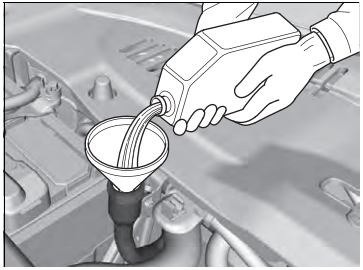
Specified coolant: Acura Long Life Antifreeze/Coolant Type 2

This coolant is premixed with 50% antifreeze and 50% water. Do not add any straight antifreeze or water.

We recommend you check the engine coolant level every time you refuel. Check the reserve tank first. If it is completely empty, also check the coolant level in the radiator. Add the engine coolant accordingly.

■ Reserve Tank





1. **Make sure the engine and radiator are cool.**
2. Check the amount of coolant in the reserve tank.
   ▶ If the coolant level is below the **MIN** mark, add the specified coolant until it reaches the **MAX** mark.
3. Inspect the cooling system for leaks.

Continued

Engine Coolant

⚠WARNING

Removing the radiator cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.

Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the radiator cap.

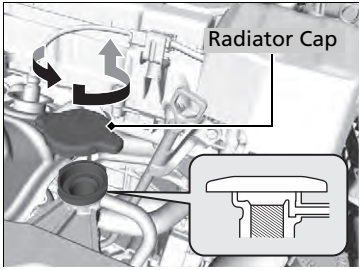
NOTICE

Genuine Acura engine coolant is a 50/50 mixture of antifreeze and water that can withstand freezing at temperatures as low as about -31°F (-35°C). If your vehicle is consistently subjected to temperatures below this, the concentration of antifreeze in the coolant should be increased. Consult a dealer for details.

If Acura antifreeze/coolant is not available, you may use another major brand of non-silicate coolant as a temporary replacement. Check that it is a high quality coolant recommended for aluminum engines. Continued use of any non-Acura coolant can result in corrosion, causing the cooling system to malfunction or fail. Have the cooling system flushed and refilled with Acura antifreeze/coolant as soon as possible.

Do not add rust inhibitors or other additives to your vehicle's cooling system. They may not be compatible with the coolant or with the engine components.

■ Radiator



1. **Make sure the engine and radiator are cool.**
2. Turn the radiator cap 1/8 turn counter-clockwise and relieve any pressure in the cooling system.
3. Push down and turn the radiator cap counterclockwise to remove it.
4. The coolant level should be up to the base of the filler neck. Add coolant if it is low.
5. Put the radiator cap back on, and tighten it fully.

Radiator

NOTICE

Pour the fluid slowly and carefully so you do not spill any. Clean up any spills immediately; they can damage components in the engine compartment.

Transmission Fluid

■ Dual Clutch Transmission Fluid

Specified fluid: Acura Automatic Transmission Fluid ATF-TYPE 2.0

Have a dealer check the fluid level and replace if necessary.

Do not attempt to check or change the dual clutch transmission fluid yourself.

Dual Clutch Transmission Fluid

NOTICE

Do not mix Acura ATF-TYPE 2.0 with other transmission fluids.

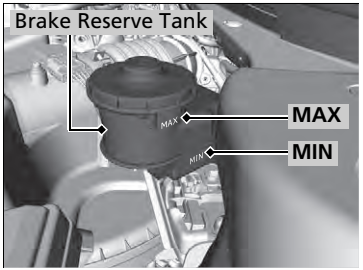
Using a transmission fluid other than Acura ATF-TYPE 2.0 may adversely affect the operation and durability of your vehicle's transmission, and damage the transmission.

Any damage caused by using a transmission fluid that is not equivalent to Acura ATF-TYPE 2.0 is not covered by Acura's new vehicle limited warranty.

Brake Fluid

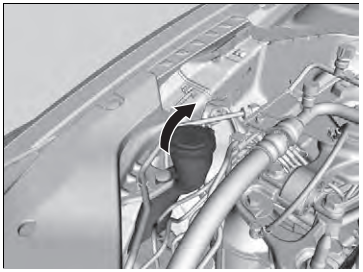
Specified fluid: Acura Heavy Duty Brake Fluid DOT 3

■ Checking the Brake Fluid



The fluid level should be between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks on the side of the reserve tank.

Refilling Window Washer Fluid



U.S. models

Check the amount of window washer fluid by looking at the reservoir.
If the level is low, fill the washer reservoir.

Canadian models

If the washer fluid is low, a message appears on the multi-information display.

Pour the washer fluid carefully. Do not overflow the reservoir.

Brake Fluid

NOTICE

Brake fluid marked DOT 5 is not compatible with your vehicle's braking system and can cause extensive damage.

If the specified brake fluid is not available, you should use only DOT 3 or DOT 4 fluid from a sealed container as a temporary replacement.

Using any non-Acura brake fluid can cause corrosion and decrease the longevity of the system. Have the brake system flushed and refilled with Acura Heavy Duty Brake Fluid DOT 3 as soon as possible.

If the brake fluid level is at or below the **MIN** mark, have a dealer inspect the vehicle for leaks or worn brake pads as soon as possible.

Refilling Window Washer Fluid

NOTICE

Do not use engine antifreeze or a vinegar/water solution in the windshield washer reservoir. Antifreeze can damage your vehicle's paint. A vinegar/water solution can damage the windshield washer pump.
Use only commercially available windshield washer fluid.
Avoid prolonged use of hard water to prevent lime scale build up.

Headlights

Headlights are LED type. Have an authorized Acura dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Front Turn Signal, Parking/Daytime Running and Front Side Marker Lights

Front turn signal, parking/daytime running and front side marker lights are LED type. Have an authorized Acura dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Fog Lights*

Fog lights are LED type. Have an authorized Acura dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Headlights

The headlight aim is set by the factory, and does not need to be adjusted. However, if you regularly carry heavy items in the trunk, have the aiming readjusted at a dealer or by a qualified technician.

* Not available on all models

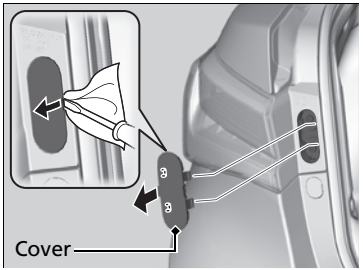
Taillights, Brake and Rear Side Marker Lights

Taillights, brake and rear side marker lights are LED type. Have an authorized Acura dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

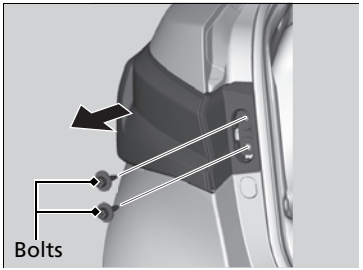
Rear Turn Signal Light Bulbs

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

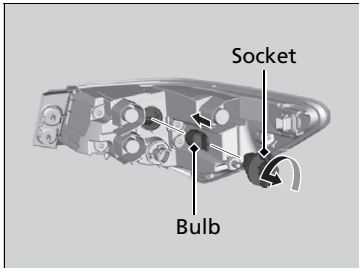
Rear Turn Signal Light: 21 W (Amber)



1. Pry on the edge of the cover using a flat-tip screwdriver to remove the cover.
▶ Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.



2. Remove the mounting bolts.
3. Pull the light assembly out of the rear pillar.

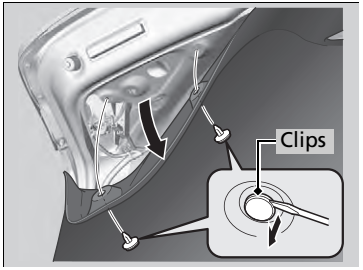


4. Turn the socket counter-clockwise and remove it.
Remove the old bulb.
5. Insert a new bulb.

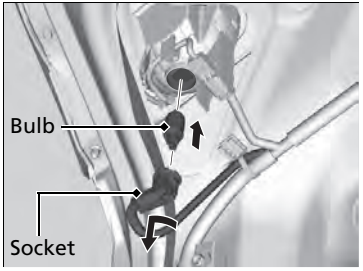
Back-Up Light Bulbs

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

Back-Up Light: 16 W



1. Remove the holding clips using a flat-tip screwdriver, then pull the lining back.

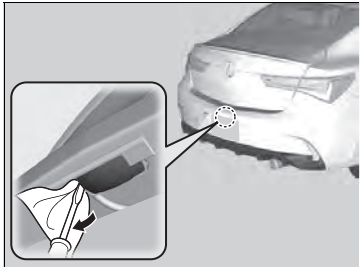


2. Turn the socket counter-clockwise and remove it.
3. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

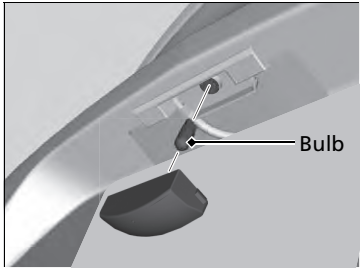
Rear License Plate Light Bulb

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

Rear License Plate Light: 5 W



1. Remove the lens by prying on the edge of the lens using a flat-tip screwdriver.
▶ Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.



2. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

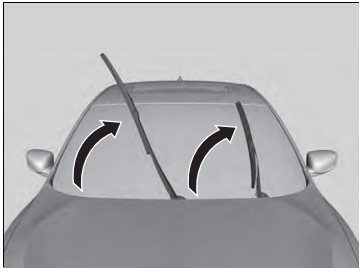
High-Mount Brake Light

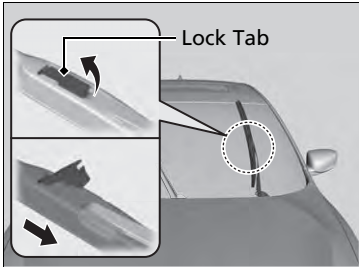
High-mount brake light is LED type. Have an authorized Acura dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Checking Wiper Blades

If the wiper blade rubber has deteriorated, it will leave streaks and the hard surfaces of the blade may scratch the window glass.

Changing the Wiper Blade Rubber





1. Lift the driver side wiper arm first, then the passenger side.

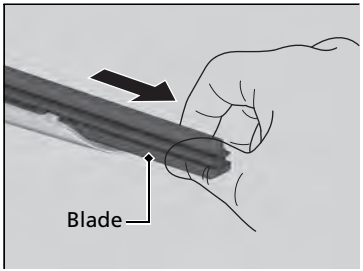
2. Pry on the edge of the lock tab using a flat-tip screwdriver to push it up.
Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.

3. Slide the holder off the wiper arm.

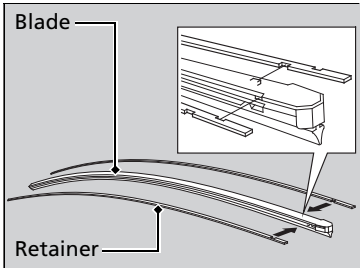
Changing the Wiper Blade Rubber

NOTICE

Avoid dropping the wiper arm onto the windshield, it may damage the wiper arm and/or the windshield.



4. Slide the wiper blade out of the holder by pulling the tabbed end out.



5. Remove the retainers from the wiper blade that has been removed, and mount to a new wiper blade.
▶ Correctly align the wiper blade protrusion and the retainer grooves.

6. Slide the new wiper blade onto the holder from the bottom end.

7. Slide the holder onto the wiper arm, then push down the lock tab.

8. Lower the passenger side wiper arm first, then the driver side.

Checking Tires

To safely operate your vehicle, your tires must be of the proper type and size, in good condition with adequate tread, and properly inflated.

■ Inflation guidelines

Properly inflated tires provide the best combination of handling, tread life, and comfort. Refer to the driver's doorjamb label or specifications page for the specified pressure.

Underinflated tires wear unevenly, adversely affect handling and fuel economy, and are more likely to fail from overheating.

Overinflated tires make your vehicle ride harshly, are more prone to road hazards, and wear unevenly.

Every day before you drive, look at each of the tires. If one looks lower than the others, check the pressure with a tire gauge.

At least once a month or before long trips, use a gauge to measure the pressure in all tires, including the spare. Even tires in good condition can lose 1–2 psi (10–20 kPa, 0.1–0.2 kgf/cm^2) per month.

■ Inspection guidelines

Every time you check inflation, also examine the tires and valve stems.
Look for:

- Bumps or bulges on the side or in the tread. Replace the tire if you find any cuts, splits, or cracks in the side of the tire. Replace it if you see fabric or cord.
- Remove any foreign objects and inspect for air leaks.
- Uneven tread wear. Have a dealer check the wheel alignment.
- Excessive tread wear.
  ➡ **Wear Indicators** P. 537
- Cracks or other damage around valve stem.

Checking Tires

⚠WARNING

Using tires that are excessively worn or improperly inflated can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding tire inflation and maintenance.

Measure the air pressure when tires are cold. This means the vehicle has been parked for at least three hours, or driven less than 1 mile (1.6 km). If necessary, add or release air until the specified pressure is reached.

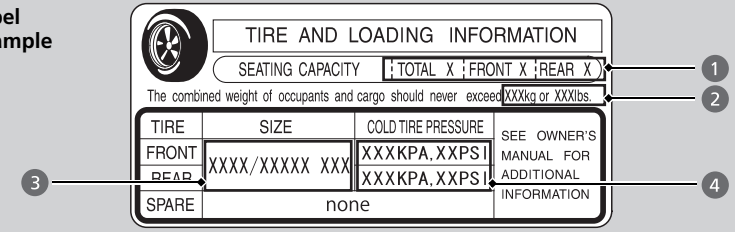
If checked when hot, tire pressure can be as much as 4–6 psi (30–40 kPa, 0.3–0.4 kgf/cm^2) higher than if checked when cold.

Have a dealer check the tires if you feel a consistent vibration while driving. New tires and any that have been removed and reinstalled should be properly balanced.

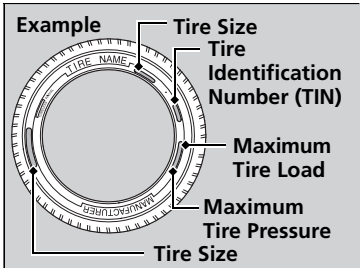
Tire and Loading Information Label

The label attached to the driver's doorjamb provides necessary tire and loading information.

Label Example



Tire Labeling



The tires that came on your vehicle have a number of markings. Those you should be aware of are described as shown.

■ Tire Sizes

Whenever tires are replaced, they should be replaced with tires of the same size.

Continued

≫Tire and Loading Information Label

The tire and loading information label attached to the driver's doorjamb contains:

1. The number of people your vehicle can carry.
2. The total weight your vehicle can carry. Do not exceed this weight.
3. The original tire sizes for front, rear and spare.
4. The proper cold tire pressure for front, rear and spare.

≫Tire Sizes

Following is an example of tire size with an explanation of what each component means.

P215/45R17 87V

P: Vehicle type (P indicates passenger vehicle).
215: Tire width in millimeters.
45: Aspect ratio (the tire's section height as a percentage of its width).
R: Tire construction code (R indicates radial).
17: Rim diameter in inches.
87: Load index (a numerical code associated with the maximum load the tire can carry).
V: Speed symbol (an alphabetical code indicating the maximum speed rating).

■ Tire Identification Number (TIN)

The tire identification number (TIN) is a group of numbers and letters that look like the example in the side column. TIN is located on the sidewall of the tire.

■ Glossary of Tire Terminology

Cold Tire Pressure – The tire air pressure when the vehicle has been parked for at least three hours or driven less than 1 mile (1.6 km).
Load Rating – Means the maximum load that a tire is rated to carry for a given inflation pressure.
Maximum Inflation Pressure – The maximum tire air pressure that the tire can hold.
Maximum Load Rating – Means the load rating for a tire at the maximum permissible inflation pressure for that tire.
Recommended Inflation Pressure – The cold tire inflation pressure recommended by the manufacturer.
Treadwear Indicators (TWI) – Means the projections within the principal grooves designed to give a visual indication of the degrees of wear of the tread.

Tire Identification Number (TIN)

DOT B97R FW6X 2209
DOT: This indicates that the tire meets all requirements of the U.S. Department of Transportation.
B97R: Manufacturer's identification mark.
FW6X: Tire type code.
22 09: Date of manufacture.
22: Year
09: Week

DOT Tire Quality Grading (U.S. Vehicles)

The tires on your vehicle meet all U.S. Federal Safety Requirements. All tires are also graded for treadwear, traction, and temperature performance according to Department of Transportation (DOT) standards. The following explains these gradings.

■ Uniform Tire Quality Grading

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width.

■ Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half (1 1/2) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Uniform Tire Quality Grading

For example:
Treadwear 200
Traction AA
Temperature A

All passenger car tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades.

Continued

■ Traction

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C. Those grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

■ Temperature

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

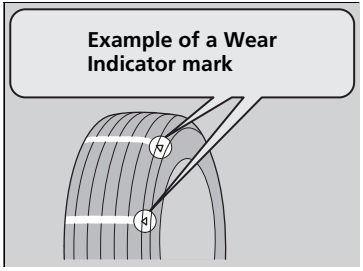
Traction

Warning: The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.

Temperature

Warning: The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

Wear Indicators



The groove where the wear indicator is located is 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) shallower than elsewhere on the tire. If the tread has worn so that the indicator is exposed, replace the tire. **Worn out tires have poor traction on wet roads.**

Tire Service Life

The life of your tires is dependent on many factors, including driving habits, road conditions, vehicle loading, inflation pressure, maintenance history, speed, and environmental conditions (even when the tires are not in use).

In addition to regular inspections and inflation pressure maintenance, it is recommended that you have annual inspections performed once the tires reach five years old. All tires, including the spare, should be removed from service after 10 years from the date of manufacture, regardless of their condition or state of wear.

Checking Tires

High speed driving

We recommend that you do not drive faster than the posted speed limits and conditions allow. If you drive at sustained high speeds (over 99 mph or 160 km/h), adjust the cold tire pressures as shown below to avoid excessive heat build up and sudden tire failure.

Tire Size	225/40R18 92V*1	
	P215/45R17 87V*2	
Pressure	Front	38 psi (260 kPa, 2.6 kgf/cm²)
	Rear	36 psi (250 kPa, 2.5 kgf/cm²)

*1: Vehicle with 18 inch tires

*2: Vehicle with 17 inch tires

Tire and Wheel Replacement

Replace your tires with radials of the same size, load range, speed rating, and maximum cold tire pressure rating (as shown on the tire's sidewall). Using tires of a different size or construction can cause certain vehicle systems such as the ABS and Vehicle Stability Assist® (VSA®) system to work incorrectly.

It is best to replace all four tires at the same time. If that isn't possible, replace the front or rear tires in pairs.

Whenever you have a tire replaced or reset, make sure that the rubber valve stem is replaced and that the TPMS sensor is transferred from the old valve stem to the new one.
If you replace a wheel, make sure the wheel's specifications match those of the original wheels.

Tire and Wheel Replacement

⚠WARNING

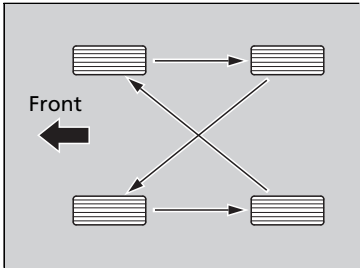
Installing improper tires on your vehicle can affect handling and stability. This can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Always use the size and type of tires recommended in this owner's manual.

Tire Rotation

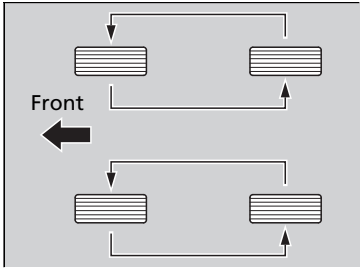
Rotating tires according to the maintenance messages on the multi-information display helps to distribute wear more evenly and increase tire life.

■ Tires without rotation marks



Rotate the tires as shown here.

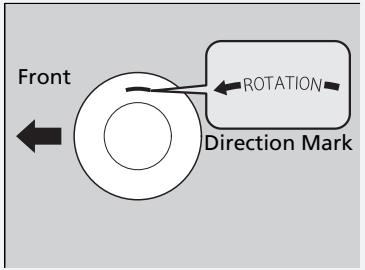
■ Tires with rotation marks



Rotate the tires as shown here.

Tire Rotation

Tires with directional tread patterns should only be rotated front to back (not from one side to the other). Directional tires should be mounted with the rotation indication mark facing forward, as shown below.



Winter Tires

If driving on snowy or frozen roads, mount all season marked **M+S** tires, snow tires, or tire chains; reduce speed; and maintain sufficient distance between vehicles when driving.

Be particularly careful when operating the steering wheel or brakes to prevent skidding.

Use tire chains, snow tires, or all season tires when necessary or according to the law.

When mounting, refer to the following points.

For winter tires:
- Select the size and load ranges that are the same as the original tires.
- Mount the tires to all four wheels.

For tire chains:
- Install them on the front tires only.
- Because your vehicle has limited tire clearance, we strongly recommend using the chains listed below:

Models with P215/45R17 87V tires

Cable-type: SCC Radial Chain SC1032

Models with 225/40R18 92V tires

Cable-type: SCC Radial Chain SC1036

- Follow the chain manufacturer's instruction when installing. Mount them as tightly as you can.
- Check that the chains do not touch the brake lines or suspension.
- Drive slowly.

Winter Tires

⚠WARNING

Using the wrong chains, or not properly installing chains, can damage the brake lines and cause a crash in which you can be seriously injured or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding the selection and use of tire chains.

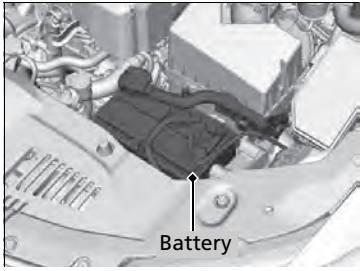
NOTICE

Traction devices that are the wrong size or improperly installed can damage your vehicle's brake lines, suspension, body, and wheels. Stop driving if they are hitting any part of the vehicle.

When tire chains are mounted, follow the chain manufacturer's instructions regarding vehicle operational limits.

If your vehicle is equipped with summer tires, be aware that these tires are not designed for winter driving conditions. For more information, contact a dealer.

Checking the Battery



The condition of the battery is monitored by a sensor located on the negative terminal of the battery. If there is a problem with this sensor, the multi-information display will display a warning message. If this happens, have you vehicle inspected by a dealer.

Check the battery terminals for corrosion monthly.

If your vehicle's battery is disconnected or goes dead:

- The audio system is disabled.
  Reactivating the audio system P. 180
- The clock resets.
  Clock P. 106

Charging the Battery

Disconnect both battery cables to prevent damaging your vehicle's electrical system. Always disconnect the negative (–) cable first, and reconnect it last.

Battery

⚠WARNING

The battery gives off explosive hydrogen gas during normal operation.

A spark or flame can cause the battery to explode with enough force to kill or seriously hurt you.

When conducting any battery maintenance, wear protective clothing and a face shield, or have a skilled technician do it.

WARNING: Battery post, terminals, and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds.
Wash your hands after handling.

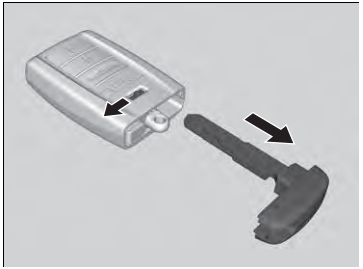
When you find corrosion, clean the battery terminals by applying a baking powder and water solution. Clean the terminals with a damp towel. Cloth/towel dry the battery. Coat the terminals with grease to help prevent future corrosion.

When replacing the battery, the replacement must be of the same specifications.
Consult a dealer for more information.

Replacing the Button Battery

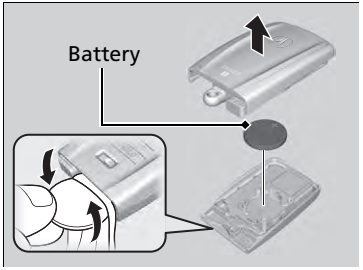
Models without remote control engine start system

If the indicator does not come on when the button is pressed, replace the battery.



Battery type: CR2032

1. Remove the built-in key.



2. Remove the upper half of the cover by carefully prying on the edge with a coin.
- ▶ Remove carefully to avoid losing the buttons.
- ▶ Wrap a coin with a cloth to prevent scratching the keyless access remote.

3. Make sure to replace the battery with the correct polarity.

Replacing the Button Battery

⚠WARNING

CHEMICAL BURN HAZARD
The battery that powers the remote transmitter can cause severe internal burns and can even lead to death if swallowed.
Keep new and used batteries away from children.
If you suspect that a child has swallowed the battery, seek medical attention immediately.

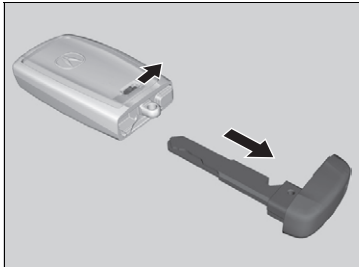
NOTICE

An improperly disposed of battery can damage the environment. Always confirm local regulations for battery disposal.

Replacement batteries are commercially available or at a dealer.

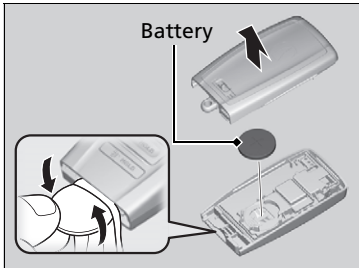
Models with remote control engine start system

If the indicator does not come on when the button is pressed, replace the battery.



Battery type: CR2032

1. Remove the built-in key.
▶ As a convenience, lightly place masking tape over the remote buttons to hold them in place.



2. Remove the upper half of the cover by carefully prying on the edge with a coin.
▶ Wrap a coin with a cloth to prevent scratching the transmitter.
3. Press down on the center of the assembly and remove the battery.
▶ When removing the button battery, be careful not to touch parts around it.
4. Make sure to replace the battery with the correct polarity.

Replacing the Button Battery

Models with remote control engine start system

NOTICE

The Remote transmitter is equipped with two batteries: A standard replaceable CR2032 coin button battery and an integral non-replaceable rechargeable battery. To prevent permanent damage to the rechargeable battery, replace the CR2032 battery every three to four years.

Air Conditioning

To ensure proper and safe operation, the Society of Automotive Engineers (SAE J2845) recommends that the refrigerant system only be serviced by trained and certified technicians.

Never repair or replace the air conditioning evaporator (cooling coil) with one removed from a used or salvaged vehicle.

New replacement mobile air conditioning evaporators must be certified (and labeled) as meeting SAE Standard J2842.

Dust and Pollen Filter

The climate control system is equipped with a dust and pollen filter that collects pollen, dust, and other debris in the air. The Maintenance Minder™ messages will let you know when to replace the filter.

We recommend that you replace the dust and pollen filter sooner when using your vehicle in areas with high concentrations of dust.

Climate Control System Maintenance

NOTICE

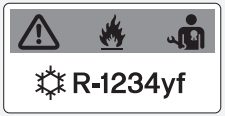
Vented refrigerant is harmful to the environment. To avoid refrigerant from venting, never replace the evaporator with one removed from a used or salvaged vehicle.

Refrigerant in your vehicle's air conditioning system is flammable and can be ignited during servicing if proper procedures are not followed.

The air conditioner label is found under the hood:

Safety Labels P. 66
Specifications P. 596

Canadian models



: Caution
: Flammable Refrigerant
: Requires Registered Technician to Service
: Air Conditioning System

Dust and Pollen Filter

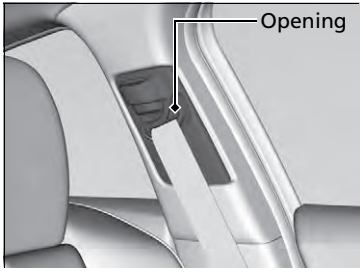
If the airflow from the climate control system deteriorates noticeably, and the windows fog up easily, the filter may need to be replaced. Please contact a dealer for replacement.

Interior Care

Use a damp cloth with a mixture of mild detergent and warm water to remove dirt. Use a clean cloth to remove detergent residue.

Cleaning Seat Belts

Use a soft brush with a mixture of mild soap and warm water to clean the seat belts. Let the belts air dry. Wipe the openings of the seat belt anchors using a clean cloth.



Interior Care

Do not spill liquids inside the vehicle. Electrical devices and systems may malfunction if liquids are splashed on them.

Do not use silicone based sprays on electrical devices such as audio devices and switches. Doing so may cause the items to malfunction or cause a fire inside the vehicle.
If a silicone based spray is inadvertently used on electrical devices, consult a dealer.

Depending on their composition, chemicals and liquid aromatics may cause discoloration, wrinkles, and cracking to resin-based parts and textiles.
Do not use alkali solvents or organic solvents such as benzene or gasoline.

After using chemicals, make sure to gently wipe them away using a dry cloth.
Do not place used cloths on top of resin based parts or textiles for long periods of time without washing.

Continued

■ Cleaning the Window

Wipe using a glass cleaner.

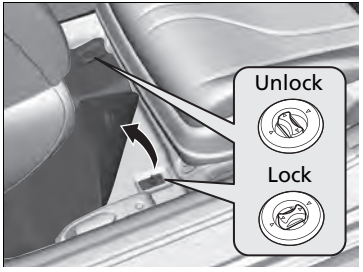
Cleaning the Window

Wires are mounted to the inside of the rear window. Wipe along the same direction as the wires with a soft cloth so as not to damage them.

Be careful not to spill fluids, such as water or glass cleaner, on or around the cover of both the front sensor camera and the rainfall/light* sensor.

- **Automatic Operation (automatic lighting control)** P. 140
- **Automatic Intermittent Wipers*** P. 147
- **Front Sensor Camera** P. 488

■ Floor Mats



The front and rear floor mats hook over floor anchors, which keep them from sliding forward. To remove a mat for cleaning, turn the anchor knobs to the unlock position. When reinstalling the mat after cleaning, turn the knobs to the lock position.

Do not put additional floor mats on top of the anchored mats.

Floor Mats

If you use any floor mats that were not originally provided with your vehicle, make sure they are designed for your specific vehicle, fit correctly, and are securely anchored by the floor anchors.
Position the rear seat floor mat properly. If they are not properly positioned, the floor mat can interfere with the front seat functions.

* Not available on all models

Maintaining Genuine Leather

To properly clean leather:

1. Use a vacuum or soft dry cloth first to remove any dirt or dust.

2. Clean the leather with a soft cloth dampened with a solution comprised of 90% water and 10% neutral soap.

3. Wipe away any soap residue with a clean damp cloth.

4. Wipe away residual water and allow leather to air dry in the shade.

Maintaining Genuine Leather

It is important to clean or wipe away dirt or dust as soon as possible. Spills can soak into leather resulting in stains. Dirt or dust can cause abrasions in the leather. In addition, please note that some dark colored clothing can rub onto the leather seats resulting in discoloration or stains.

Exterior Care

Dust off the vehicle body after you drive. Regularly inspect your vehicle for scratches on painted surfaces. A scratch on a painted surface can result in body rust. If you find a scratch, promptly repair it.

■ Washing the Vehicle

Wash the vehicle regularly. Wash more frequently when driving in the following conditions:

- If driving on roads with road salt.
- If driving in coastal areas.
- If tar, soot, bird droppings, insects, or tree sap are stuck to painted surfaces.

■ Using an Automated Car Wash

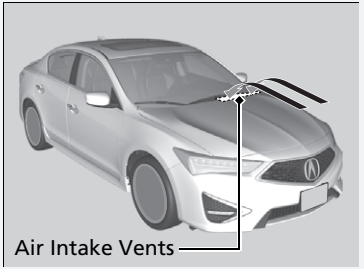
- Make sure to follow the instructions indicated on the automated car wash.
- Fold in the door mirrors.
- For models equipped with automatic intermittent wipers, turn the wipers off.

■ Using High Pressure Cleaners

- Keep sufficient distance between the cleaning nozzle and the vehicle body.
- Take particular care around the windows. Standing too close may cause water to enter the vehicle interior.
- Do not spray high pressure water directly into the engine compartment. Instead, use low pressure water and a mild detergent.

Washing the Vehicle

Do not spray water into the air intake vents. It can cause a malfunction.



■ Applying Wax

A good coat of automotive body wax helps protect your vehicle's paint from the elements. Wax will wear off over time and expose your vehicle's paint to the elements, so reapply as necessary.

■ Maintaining the Bumpers and Other Resin Coated Parts

If you get gasoline, oil, engine coolant, or battery fluid on resin coated parts, they may be stained or the coating may peel. Promptly wipe it away using a soft cloth and clean water.

■ Cleaning the Window

Wipe using a glass cleaner.

■ Maintaining Aluminum Wheels

Aluminum is susceptible to deterioration caused by salt and other road contaminants. When necessary, as early as possible use a sponge and mild detergent to wipe away these contaminants. Do not use a stiff brush or harsh chemicals (including some commercial wheel cleaners). These can damage the protective finish on aluminum alloy wheels, resulting in corrosion. Depending on the type of finish, the wheels also may lose their luster or appear burnished. To avoid water stains, wipe the wheels dry with a cloth while they are still wet.

Applying Wax

NOTICE

Chemical solvents and strong cleaners can damage the paint, metal, and plastic on your vehicle. Wipe away spills immediately.

Maintaining the Bumpers and Other Resin Coated Parts

Ask a dealer about the correct coating material when you want to repair the painted surface of the parts made of resin.

Continued

■ Fogged Exterior Light Lenses

The inside lenses of exterior lights (headlights, brake lights, etc.) may fog temporarily if you have driven in the rain, or after the vehicle has been run through a car wash. Dew condensation also may build up inside the lenses when there is a significant enough difference between the ambient and inside lens temperatures (similar to vehicle windows fogging up in rainy conditions). These conditions are natural processes, not structural design problems in the exterior lights.
Lens design characteristics may result in moisture developing on the light lens frame surfaces. This also is not a malfunction.
However, if you see large amounts of water accumulation, or large water drops building up inside the lenses, have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

Accessories

When installing accessories, check the following:

- Do not install accessories on the windshield. They can obstruct your view and delay your reaction to driving conditions.
- Do not install any accessories over areas marked SRS Airbag, on the sides or backs of the front seats, on front or side pillars, or near the side windows. Accessories installed in these areas may interfere with proper operation of the vehicle's airbags or may be propelled into you or another occupant if the airbags deploy.
- Be sure electronic accessories do not overload electrical circuits or interfere with proper operation of your vehicle.
  Fuses P. 590
- Before installing any electronic accessory, have the installer contact a dealer for assistance. If possible, have a dealer inspect the final installation.

Accessories and Modifications

⚠WARNING

Improper accessories or modifications can affect your vehicle's handling, stability, and performance, and cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding accessories and modifications.

Acura Genuine accessories are recommended to ensure proper operation on your vehicle.

Modifications

Do not modify your vehicle in a manner that may affect its handling, stability, or reliability, or install non-genuine Acura parts or accessories that may have a similar effect.

Even minor modifications to vehicle systems can affect overall vehicle performance. Always make sure all equipment is properly installed and maintained, and do not make any modification to your vehicle or its systems that might cause your vehicle to no longer meet federal, state, province, territory, and local regulations.

The on-board diagnostic port (OBD-II/SAE J1962 connector) installed on this vehicle is intended to be used with automobile system diagnostic devices or with other devices that Acura has approved. Use of any other type of device may adversely affect the vehicle's electronic systems or allow them to be compromised, possibly resulting in a system malfunction, drained battery, or other unexpected problems.

Do not modify or attempt to repair any of the electrical components.

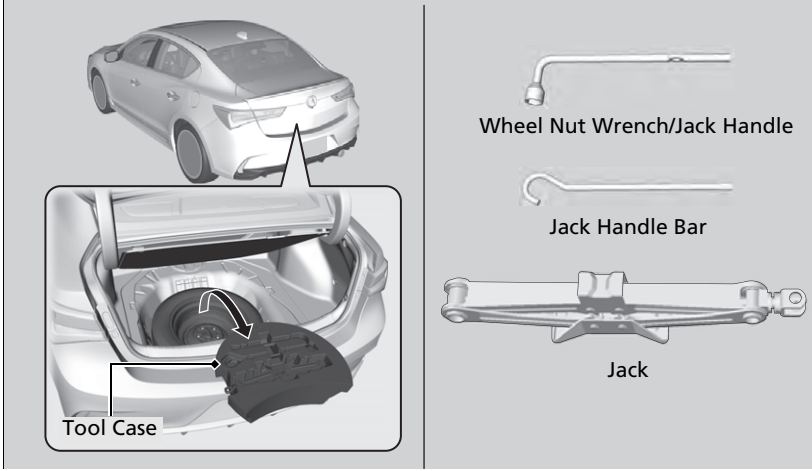
Handling the Unexpected

This chapter explains how to handle unexpected troubles.

Tools
Types of Tools 554
If a Tire Goes Flat
Temporarily Repairing a Flat Tire 555
Models with optional spare tire
Changing a Flat Tire 570
Engine Does Not Start
Checking the Engine 577
If the Keyless Access Remote Battery is Weak 578
Emergency Engine Stop 579
Jump Starting 580
Shift Lever Does Not Move 583
Overheating
How to Handle Overheating 584
Indicator, Coming On/Blinking
If the Low Oil Pressure Indicator Comes On 586
If the Charging System Indicator Comes On 586
If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks 587
If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On 588
If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator Comes On 588
If the Low Tire Pressure/TPMS Indicator Comes On or Blinks 589
Fuses
Fuse Locations 590
Inspecting and Changing Fuses 592
Emergency Towing 593

Types of Tools

Models with optional spare tire



Types of Tools

The tools are stored in the cargo area.

Temporarily Repairing a Flat Tire

If the tire has a large cut or is otherwise severely damaged, you will need to have the vehicle towed. If the tire only has a small puncture, from a nail for instance, you can use the temporary tire repair kit so that you can drive to the nearest service station for a more permanent repair.

If a tire goes flat while driving, grasp the steering wheel firmly, and brake gradually to reduce speed. Then stop in a safe place.

1. Park the vehicle on a firm, level, and non-slippery surface and apply the parking brake.
2. Move the shift lever to P.
3. Turn on the hazard warning lights and set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).

Temporarily Repairing a Flat Tire

The kit should not be used in the following situations. Instead, contact a dealer or roadside assistance to have the vehicle towed.

- The tire sealant has expired.
- More than one tire is punctured.
- The puncture or cut is larger than 3/16 inch (4 mm).
- The tire side wall is damaged or the puncture is outside the contact area.



When the puncture is:	Kit Use
Smaller than 3/16 inch (4 mm)	Yes
Larger than 3/16 inch (4 mm)	No

- Damage has been caused by driving with the tire extremely under inflated.
- The tire bead is no longer seated.
- The rim is damaged.

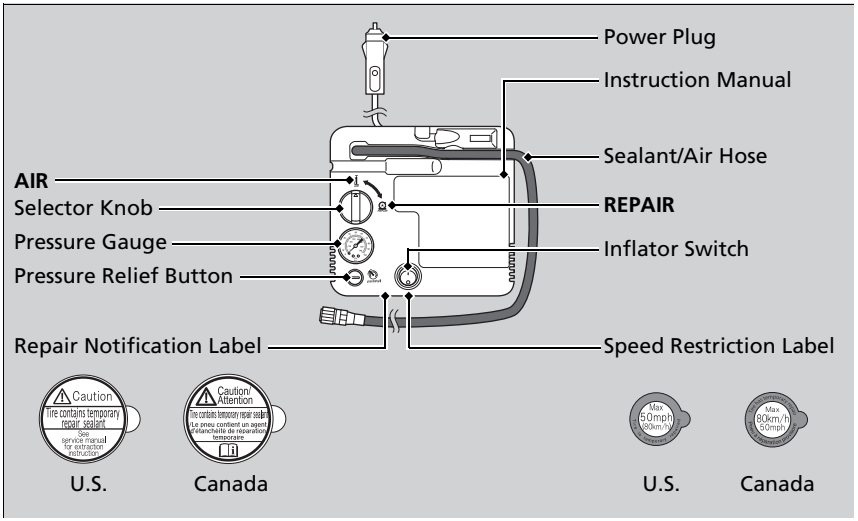
Do not remove a nail or screw that punctured the tire. If you remove it from the tire, you may not be able to repair the puncture using the kit.

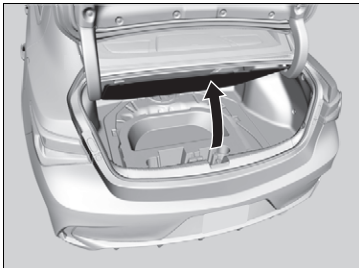
NOTICE

Do not use a puncture-repairing agent other than the one provided in the kit that came with your vehicle. If a different agent is used, you may permanently damage the tire pressure sensor.

Continued

■ Getting Ready to Temporarily Repair the Flat Tire



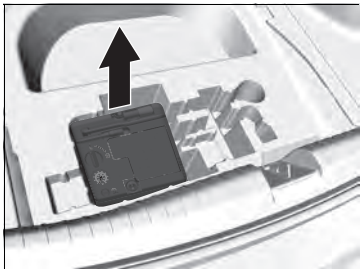


1. Open the trunk floor lid.

Getting Ready to Temporarily Repair the Flat Tire

Repair notification label and speed restriction label are applied to the side of temporary tire repair kit.

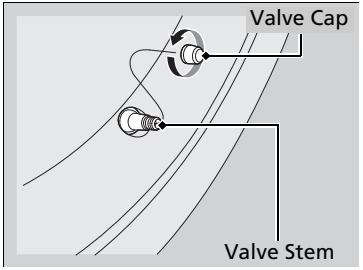
When making a temporary repair, carefully read the instruction manual provided with the kit.



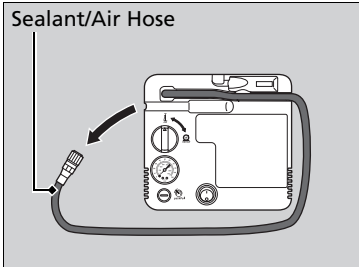
2. Remove the kit.
3. Place the kit face up, on flat ground near the flat tire, and away from traffic. Do not place the kit on its side.

Continued

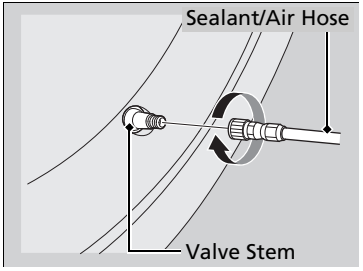
■ Injecting Sealant and Air



1. Remove the valve cap from the tire valve stem.



2. Remove the sealant/air hose from the packaging.



3. Attach the sealant/air hose onto the tire valve stem. Screw it until it is tight.

Injecting Sealant and Air

⚠WARNING

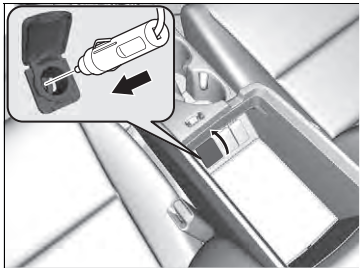
Tire sealant contains substances that are harmful and can be fatal if swallowed.

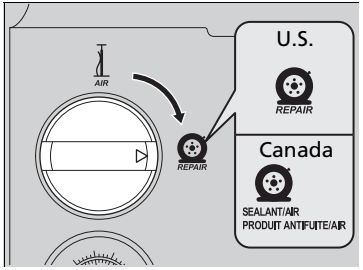
If accidentally swallowed, do not induce vomiting. Drink plenty of water and get medical attention immediately.

For skin or eye contact, flush with cool water and get medical attention if necessary.

In cold temperatures, the sealant may not flow easily. In this situation, warm it up for five minutes before using.

The sealant can permanently stain clothing and other materials. Be careful during handling and wipe away any spills immediately.





4. Plug in the compressor to the accessory power socket.
▶ Be careful not to pinch the cord in a door or window.

5. Start the engine.
▶ Keep the engine running while injecting sealant and air.
Carbon Monoxide Gas P. 65

6. Turn the selector knob to **REPAIR***1, **SEALANT/AIR***2, **PRODUIT ANTIFUITE/AIR***2.

Injecting Sealant and Air

⚠WARNING

Running the engine with the vehicle in an enclosed or even partly enclosed area can cause a rapid build-up of toxic carbon monoxide.

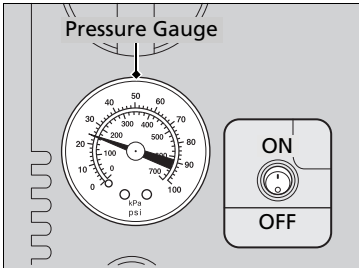
Breathing this colorless, odorless gas can cause unconsciousness and even death. Only run the engine to power the air compressor with the vehicle outdoors.

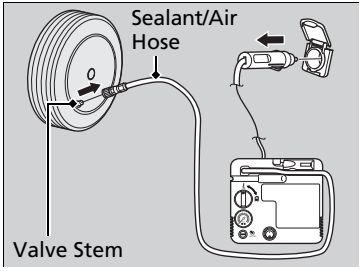
NOTICE

Do not operate the temporary tire repair kit compressor for more than 15 minutes. The compressor can overheat and become permanently damaged.

*1: U.S. models
*2: Canadian models

Continued





7. Press the inflator switch to turn on the compressor.
▶ The compressor starts injecting sealant and air into the tire.
▶ When the sealant injection is complete, continue to add air.

8. Models with P215/45R17 87V tires
After the air pressure reaches front: 35 psi (240 kPa)/rear: 33 psi (230 kPa), turn off the kit.

Models with 225/40R18 92V tires
After the air pressure reaches front: 33 psi (230 kPa)/rear: 32 psi (220 kPa), turn off the kit.
▶ To check the pressure, occasionally turn off the compressor, and read the gauge.

9. Unplug the power plug from the accessory power socket.

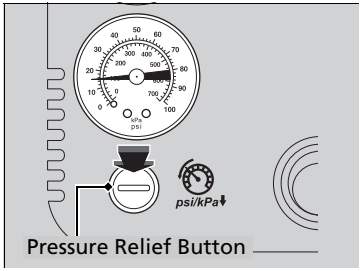
10. Unscrew the sealant/air hose from the tire valve stem. Reinstall the valve cap.

Injecting Sealant and Air

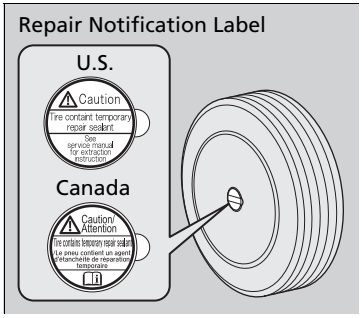
Until the sealant injection is complete, the pressure shown on the pressure gauge will appear higher than actual. After the sealant injection is complete the pressure will drop and then begin to rise again as the tire is inflated with air. This is normal. To accurately measure the air pressure using the gauge, turn the air compressor off only after the sealant injection is complete.

If the required air pressure is not reached within 10 minutes, the tire may be too severely damaged for the kit to provide the necessary seal, and your vehicle will need to be towed.

See an Acura dealer for a replacement sealant bottle and proper disposal of an empty bottle.



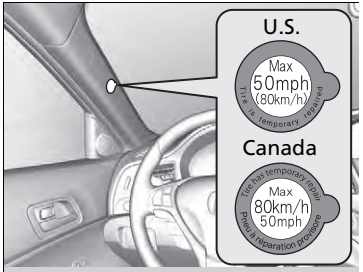
11. Press the pressure relief button until the gauge returns to 0 psi (0 kPa).



12. Apply the repair notification label to the flat surface of the wheel.
▶ The wheel surface must be clean to ensure the label adheres properly.

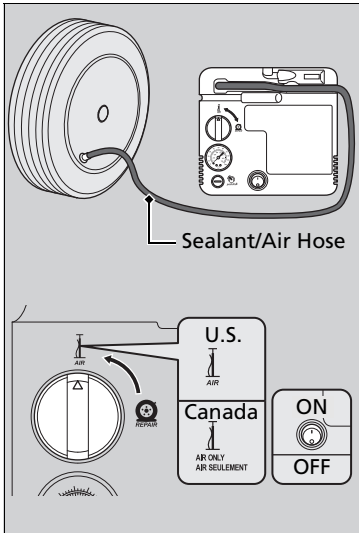
Continued

■ Distributing the Sealant in the Tire



Speed Restriction Label

1. Apply the speed restriction label to the location as shown.
2. Drive the vehicle for about 10 minutes.
▶ Do not exceed 50 mph (80 km/h).
3. Stop the vehicle in a safe place.



4. Recheck the air pressure using the sealant/air hose on the compressor.

5. Turn the selector knob to **AIR**[*1], **AIR ONLY**[*2], **AIR SEULEMENT**[*2].

▶ Do not turn the air compressor on to check the pressure.

➡ **Inflating an Under-inflated Tire** P. 567

*1: U.S. models

*2: Canadian models

Continued

6. If the air pressure is

- Less than 25 psi (175 kPa):

Do not add air or continue driving. The leak is too severe. Call for help and have your vehicle towed.

➡ **Emergency Towing** P. 593

Models with P215/45R17 87V tires

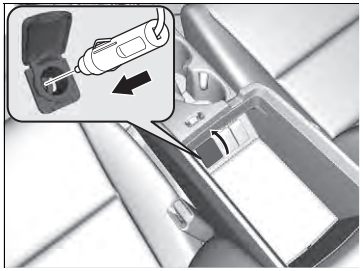
- Front: 35 psi (240 kPa)/rear: 33 psi (230 kPa) or more:

Models with 225/40R18 92V tires

- Front: 33 psi (230 kPa)/rear: 32 psi (220 kPa) or more:

Continue driving for another 10 minutes or until you reach the nearest service station, whichever is sooner. Do not exceed 50 mph (80 km/h). If you have not reached a service station after 10 minutes, stop in a safe place and check the tire pressure.

▶ If the air pressure does not go down after the 10 minute driving, you do not need to check the pressure any more.



Models with P215/45R17 87V tires

- Greater than 25 psi (175 kPa), but less than front: 35 psi (240 kPa)/rear: 33 psi (230 kPa):

Turn the air compressor on to inflate the tire until the tire pressure reaches to front: 35 psi (240 kPa)/rear: 33 psi (230 kPa).

Models with 225/40R18 92V tires

- Greater than 25 psi (175 kPa), but less than front: 33 psi (230 kPa)/rear: 32 psi (220 kPa):

Turn the air compressor on to inflate the tire until the tire pressure reaches to front: 33 psi (230 kPa)/rear: 32 psi (220 kPa).

Inflating an Under-inflated Tire P. 567

Then drive carefully for 10 more minutes or until you reach the nearest service station. Do not exceed 50 mph (80 km/h).

▶ You should repeat this procedure as long as the air pressure is within this range.

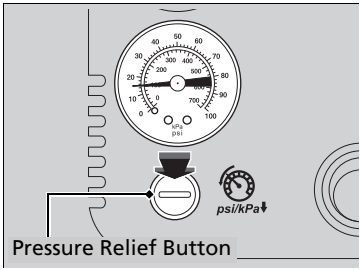
Distributing the Sealant in the Tire

⚠WARNING

Running the engine with the vehicle in an enclosed or even partly enclosed area can cause a rapid build-up of toxic carbon monoxide.

Breathing this colorless, odorless gas can cause unconsciousness and even death. Only run the engine to power the air compressor with the vehicle outdoors.

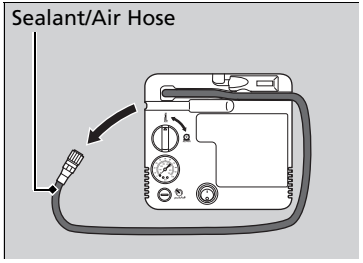
Continued



7. Unplug the kit from the accessory power socket.
8. Unscrew the air only hose from the tire valve stem. Reinstall the valve cap.
9. Press the pressure relief button until the gauge returns to 0 psi (0 kPa).
10. Repackage and properly stow the kit.

Inflating an Under-inflated Tire

You can use the kit to inflate a non-punctured under-inflated tire.



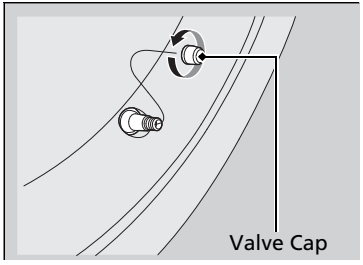
1. Open the trunk floor lid.

Getting Ready to Temporarily Repair the Flat Tire P. 556

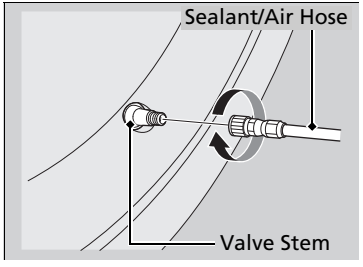
2. Remove the kit from the case.

3. Place the kit, face up, on flat ground near the flat tire, away from traffic. Do not place the kit on its side.

4. Remove the air only hose from the kit.



5. Remove the valve cap.



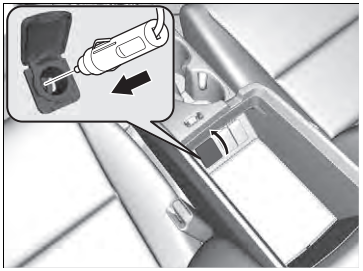
6. Attach the sealant/air hose onto the tire valve stem. Screw it until it is tight.

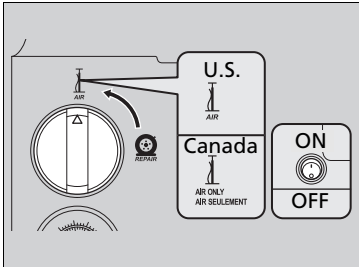
Inflating an Under-inflated Tire

NOTICE

Do not operate the temporary tire repair kit compressor for more than 15 minutes. The compressor can overheat and become permanently damaged.

Continued





7. Plug in the kit to the accessory power socket.
▶ Be careful not to pinch the cord in a door or window.
8. Start the engine.
▶ Keep the engine running while injecting air.
➡ **Carbon Monoxide Gas** P. 65

9. Turn the selector knob to **AIR***1, **AIR ONLY***2, **AIR SEULEMENT***2.
10. Press the inflator switch to turn on the kit.
▶ The compressor starts to inject air into the tire.
11. Inflate the tire to the specified air pressure.

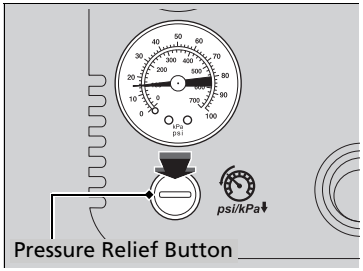
Inflating an Under-inflated Tire

⚠WARNING

Running the engine with the vehicle in an enclosed or even partly enclosed area can cause a rapid build-up of toxic carbon monoxide.

Breathing this colorless, odorless gas can cause unconsciousness and even death. Only run the engine to power the air compressor with the vehicle outdoors.

*1: U.S. models
*2: Canadian models



12. Turn off the kit.
- ▶ Check the pressure gauge on the air compressor.
- ▶ If overinflated, press the pressure relief button.

13. Unplug the kit from the accessory power socket.

14. Unscrew the sealant/air hose from the tire valve stem. Reinstall the valve cap.

15. Press the pressure relief button until the gauge returns to 0 psi (0 kPa).

16. Repackage and properly stow the kit.

Models with optional spare tire

Changing a Flat Tire

If a tire goes flat while driving, grasp the steering wheel firmly, and brake gradually to reduce speed. Then, stop in a safe place. Replace the flat tire with a compact spare tire. Go to a dealer as soon as possible to have the full-size tire repaired or replaced.

1. Park the vehicle on firm, level, non-slippery surface and apply the parking brake.
2. Move the shift lever in P.
3. Turn on the hazard warning lights and set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).

Changing a Flat Tire

Follow compact spare precautions:
Periodically check the tire pressure of the compact spare. It should be set to the specified pressure.
Specified Pressure: 60 psi (420 kPa)

When driving with the compact spare tire, keep the vehicle speed under 50 mph (80 km/h). Replace with a full-size tire as soon as possible.

The compact spare tire and wheel in your vehicle are specifically for this model. Do not use them with another vehicle. Do not use another type of compact spare tire or wheel with your vehicle.

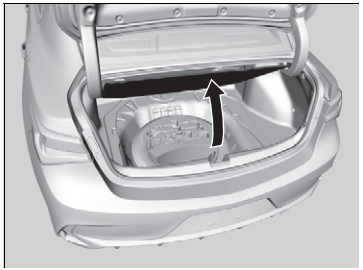
Do not mount tire chains on a compact spare tire. If a chain-mounted front tire goes flat, remove one of the full-size rear tires and replace it with the compact spare tire. Remove the flat front tire and replace it with the full-size tire that was removed from the rear. Mount the tire chains on the front tire.

Do not use a puncture-repairing agent on a flat tire, as it can damage the tire pressure sensor.

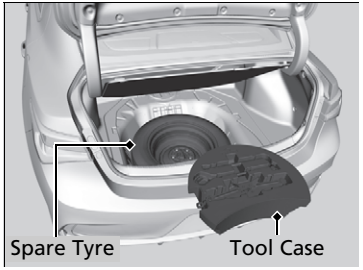
Do not mount the compact spare on the front. If mounted on the front, the compact spare, smaller in size than the full-size tire, may damage the differential.

If either front tire goes flat, remove the rear tire on the same side, and mount the compact spare on the rear and the rear tire on the front.

Getting Ready to Replace the Flat Tire

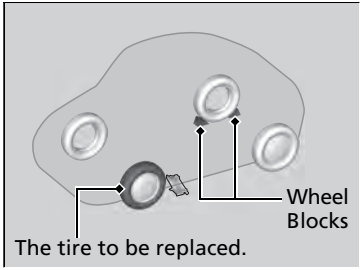


1. Open the trunk floor lid.



2. Take the tool case out of the trunk. Take the jack and wheel nut wrench out of the tool case.

3. Unscrew the wing bolt, and remove the spacer cone. Then, remove the spare tire.



4. Place a wheel block or rock in front and rear of the wheel diagonal to the flat tire.

Changing a Flat Tire

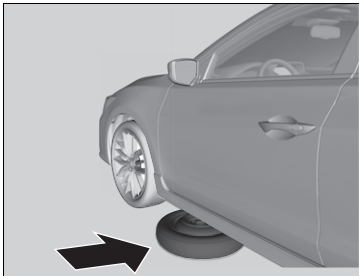
NOTICE

Do not use the jack if it doesn't work properly. Call your dealer or a professional towing service.

Getting Ready to Replace the Flat Tire

The shape of the tool case varies by model.

Continued

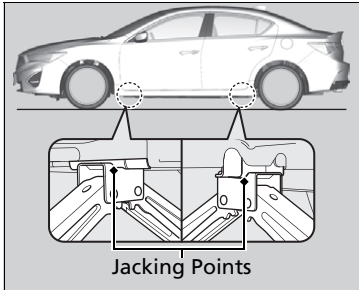


5. Place the compact spare tire (wheel side up) under the vehicle body, near the tire that needs to be replaced.



6. Loosen each wheel nut about one turn using the wheel nut wrench.

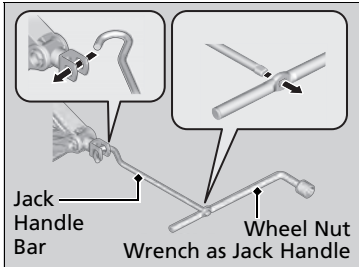
How to Set Up the Jack



1. Place the jack under the jacking point closest to the tire to be changed.



2. Turn the end bracket clockwise as shown in the image until the top of the jack contacts the jacking point.
▶ Make sure that the jacking point tab is resting in the jack notch.



3. Raise the vehicle, using the jack handle bar and the jack handle, until the tire is off the ground.

Continued

How to Set Up the Jack

⚠WARNING

The vehicle can easily roll off the jack, seriously injuring anyone underneath.

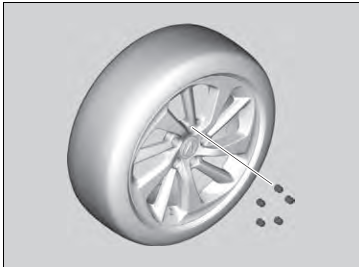
Follow the directions for changing a tire exactly, and no person should place any portion of their body under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.

Do not use the jack with people or luggage in the vehicle.

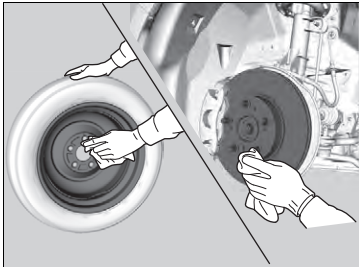
Use the jack provided in your vehicle.
Other jacks may not support the weight ("load") or may not fit the jacking point.

The following instructions must be followed to use the jack safely:
- Do not use while the engine is running.
- Use only where the ground is firm and level.
- Use only at the jacking points.
- Do not get in the vehicle while using the jack.
- Do not put anything on top of or underneath the jack.

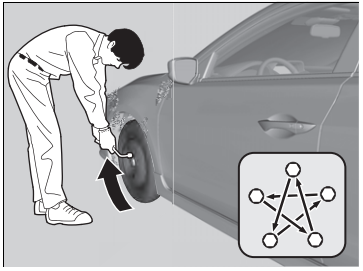
■ Replacing the Flat Tire



1. Remove the wheel nuts and flat tire.



2. Wipe the mounting surfaces of the wheel with a clean cloth.
3. Mount the compact spare tire.
4. Screw the wheel nuts until they touch the lips around the mounting holes, and stop rotating.

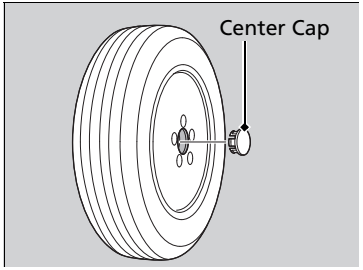


5. Lower the vehicle and remove the jack. Tighten the wheel nuts in the order indicated in the image. Go around, tightening the nuts, two to three times in this order.
Wheel nut torque:
80 lbf·ft (108 N·m, 11 kgf·m)

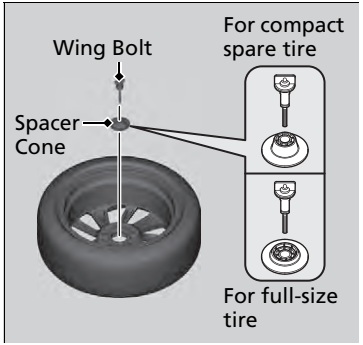
Replacing the Flat Tire

Do not over tighten the wheel nuts by applying extra torque using your foot or a pipe.

Storing the Flat Tire



1. Remove the center cap.



2. Place the flat tire face down in the spare tire well.
3. Remove the spacer cone from the wing bolt, flip it over, and insert it back on the bolt. Secure the flat tire with the wing bolt.
4. Securely put the jack and wheel nut wrench back in the tool case. Store the case in the trunk.

Storing the Flat Tire

⚠WARNING

Loose items can fly around the interior in a crash and can seriously injure the occupants.
Store the wheel, jack, and tools securely before driving.

Continued

■ TPMS and the Spare Tire

If you replace a flat tire with the spare tire, the low tire pressure/TPMS indicator comes on while you are driving. After driving for a few miles (kilometers), the indicator will start blinking for a short time and then stay on. **Tire Pressure Monitor Problem** appears on the multi-information display, but this is normal.

If you replace the tire with a specified regular tire, the warning message on the multi-information display and the low tire pressure/TPMS indicator will go off after a few miles (kilometers).

TPMS and the Spare Tire

The system cannot monitor the pressure of the spare tire. Manually check the spare tire pressure to be sure that it is correct.

Use the TPMS specific wheels. Each is equipped with a tire pressure sensor mounted inside the tire behind the valve stem.

Checking the Engine

If the engine does not start, check the starter.

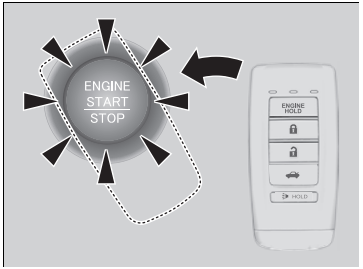
Checking the Engine

If you must start the vehicle immediately, use an assisting vehicle or booster battery to jump start it.
➡ **Jump Starting** P. 580

Starter condition	Checklist
Starter doesn't turn or turns over slowly. The battery may be dead. Check each of the items on the right and respond accordingly.	**Check for a message on the multi-information display.** • If the **To Start, Hold Remote Near Start Button** message appears ➡ **If the Keyless Access Remote Battery is Weak** P. 578 ▶Make sure the keyless remote is in its operating range. ➡ **ENGINE START/STOP Button Operating Range** P. 135
	Check the brightness of the interior lights. Turn on the interior lights and check the brightness. • If the interior lights are dim or do not come on at all ➡ **Battery** P. 541 • If the interior lights come on normally ➡ **Fuses** P. 590
The starter turns over normally but the engine doesn't start. There may be a problem with the fuse. Check each of the items on the right and respond accordingly.	**Review the engine start procedure.** Follow its instructions, and try to start the engine again. ➡ **Starting the Engine** P. 426
	Check the immobilizer system indicator. When the immobilizer system indicator is blinking, the engine cannot be started. ➡ **Immobilizer System** P. 128
	Check the fuel level. There should be enough fuel in the tank. ➡ **Fuel Gauge** P. 88
	Check the fuse. Check all fuses, or have the vehicle checked by a dealer. ➡ **Inspecting and Changing Fuses** P. 592
	If the problem continues: ➡ **Emergency Towing** P. 593

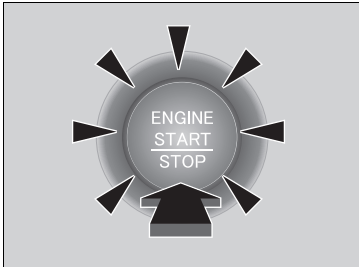
If the Keyless Access Remote Battery is Weak

If the beeper sounds, the **To Start, Hold Remote Near Start Button** message appears on the multi-information display, and the **ENGINE START/STOP** button flashes, and the engine won't start, start the engine as follows:



1. Touch the center of the **ENGINE START/STOP** button with the **A** logo on the keyless access remote while the **ENGINE START/STOP** button is flashing. The buttons on the keyless access remote should be facing you.

▶ The **ENGINE START/STOP** button flashes for about 30 seconds.



2. Depress the brake pedal and press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button within 10 seconds after the beeper sounds and the **ENGINE START/STOP** button changes from flashing to on.

▶ If you don't depress the pedal, the mode will change to ACCESSORY.

Emergency Engine Stop

The **ENGINE START/STOP** button may be used to stop the engine due to an emergency situation even while driving. If you must stop the engine, do either of the following operations:

- Press and hold the **ENGINE START/STOP** button for about two seconds.
- Firmly press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button three times.

The steering wheel will not lock. However, because turning off the engine disables the power assist the engine provides to the steering and braking systems, it will require significantly more physical effort and time to steer and slow the vehicle. Use both feet on the brake pedal to slow down the vehicle and stop immediately in a safe place.

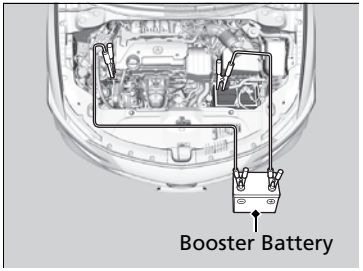
The power mode is in ACCESSORY when the engine is stopped.
To change the mode to VEHICLE OFF, move the shift position to P after the vehicle comes to a complete stop.

Emergency Engine Stop

Do not press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button while driving unless it is absolutely necessary for the engine to be turned off.
If you press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button while driving, the beeper sounds.

Jump Starting Procedure

Turn off the power to electric devices, such as audio and lights. Turn off the engine, then open the hood.



1. Connect the first jumper cable to your vehicle's battery ⊕ terminal.
2. Connect the other end of the first jumper cable to the assisting vehicle's ⊕ terminal.
   - ▶ Use a 12-volt booster battery only.
   - ▶ When using an automotive battery charger to boost your 12-volt battery, select a lower charging voltage than 15 volt. Check the charger manual for the proper setting.
3. Connect the second jumper cable to the assisting vehicle's ⊖ terminal.

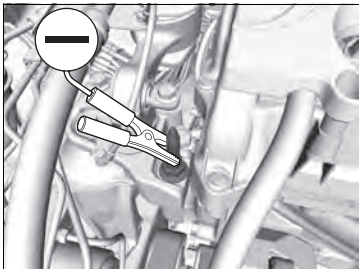
Jump Starting

⚠WARNING

A battery can explode if you do not follow the correct procedure, seriously injuring anyone nearby.

Keep all sparks, open flames, and smoking materials away from the battery.

Securely attach the jumper cables clips so that they do not come off when the engine vibrates. Also be careful not to tangle the jumper cables or allow the cable ends to touch each other while attaching or detaching the jumper cables.



4. Connect the other end of the second jumper cable to the engine mounting bolt as shown. Do not connect this jumper cable to any other part.

5. If your vehicle is connected to another vehicle, start the assisting vehicle's engine and increase its rpm slightly.

6. Attempt to start your vehicle's engine. If it turns over slowly, check that the jumper cables have good metal-to-metal contact.

Jump Starting

Battery performance degrades in cold conditions and may prevent the engine from starting.

Continued

■ What to Do After the Engine Starts

Once your vehicle's engine has started, remove the jumper cables in the following order.

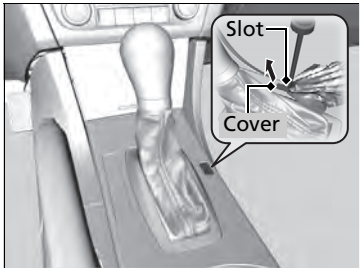
1. Disconnect the jumper cable from your vehicle's ground.
2. Disconnect the other end of the jumper cable from the booster battery ⊖ terminal.
3. Disconnect the jumper cable from your vehicle's battery ⊕ terminal.
4. Disconnect the other end of the jumper cable from the booster battery ⊕ terminal.

Have your vehicle inspected by a nearby service station or a dealer.

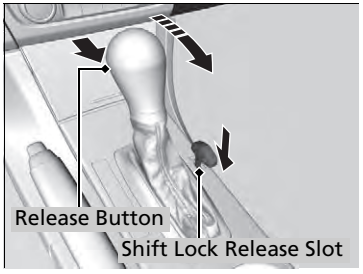
Shift Lever Does Not Move

Follow the procedure below if you cannot move the shift lever out of the P position.

Releasing the Lock



1. Set the parking brake.
2. Remove the built-in key from the keyless access remote.
3. Wrap a cloth around the tip of a small flat-tip screwdriver. Put it into the shift lock release slot as shown in the image, and remove the cover.



4. Insert the key into the shift lock release slot.
5. While pushing the key down, press the shift lever release button, and place the shift lever into N.
   ▶ The lock is now released. Have the shift lever checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

How to Handle Overheating

Overheating symptoms are as follows:

- The temperature gauge needle is at the H mark or the engine suddenly loses power.
- The **Engine Temperature Too Hot.** message appears on the multi-information display.
- Steam or spray comes out of the engine compartment.

■ First thing to do

1. Immediately park the vehicle in a safe place.

2. Turn off all accessories and turn on the hazard warning lights.

▶ **No steam or spray present:** Keep the engine running and open the hood.

▶ **Steam or spray is present:** Turn off the engine and wait until it subsides. Then open the hood.

How to Handle Overheating

⚠WARNING

Steam and spray from an overheated engine can seriously scald you.

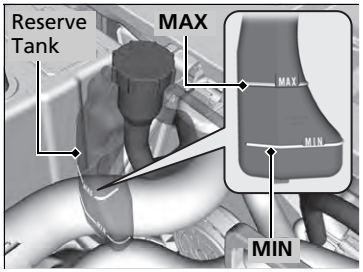
Do not open the hood if steam is coming out.

NOTICE

Continuing to drive with the temperature gauge needle at the H mark may damage the engine.

Continuing to drive with the **Engine Temperature Too Hot.** message on the multi-information display may damage the engine.

■ Next thing to do



1. Check that the cooling fan is operating and stop the engine once the temperature gauge needle comes down.
   ▶ If the cooling fan is not operating, immediately stop the engine.
2. Once the engine has cooled down, inspect the coolant level and check the cooling system components for leaks.
   ▶ If the coolant level in the reserve tank is low, add coolant until it reaches the **MAX** mark.
   ▶ If there is no coolant in the reserve tank, check that the radiator is cool. Cover the radiator cap with a heavy cloth and open the cap. If necessary, add coolant up to the base of the filler neck, and put the cap back on.

■ Last thing to do

Once the engine has cooled sufficiently, restart it and check the temperature gauge. If the temperature gauge needle has gone down, resume driving. If it has not gone down, contact a dealer for repairs.

How to Handle Overheating

⚠WARNING

Removing the radiator cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.

Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the radiator cap.

If the coolant is leaking, contact a dealer for repairs.

Use water as an emergency/temporary measure only. Have a dealer flush the system with proper antifreeze as soon as possible.

If the Low Oil Pressure Indicator Comes On



■ **Reasons for the indicator to come on**

Comes on when the engine oil pressure is low.

■ **What to do as soon as the indicator comes on**

1. Immediately park the vehicle on level ground in a safe place.

2. If necessary, turn the hazard warning lights on.

■ **What to do after parking the vehicle**

1. Stop the engine and let it sit for approximately one minute.

2. Open the hood and check the oil level.

▶ Add oil as necessary.

➲ **Oil Check** P. 517

3. Start the engine and check the low oil pressure indicator.

▶ The indicator goes off: Start driving again.

▶ The indicator does not go off within 10 seconds: Immediately stop the engine and contact a dealer for repairs.

If the Low Oil Pressure Indicator Comes On

NOTICE

Running the engine with low oil pressure can cause serious mechanical damage almost immediately.

If the Charging System Indicator Comes On



■ **Reasons for the indicator to come on**

Comes on when the battery is not being charged.

■ **What to do when the indicator comes on**

Turn off the climate control system, rear defogger, and other electrical systems, and immediately contact a dealer for repairs.

If the Charging System Indicator Comes On

If you need to stop temporarily, do not turn off the engine. Restarting the engine may rapidly discharge the battery.

If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks



■ **Reasons for indicator lamp to come on or blink**

- Comes on when there is a problem with the engine emissions control system, or the fuel fill cap is missing, or loose.
- Blinks when engine misfiring is detected.

■ **What to do when the indicator lamp comes on**

Avoid high speeds and immediately get your vehicle inspected at a dealer.

■ **What to do when the indicator lamp blinks**

Park the vehicle in a safe place with no flammable items and wait at least 10 minutes or more with the engine stopped until it cools.

■ Check/Tighten Fuel Cap Message

■ **The message appears on when:**

An evaporative system leak is detected. This may be caused by the fuel fill cap being loose or not being installed.

■ **What to do when the message appears:**

1. Stop the engine.

2. Check that the fuel fill cap is fully installed.

▶ If not, loosen the cap, and then retighten it until it clicks at least once.

3. Drive for several days of normal driving.

▶ The message should go off.

■ **When the malfunction indicator lamp comes on**

Malfunction indicator lamp comes on if the system continues to detect a leak of gasoline vapor. If this happens, check the fuel fill cap using the procedures described above.

If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks

NOTICE

If you drive with the malfunction indicator lamp on, the emissions control system and the engine could be damaged.

If the malfunction indicator lamp blinks again when restarting the engine, drive to the nearest dealer at 31 mph (50 km/h) or less. Have your vehicle inspected.

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On

U.S.



Canada



■ **Reasons for the indicator to come on**

- The brake fluid is low.
- There is a malfunction in the brake system.

■ **What to do when the indicator comes on while driving**

Depress the brake pedal lightly to check pedal pressure.

- If normal, check the brake fluid level the next time you stop.
- If abnormal, take immediate action. If necessary, downshift the transmission to slow the vehicle using engine braking.

If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator Comes On



■ **Reasons for the indicator to come on**

- Comes on when there is a problem with the EPS system.
- If you depress the accelerator pedal repeatedly to increase the engine speed while the engine is idling, the indicator comes on, and sometimes the steering wheel becomes harder to operate.

■ **What to do when the indicator comes on**

Stop the vehicle in a safe place and restart the engine.
If the indicator comes on and stays on, immediately have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On

Have your vehicle repaired immediately.
It is dangerous to drive with low brake fluid. If there is no resistance from the brake pedal, stop immediately in a safe place. If necessary downshift the gears.

If the brake system indicator and **ABS** indicator come on simultaneously, the electronic brake distribution system is not working. This can result in vehicle instability under sudden braking.
Have your vehicle inspected by a dealer immediately.

If both red and amber brake system indicators come on, stop the vehicle in a safe place and have it inspected by a dealer immediately.

If the Low Tire Pressure/TPMS Indicator Comes On or Blinks



■ **Reasons for the indicator to come on or blink**

A tire pressure is significantly low. If there is a problem with the TPMS or the compact spare tire is installed, the indicator blinks for about one minute, and then stays on.

■ **What to do when the indicator comes on**

Drive carefully and avoid abrupt cornering and hard braking.

Stop your vehicle in a safe place. Check the tire pressure and adjust the pressure to the specified level. The specified tire pressure is on a label on the driver side doorjamb.

■ **What to do when the indicator blinks**

Have the tire inspected by a dealer as soon as possible. If the compact spare tire causes the indicator to blink, change the tire to a full-size tire. The indicator goes off after driving for a few miles (kilometers).

If the Low Tire Pressure/TPMS Indicator Comes On or Blinks

NOTICE

Driving on an extremely underinflated tire can cause it to overheat. An overheated tire can fail. Always inflate your tires to the prescribed level.

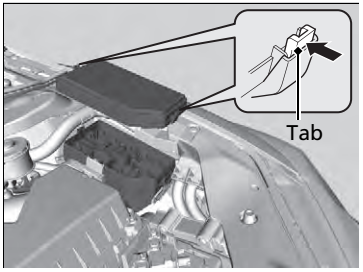
Fuse Locations

If any electrical devices are not working, set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) and check to see if any applicable fuse is blown.

Fuse locations are shown on the fuse box cover. Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number and box cover number.

■ Engine Compartment Fuse Box

Located near the brake fluid reservoir. Push the tabs to open the box.



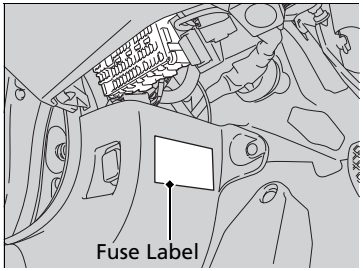
■ Circuit protected and fuse rating

	Circuit Protected	Amps
1	EPS	70 A
	–	–
	ABS/VSA FSR	30 A
	ABS/VSA Motor	40 A
	WIPER	30 A
	Main Fuse	120 A
2	IG Main	50 A
	Fuse Box Main	60 A
	Fuse Box Main 2	60 A
	Headlight Main	30 A
	ST/MG SW	30 A
	Rear Defogger	30 A
	IG Main1	30 A
	Blower	40 A
	IG Main2	30 A
	Sub Fan Motor	20 A
	Main Fan Motor	20 A
3	–	–
	–	–
	–	–
	–	–
4	–	–
5	Starter DIAG	7.5 A
6	–	–
7	–	–
8	–	–
9	–	–
10	–	–
11	Oil Level	7.5 A
12	Fog Lights*	(20 A)
13	Injector	20 A
14	Hazard	10 A
15	FI Sub	15 A
16	IG Coil	15 A
17	Daytime Running Lights	7.5 A
18	Stop & Horn	10 A
19	–	–
20	Right Headlight Low Beam	10 A
21	IGP	15 A
22	DBW	15 A
23	Left Headlight Low Beam	10 A
24	–	–
25	MG Clutch	7.5 A
26	Washer	15 A
27	Small	20 A
28	Interior Lights	7.5 A
29	Backup	10 A

* Not available on all models

Interior Fuse Box

Located under the dashboard.



Fuse locations are shown on the label on the side panel.
Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number and label number.

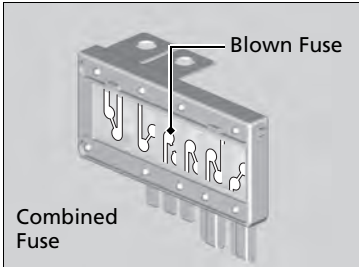
Circuit protected and fuse rating

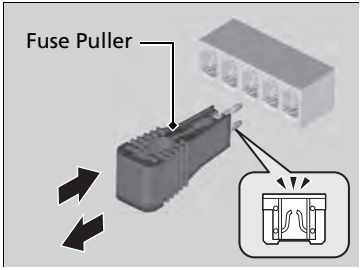
	Circuit Protected	Amps
1	–	–
2	ACG	15 A
3	SRS	10 A
4	Fuel Pump	15 A
5	Meter	7.5 A
6	Power Window	7.5 A
7	VB SOL	7.5 A
8	Right Door Lock Motor (Unlock)	15 A
9	Left Door Lock Motor (Unlock)	15 A
10	Audio*	(15 A)
11	Moonroof	20 A
12	Driver's Power Seat Sliding	(20 A)
13	Driver's Power Seat Reclining	(20 A)
14	Seat Heaters	(20 A)
15	Driver's Door Lock Motor (Unlock)	10 A
16	Passenger's Power Seat Sliding*	(20 A)
17	Passenger's Power Seat Reclining*	(20 A)
18	Driver's Power Lumbar	10 A
19	Accessory	7.5 A
20	ACC Key Lock	7.5 A
21	Daytime Running Lights	7.5 A
22	HAC	7.5 A
23	–	–
24	ABS/VSA	7.5 A
25	ACC	7.5 A
26	–	–
27	Accessory Power Socket	20 A
28	–	–
29	ODS	7.5 A
30	Driver's Door Lock Motor (Lock)	10 A
31	SMART	10 A
32	Right Door Lock Motor (Lock)	15 A
33	Left Door Lock Motor (Lock)	15 A
34	Small Lights	7.5 A
35	Illumination	7.5 A
36	–	–
37	Premium Audio*	(30 A)*1 (20 A)*
38	Left Headlight High Beam	10 A
39	Right Headlight High Beam	10 A
40	–	–
41	Door Lock	20 A
42	Driver's Power Window	20 A
43	Rear Passenger's Side Power Window	20 A
44	Front Passenger's Side Power Window	20 A
45	Rear Driver's Side Power Window	20 A
46	–	–

*1:Model with Navigation system

* Not available on all models

Inspecting and Changing Fuses





1. Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK). Turn headlights and all accessories off.
2. Remove the fuse box cover.
3. Check the large fuse in the engine compartment.
   ▶ If the fuse is blown, use a Phillips-head screwdriver to remove the screw and replace it with a new one.
4. Inspect the small fuses in the engine compartment and the vehicle interior.
   ▶ If there is a blown fuse, remove it with the fuse puller and replace it with a new one.

Inspecting and Changing Fuses

NOTICE

Replacing a fuse with one that has a higher rating greatly increases the chances of damaging the electrical system.

Replace fuse with a spare fuse of the same specified amperage.
Confirm the specified amperage using the charts on the fuse label.

Fuse Locations P. 590

There is a fuse puller on the back of the engine compartment fuse box cover.

Call a professional towing service if you need to tow your vehicle.

■ **Flat bed equipment**
The operator loads your vehicle on the back of a truck.
This is the best way to transport your vehicle.

■ **Wheel lift equipment**
The tow truck uses two pivoting arms that go under the front tires and lift them off the ground. The rear tires remain on the ground. **This is an acceptable way to tow your vehicle.**

Emergency Towing

NOTICE
Trying to lift or tow your vehicle by the bumpers will cause serious damage. The bumpers are not designed to support the vehicle's weight.

NOTICE
Improper towing such as towing behind a motorhome or other motor vehicle can damage the transmission.

Never tow your vehicle with just a rope or chain.
It is very dangerous, since ropes or chains may shift from side to side or break.

This page intentionally left blank.

Information

This chapter includes your vehicle's specifications, locations of identification numbers, and other information required by regulation.

Specifications 596
Identification Numbers
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine Number, and Transmission Number 598
Devices that Emit Radio Waves 599
Reporting Safety Defects 600
Emissions Testing
Testing of Readiness Codes 601
Warranty Coverages 603
Authorized Manuals 605
Client Service Information 606

■ Vehicle Specifications

Model	ILX
No. of Passengers:	
Front	2
Rear	3
Total	5
Weights:	
Gross Vehicle Weight Rating	See the certification label on the driver's doorjamb
Gross Axle Weight Rating (Front)	See the certification label on the driver's doorjamb
Gross Axle Weight Rating (Rear)	See the certification label on the driver's doorjamb

■ Air Conditioning

Refrigerant Type	HFO-1234yf (R-1234yf)
Charge Quantity	17.1 – 18.9 oz (485 – 535 g)
Lubricant Type	SE-A1 (POE)
Quantity	4.88 – 5.49 cu-in (80 – 90 cm³)

■ Engine Specifications

Displacement	144 cu-in (2,356 cm³)	
Spark Plugs	NGK	DILKAR7G11GS DILKAR7H11GS
	DENSO	DXE22HQR-D11S

■ Fuel

Type	Unleaded premium gasoline, Pump octane number of 91 or higher
Fuel Tank Capacity	13.2 US gal (50 L)

■ Washer Fluid

Tank Capacity	U.S.: 2.6 US qt (2.5 L) Canada: 5.12 US qt (4.85 L)

■ Light Bulbs

Headlights (High/Low Beam)		LED
Fog Lights*		LED
Front Turn Signal Lights		LED
Parking/Daytime Running Lights		LED
Front Side Marker Lights		LED
Brake Lights		LED
Rear Side Marker Lights		LED
Back-Up Lights		16 W
Taillights		LED
Rear Turn Signal Lights		21 W (Amber)
High-Mount Brake Light		LED
Rear License Plate Light		5 W
Interior Lights		
	Map Lights	LED
	Ceiling Light	8 W
	Ambient Lights	LED
	Foot Lights	1.4 W
	Glove Box Light	LED
	Vanity Mirror Lights	1.4 W
	Trunk Light	5 W

* Not available on all models

■ Brake Fluid

Specified	Acura Heavy Duty Brake Fluid DOT 3

■ Dual Clutch Transmission Fluid

Specified	Acura ATF-TYPE 2.0	
Capacity	Change	4.1 US qt (3.9 L)

■ Engine Oil

Recommended	·Genuine Acura Motor Oil 0W-20 ·API Premium-grade 0W-20 detergent oil	
Capacity	Change	4.4 US qt (4.2 L)
	Change including filter	4.6 US qt (4.4 L)

■ Engine Coolant

Specified	Acura Long Life Antifreeze/Coolant Type2
Ratio	50/50 with distilled water
Capacity	1.71 US gal (6.49 L) (change including the remaining 0.166 US gal (0.63 L) in the reserve tank)

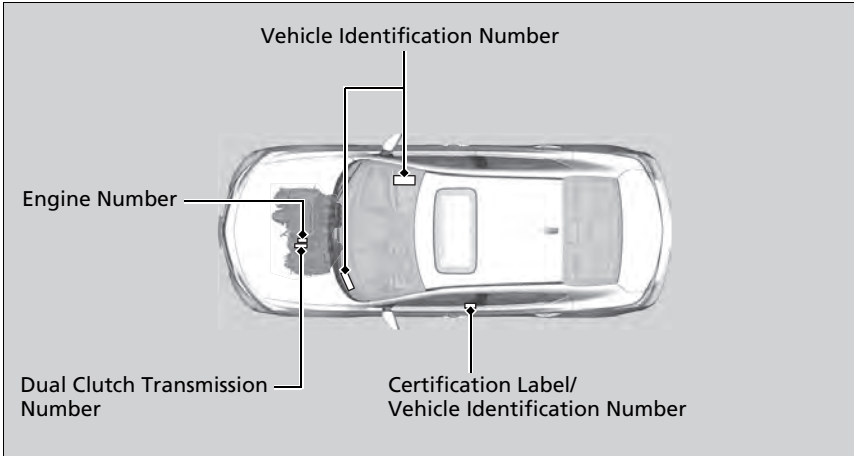
■ Tire

Regular	Size	225/40R18 92V*1 P215/45R17 87V*2	
	Pressure psi (kPa [kgf/cm²])	Front	33 (230 [2.3])*1 35 (240 [2.4])*2
		Rear	32 (220 [2.2])*1 33 (230 [2.3])*2
Compact Spare*3	Size	T135/70D17 92M	
	Pressure psi (kPa [kgf/cm²])	60 (420 [4.2])	
Wheel Size	Regular	18 x 7 1/2J*1 17 x 7J*2	
	Compact Spare*3	17 x 4T	

*1: Vehicle with 18 inch wheel
*2: Vehicle with 17 inch wheel
*3: Vehicle with optional spare tire

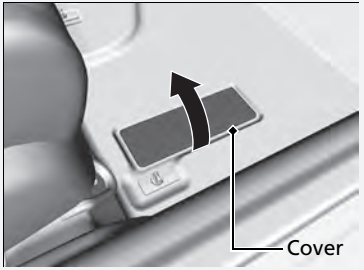
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine Number, and Transmission Number

Your vehicle has a 17-digit vehicle identification number (VIN) used to register your vehicle for warranty purposes, and for licensing and insuring your vehicle.
The locations of your vehicle's VIN, engine number, and transmission number are shown as follows.



Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine Number, and Transmission Number

The interior vehicle identification number (VIN) is located under the cover.



Each radio frequency device installed in the vehicle conforms to the requirements and standards of the regulation listed below:

As required by the FCC:
This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

This device complies with Industry Canada licence-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

In the U.S.
If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying American Honda Motor Co., Inc.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or American Honda Motor Co., Inc.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to *http://www.safercar.gov*; or write to: Administrator, NHTSA, 1200 New Jersey Avenue, SE., Washington, DC 20590. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from *http://www.safercar.gov*.

In Canada
If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform Honda Canada Inc. and you may also inform Transport Canada.

If Transport Canada receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may lead to a recall and remedy campaign. However, Transport Canada cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or Honda Canada Inc.

To contact Transport Canada's Defect Investigations and Recalls Division, you may call 1-800-333-0510. For more information on reporting safety defects or about motor vehicle safety, go to *http://www.tc.gc.ca/roadsafety*.

Testing of Readiness Codes

Your vehicle has readiness code as part of the onboard self diagnostic system. Some states use these codes for testing to verify whether your vehicle's emissions components are working properly.
The codes may not be read properly if testing is performed just after the battery has gone dead or been disconnected.

To check if they are set, set the power mode to ON, without starting the engine. The malfunction indicator lamp will come on for several seconds. If it then goes off, the readiness codes are set. If it blinks five times, the readiness codes are not set.

If you are required to have your vehicle tested before the readiness codes are ready, prepare the vehicle for retesting by doing the following:

1. Fill the gas tank to approximately 3/4 full.
2. Park the vehicle and leave the engine off for 6 hours or more.
3. Make sure the ambient temperature is between 40°F and 95°F (4°C and 35°C).
4. Start the engine without touching the accelerator pedal, and let it idle for 20 seconds.
5. Keep the vehicle in P. Increase the engine speed to 2,000 rpm, and hold it there for about 3 minutes.
6. Let the engine idle with your foot off the accelerator for 20 seconds.

Testing of Readiness Codes

The readiness codes are erased when the battery is disconnected, and set again only after several days of driving under a variety of conditions.

If a testing facility determines that the readiness codes are not set, you may be requested to return at a later date to complete the test.

If the testing facility determines the readiness codes are still not set, see a dealer.

Continued

7. Select a nearby, lightly traveled major highway where you can maintain a speed of 50 to 60 mph (80 to 97 km/h) for at least 20 minutes. Do not use cruise control and perform the following when traffic allows. When stopped before entering the highway, use paddle shifters. During acceleration up to speed, target 5,500 to 6,500 engine rpm continuously for at least 10 seconds. Then shift to D range and drive for 90 seconds without moving the accelerator pedal. (Vehicle speed may vary slightly; this is okay.) If you cannot do this for a continuous 90 seconds because of traffic conditions, drive for at least 30 seconds, then repeat it two more times (for a total of 90 seconds).

8. Drive in city or suburban traffic for at least 10 minutes. When traffic conditions allow, let the vehicle coast for several seconds without using the accelerator pedal or the brake pedal.

9. Park the vehicle and leave the engine off for 30 minutes.

■ **U.S. Owners**

Your new vehicle is covered by these warranties:

New Vehicle Limited Warranty – covers your new vehicle, except for the emissions control systems and accessories, against defects in materials and workmanship.

Emissions Control Systems Defects Warranty and Emissions Performance Warranty – these two warranties cover your vehicle's emissions control systems. Time, mileage, and coverage are conditional. Please read your warranty booklet for exact information.

Seat Belt Limited Warranty – a seat belt that fails to function properly is covered by a limited warranty. Please read your warranty booklet for details.

Rust Perforation Limited Warranty – all exterior body panels are covered against rusting from the inside out for the specified time period, regardless of mileage.

Accessory Limited Warranty – Acura accessories are covered under this warranty. Time and mileage limits depend on the type of accessory and other factors. Please read your warranty booklet for details.

Replacement Parts Limited Warranty – covers all Acura replacement parts against defects in materials and workmanship.

Continued

Replacement Battery Limited Warranty – provides prorated coverage for a replacement battery purchased from your dealer.

Replacement Muffler Lifetime Limited Warranty – provides coverage for as long as the purchaser of the muffler owns the vehicle.

Restrictions and exclusions apply to all these warranties. Please read the Acura warranty information booklet that came with your vehicle for precise information on warranty coverages. Your vehicle's original tires are covered by their manufacturer. Tire warranty information is in a separate booklet.

■ Canadian Owners

Please refer to the warranty manual that came with your vehicle.

■ EPA Contact Information

An owner may obtain further information concerning emission warranties or report violations of the terms of the emission warranties by contacting:

U.S. Environmental Protection Agency
Office of Transportation and Air Quality
Compliance Division, Light-Duty Vehicle Group
Attn: Warranty Complaints
2000 Traverwood Drive
Ann Arbor, MI 48105
Email: complianceinfo@epa.gov

■ **Service Express**
For electronic copies of service publications, you can purchase a subscription to Service Express. Visit *www.techinfo.honda.com* for pricing and options.

■ **For U.S. Owners**
Manuals can be purchased from Helm Incorporated. You can order a manual by phone at 1 (800) 782-4356 (credit card orders only), or online at *www.helminc.com*.

■ **For Canadian Owners**
Please contact a dealer to order any manuals that you may require.

Acura dealership personnel are trained professionals who should be able to deal with any problems you may encounter with your vehicle. If, however, you are faced with a problem that they cannot resolve to your satisfaction, contact Acura Client Relations/Services.

U.S. Owners
American Honda Motor Co., Inc.
Acura Client Relations
Mail Stop 100-5E-8F 1919 Torrance Blvd.
Torrance, CA 90501-2746
Tel: 1 (800) 382-2238

Canadian Owners
Honda Canada Inc.
Acura Client Services
180 Honda Boulevard
Markham, ON
L6C 0H9
Tel: 1-888-9-ACURA-9
Fax: 1-877-939-0909
E-mail: acura_cr@ch.honda.com

In Puerto Rico and the U.S. Virgin Islands
Bella International
P.O. Box 190816
San Juan, PR 00919-0816
Tel: 1 (787) 620-7546

Client Service Information

When you call or write, please give us the following information:
- Vehicle Identification Number
  Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine Number, and Transmission Number P. 598
- Date of purchase
- Odometer reading of your vehicle
- Your name, address, and telephone number
- A detailed description of the problem
- Name of the dealer who sold the vehicle to you

Gracenote Music Recognition Service (CDDB)*



Music recognition technology and related data are provided by Gracenote®.
Gracenote is the industry standard in music recognition technology and related content delivery.
For more information, visit *www.gracenote.com.*
When music is recorded to the HDD from a CD, information such as the recording artist and track name are retrieved from the Gracenote Database and displayed (when available).
Gracenote may not contain information for all albums.
Gracenote is an internet-based music recognition service that allows artist, album, and track information from CDs to display on the HDD.
Gracenote users are allowed 4 free updates a year. More information about Gracenote, its features, and downloads are available at *www.acura.com* (in U.S.) or *www.acura.ca* (in Canada).
CD and music-related data from Gracenote, Inc., copyright © 2000 to present Gracenote. Gracenote Software, copyright © 2000 to present Gracenote.
One or more patents owned by Gracenote apply to this product and service. See the Gracenote website for a non-exhaustive list of applicable Gracenote patents.
Gracenote, CDDB, MusicID, MediaVOCS, the Gracenote logo and logotype, and the "Powered by Gracenote" logo are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Gracenote in the United States and/or other countries.

Gracenote® END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT*

This application or device contains software from Gracenote, Inc. of Emeryville, California ("Gracenote"). The software from Gracenote (the "Gracenote Software") enables this application to perform disc and/or file identification and obtain music- related information, including name, artist, track, and title information ("Gracenote Data") from online servers or embedded databases (collectively, "Gracenote Servers") and to perform other functions. You may use Gracenote Data only by means of the intended End-User functions or this application or device.

You agree that you will use Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers for your own personal non-commercial use only.

You agree not to assign, copy, transfer, or transmit the Gracenote Software or any Gracenote Data to any third party.

YOU AGREE NOT TO USE OR EXPLOIT GRACENOTE DATA, THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, OR GRACENOTE SERVERS, EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY PERMITTED HEREIN.

You agree that your non-exclusive license to use the Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers will terminate if you violate these restrictions. If your license terminates, you agree to cease any and all use of the Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers.

* Not available on all models

Continued

Gracenote reserves all rights in Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and the Gracenote Servers, including all ownership rights. Under no circumstances will Gracenote become liable for any payment to you for any information that you provide. You agree that Gracenote, Inc. may enforce its rights under this Agreement against you directly in its own name.

The Gracenote service uses a unique identifier to track queries for statistical purposes. The purpose of a randomly assigned numeric identifier is to allow the Gracenote service to count queries without knowing anything about who you are. For more information, see the web page for the Gracenote Privacy Policy for the Gracenote service.

The Gracenote Software and each item of Gracenote Data are licensed to you "AS IS."

Gracenote makes no representations or warranties, express or implied, regarding the accuracy of any Gracenote Data from in the Gracenote Servers. Gracenote reserves the right to delete data from the Gracenote Servers or to change data categories for any cause that Gracenote deems sufficient. No warranty is made that the Gracenote Software or Gracenote Servers are error-free or that functioning of Gracenote Software or Gracenote Servers will be uninterrupted.

Gracenote is not obligated to provide you with new enhanced or additional data types or categories that Gracenote may provide in the future and is free to discontinue its services at any time.

GRACENOTE DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE, AND NONINFRINGEMENT. GRACENOTE DOES NOT WARRANT THE RESULTS THAT WILL BE OBTAINED BY YOUR USE OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR ANY GRACENOTE SERVER. IN NO CASE WILL GRACENOTE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES OR FOR ANY LOST PROFITS OR LOST REVENUES.
© Gracenote 2009

■ Disclaimer of Pandora®*

Requirements to access Pandora®

- Latest version of the Pandora app installed on your Android, Blackberry, or iPhone.
- Registered Pandora account (you can create a free account at *www.pandora.com <http://www.pandora.com/>* or on your smartphone)
- Connection to the internet via Wi-Fi or cellular data network.

Limitations

- Access to Pandora requires an active internet connection
- Ability to access Pandora through this system is subject to change without notice
- Certain functionality of Pandora service is not available when accessing the service through this system including, but not limited to, creating new stations, deleting stations, emailing current stations, buying tracks, viewing additional text information, logging in to Pandora, and adjusting Cell Network Audio Quality. Pandora internet radio is a music service not affiliated with HONDA. More information is available at *http://www.pandora.com <http://www.pandora.com/>*. Pandora, the Pandora logo, and the Pandora trade dress are trademarks or registered trademarks of Pandora Media, Inc., used with permission.
- Mobile access requires a smartphone with an active data plan. Standard data rates may apply.
- Pandora is only available in the United States.

* Not available on all models

A

AAC 235, 260
ABS (Anti-lock Brake System) 493
Accessories and Modifications 551
Accessory Power Sockets 169
AcuraLink 410
AcuraWatch™ 20, 446
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) 76, 459
Additives
  Coolant 521
  Engine Oil 516
  Washer 524
Additives, Engine Oil 516
Adjusting
  Armrest 163
  Front Seats 154
  Head Restraints 158
  Mirrors 152
  Rear Seat 162
  Steering Wheel 149
  Temperature 92
Air Conditioning System (Climate Control System) 171
  Changing the Mode 171
  Defrosting the Windshield and Windows 172
  Maintenance 544
  Recirculation/Fresh Air Mode 171
  Sensors 174
  Synchronization Mode 173
  Using Automatic Climate Control 171
Air Pressure 533, 597
Airbags 39
  Advanced Airbags 45
  After a Collision 42
  Airbag Care 51
  Event Data Recorder 0
  Front Airbags (SRS) 42
  Indicator 49, 72
  Passenger Airbag Off Indicator 50
  Sensors 39
  Side Airbags 46
  Side Curtain Airbags 48
AM/FM Radio 190, 221
Android Auto 270
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) 493
  Indicator 71
Apple CarPlay 266
Armrest 163
Audio Remote Controls 181
Audio System 176
  Adjusting the Sound 188, 216
  Auxiliary Input Jack 177
  Bluetooth® Audio 204, 263
  CD 192, 235
  Display Setup 189, 217
  Error Messages 275
  General Information 286
  HDD 238
  iPhone 258, 289
  iPod 195, 251
  MP3/WMA/AAC 201, 235, 260
  Pandora® 198, 258
  Reactivating 180
  Recommended CDs 287
  Recommended Devices 289
  Security Code 180
  Siri Eyes Free 265
  SiriusXM® Radio 224
  Song By Voice™ (SBV) 254
  Theft Protection 180
  USB Adapter Cable 178
  USB Flash Drives 201, 260, 289
  USB Port 179
Audio/Information Screen 184
Authorized Manuals 605
Auto Door Locking/Unlocking 123
  Customize 101, 323
Auto High-Beam 143
Automatic Lighting 140
Auxiliary Input Jack 177
Average Fuel Economy 92
Average Speed 93

B

Battery 541
  Charging System Indicator 70, 586
  Jump Starting 580
  Maintenance (Checking the Battery) 541
  Maintenance (Replacing) 542
Belts (Seat) 32
Beverage Holders 168

Blind spot information System 439
Bluetooth® Audio 204, 263
Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink® 339, 368
Booster Seats (For Children) 64
Brake System 491
  Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) 493
  Brake Assist System 494
  Fluid 524
  Foot Brake 492
  Indicator 68, 588
  Parking Brake 491
Brake System (Amber)
  Indicator 68
Brightness Control (Instrument Panel) ... 148
Built-in Key 109
Bulb Replacement 525
  Back-Up Light 528
  Fog Lights 525
  Front Turn Signal, Parking/Daytime Running and Front Side Marker Lights ... 525
  Headlights 525
  High-Mount Brake Light 529
  Rear License Plate Light 529
  Rear Turn Signal Light 526
  Taillights, Brake and Rear Side Marker Lights 526
Bulb Specifications 596

C

Carbon Monoxide Gas 65
Carrying Cargo 421, 423
CD Player 192, 235
Center Pocket 167
Certification Label 598
Changing Bulbs 525
Charging System Indicator 70, 586
Child Safety 52
  Childproof Door Locks 122
Child Seat 52
  Booster Seats 64
  Child Seat for Infants 54
  Child Seat for Small Children 55
  Installing a Child Seat with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt 59
  Larger Children 63
  Rear-facing Child Seat 54
  Selecting a Child Seat 56
  Using a Tether 61
Childproof Door Locks 122
Cleaning the Exterior 548
Cleaning the Interior 545
Client Service Information 606
Climate Control System 171
  Changing the Mode 171
  Defrosting the Windshield and Windows 172
  Maintenance 544
  Recirculation/Fresh Air Mode 171
  Sensors 174
  Using Automatic Climate Control 171
Clock 106
CMBS™ (Collision Mitigation Braking System™) 449
Coat Hook 169
Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™) 449
Compact Spare Tire 570, 597
Console Compartment 166
Controls 105
Coolant (Engine) 521
  Adding to the Radiator 522
  Adding to the Reserve Tank 521
  Overheating 584
Creeping (Dual Clutch Transmission) 432
Cross Traffic Monitor 497
Cup Holders 168
Customized Features 95, 304, 310

D

Daytime Running Lights 142
Dead Battery 580
Defrosting the Windshield and Windows 172
Devices that Emit Radio Waves 599
Dimming
  Headlights 139
  Rearview Mirror 152
Dipstick (Engine Oil) 517
Directional Signals (Turn Signal) 138
Door Mirrors 153

Doors 108
Auto Door Locking 123
Auto Door Unlocking 123
Door Open Indicator 31
Door Open Message 83
Keys 108
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside 120
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside 111
Lockout Prevention System 118
DOT Tire Quality Grading 535
Driving 419
Braking 491
Dual Clutch Transmission 432
Shifting Gear 433
Starting the Engine 426
Driving Position Memory System 150
Dual Clutch Transmission 432
Creeping 432
Fluid 523, 597
Kickdown 432
Operating the Shift Lever 18, 433
Shift Lever Does Not Move 583
Shifting 433

E

Elapsed Time 93
Electric Power Steering System (EPS)
Indicator 72, 588
Electronic Stability Control (ESC) 437
Emergency 593
Emissions Testing (Readiness Codes) 601
Engine 598
Coolant 521
Jump Starting 580
Oil 516
Remote Engine Start 428
Starting 426
Switch Buzzer 135
Engine Coolant 521
Adding to the Radiator 522
Adding to the Reserve Tank 521
Overheating 584
Temperature Gauge 88
Engine Oil 516
Adding 518
Checking 517
Displaying Oil Life 510
Low Oil Pressure Indicator 69, 586
Recommended Engine Oil 516
ENGINE START/STOP Button 135
EPS (Electric Power Steering) System 72, 588
Exhaust Gas Hazard (Carbon Monoxide) 65
Exterior Care (Cleaning) 548
Exterior Mirrors 153

F

Features 175
Filters
Oil 519
Flat Tire 555
Floor Mats 546
Fluids
Brake 524
Dual Clutch Transmission 523
Engine Coolant 521
Windshield Washer 524
Fog Light Indicator 74
Folding Down the Rear Seat 162
Foot Brake 492
Front Airbags (SRS) 42
Front Seats 154
Adjusting 154
Front Sensor Camera 488
Fuel 19, 502
Fuel Economy and CO_2 Emissions 504
Gauge 88
Instant Fuel Economy 93
Low Fuel Indicator 71
Range 93
Recommendation 502
Refueling 502
Fuel Economy and CO_2 Emissions 504
Fuel Fill Cap 19, 503
Message 587
Fuel Fill Door 19, 503
Fuses 590
Inspecting and Changing 592
Locations 590, 591

G

Gasoline (Fuel)
- Economy ... 504
- Gauge ... 88
- Information ... 502
- Instant Fuel Economy ... 93
- Low Fuel Indicator ... 71
- Refueling ... 502

Gauges ... 88
Gear Position Indicator ... 69
Gear Shift Lever Positions
- Dual Clutch Transmission ... 433

Glass (care) ... 549
Glove Box ... 166

H

Handling the Unexpected ... 553
HandsFreeLink® (HFL) ... 339, 368
- Auto Answer ... 385
- Automatic Import of Cellular Phonebook and Call History ... 355, 387
- Automatic Transferring ... 353, 385
- Caller's ID Information ... 353
- Displaying Messages ... 364, 405
- HFL Buttons ... 339, 368
- HFL Menus ... 341, 371
- HFL Status Display ... 340, 369
- Limitations for Manual Operation ... 340, 370
- Making a Call ... 358, 396
- Options During a Call ... 362, 402
- Phone Setup ... 346, 376
- Phonebook Phonetic Modification ... 391
- Receiving a Call ... 361, 401
- Receiving a Text Message ... 363
- Receiving a Text/E-mail Message ... 403
- Ring Tone ... 386
- Roadside Assistance ... 409
- Selecting a Mail Account ... 404
- Speed Dial ... 356, 388
- Text Message ... 351, 363
- To Clear the System ... 354
- To Create a Security PIN ... 352, 383
- To Set Up a Text Message Notice Option ... 351
- To Set Up a Text/E-mail Message Option ... 381
- Use Contact Photo ... 386

Hard Disk Drive (HDD) Audio ... 238
Hazard Warning Button ... 4
Head Restraints ... 158
Headlights ... 139
- Auto High-Beam System ... 143
- Automatic Operation ... 140
- Dimming ... 139, 142
- Operating ... 139

Heaters (Seat) ... 170
HFL (HandsFreeLink®) ... 339, 368
High-Beam Indicator ... 74
Hill Start Assist System ... 430
HomeLink® Universal Transceiver ... 336
Honda App License Agreement ... 290

I

Identification Numbers ... 598
- Engine and Transmission ... 598
- Vehicle Identification ... 598

Illumination Control ... 148
- Knob ... 148

Immobilizer System ... 128
- Indicator ... 75

Indicators 68
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) 76, 77, 459
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) 71
Auto High-Beam 74
Blind spot information System 79, 440
Brake System (Amber) 68
Brake System (Red) 68, 588
Charging System 70, 586
Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™) 79, 80
Electric Power Steering (EPS) System .. 72, 588
Fog Light 74
Gear Position 69
High Beam 74
Immobilizer System 75
Keyless Access System 75
Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) 78, 476
Lights On 74
Low Fuel 71
Low Oil Pressure 69, 586
Low Tire Pressure/TPMS 73, 442, 444, 589
Maintenance Minder 509
Malfunction Indicator Lamp 70, 587
Parking Brake and Brake System 68, 588
Road Departure Mitigation (RDM) 76
Seat Belt Reminder 33, 71
Security System Alarm 75
Sequential mode 436
Shift Lever Position 69
Supplemental Restraint System 49, 72
System Message 73
Transmission System 69
Turn Signal 74
Vehicle Stability Assist® (VSA®) System 72, 437
VSA® OFF 73, 438
Information 595
Information Screen 211
Instant Fuel Economy 93
Instrument Panel 67
Brightness Control 148
Interface Dial 206
Interior Lights 164
Interior Rearview Mirror 152
iPhone 258, 289
iPod 195, 251

J

Jack (Wheel Nut Wrench) 573
Jump Starting 580

K

Key Number Tag 110
Keyless Access System 111
Keyless Lockout Prevention 118
Keys 108
Lockout Prevention 118
Number Tag 110
Rear Door Won't Open 122
Remote Transmitter 116
Two-way Keyless Access Remote 119, 428
Types and Functions 108
Kickdown (Dual Clutch Transmission) 432

L

Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) 474
LATCH (Child Seats) 57
License information 303
Lights 139, 525
Automatic 140
Bulb Replacement 525
Daytime Running Lights 142
Fog Lights 142
High-Beam Indicator 74
Interior 164
Light Switches 139
Lights On Indicator 74
Turn Signals 138
Limitations for Manual Operation .. 340, 370
Load Limits 423
Locking/Unlocking 108
Auto Door Locking/Unlocking 123
Childproof Door Locks 122
From Inside 120
From Outside 111
Keys 108
Using a Key 117
Lockout Prevention System 118
Low Battery Charge 586
Low Fuel Indicator 71

Low Keyless Access Remote Signal Strength 110
Low Oil Pressure Indicator 69, 586
Lower Anchors 57
Luggage (Maximum Load Limit) 423

M

Maintenance 505
Battery 541
Brake Fluid 524
Cleaning 545
Climate Control System 544
Coolant 521
Maintenance Minder™ 509
Oil 517
Precautions 506
Radiator 522
Remote Transmitter 542
Replacing Light Bulbs 525
Safety 507
Service Items 512
Tires 532
Transmission Fluid 523
Under the Hood 514
Malfunction Indicator Lamp 70, 587
Map Lights 165
Maximum Load Limit 423
Meters, Gauges 88
Mirrors 152
Adjusting 152
Door 153
Exterior 153
Interior Rearview 152
Modifications (and Accessories) 551
Moonroof 134
MP3 ..... 192, 201, 235, 260
Multi-Information Display 89
Multi-View Rear Camera 500

N

Numbers (Identification) 598

O

Odometer 92
Oil (Engine) 516
Adding 518
Checking 517
Displaying Oil Life 510
Low Oil Pressure Indicator 69, 586
Recommended Engine Oil 516
Viscosity 516
On Demand Multi-Use Display™ 207
Open Source Licenses 302
Opening/Closing
Hood 515
Moonroof 134
Power Windows 131
Trunk 124
Operating the Switches Around the Steering Wheel 135
Outside Temperature 92
Adjusting 92
Overheating 584

P

Paddle Shifters (Sequential Mode) 18
Pandora® 198, 258
Panic Mode 130
Parking 495
Parking Brake 491
Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator 68, 588
Passenger Airbag Off Indicator 50
Passing Indicators 139
Power Windows 131
Precautions While Driving 431
Rain 431
Pregnant Women 37
Puncture (Tire) 555

R

Radar Sensor 490
Radiator 522
Radio (AM/FM) 190, 221
Radio (SiriusXM®) 224
Radio Data System (RDS) 191, 222
Range 93

RDS (Radio Data System) 191, 222
Readiness Codes (Emissions Testing) 601
Rear Defogger/Heated Door Mirror Button 149
Rear Seat (Folding Down) 162
Rearview Mirror 152
Refueling 502
  Fuel Gauge 88
  Gasoline 502, 596
  Low Fuel Indicator 71
Regulations 444, 535, 599
Remote Engine Start with Vehicle Feedback 428
Remote Transmitter 116
Replacement
  Battery 542
  Bulbs 525
  Fuses 590, 591
  Tires 538
  Wiper Blade Rubber 530
Reporting Safety Defects 600
Resetting a Trip Meter 92
Road Departure Mitigation (RDM) 483
  On and Off 485

S

Safe Driving 27
Safety Labels 66
Safety Message 1
Seat Belts 32
  Adjusting the Shoulder Anchor 36
  Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners 34
  Checking 38
  Fastening 35
  Installing a Child Seat with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt 59
  Pregnant Women 37
  Reminder 33
  Warning Indicator 33, 71
Seat Heaters 170
Seats 154
  Adjusting 154
  Front Seats 154
  Rear Seat 162
  Seat Heaters 170
Security System 128
  Immobilizer System Indicator 75
  Security System Alarm Indicator 75
Select Lever 18, 433
  Operation 18, 434
  Releasing 583
  Won't Move 583
Selecting a Child Seat 56
Selector Knob (Audio) 183
Sequential Mode 435
Sequential Mode Operation 436
Setting the Clock 106
Shift Lever 18, 433
Shift Lever Position Indicator 69, 434
Shifting (Transmission) 433
Shoulder Anchor 36
Side Airbags 46
Side Curtain Airbags 48
SiriusXM® Radio 224
SMS Text Message 351, 363
Snow Tires 540
Spare Tire 597
Spark Plugs 596
Specifications 596
Specified Fuel 502, 596
SRS Airbags (Airbags) 42
Starting the Engine 426
  Does Not Start 577
  Engine Switch Buzzer 135
  Jump Starting 580
  Remote Engine Start 428
Steering Wheel 149
  Adjusting 149
Stopping 495
Summer Tires 540
Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) 42
Switches (Around the Steering Wheel) 4, 5
Synchronization Mode 173
System Message Indicator 73

T

Temperature Sensor 174
Temporary Tire Repair Kit 556
Text Message 351, 363, 403, 405
Time (Setting) 106

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) 442
Indicator 73, 589
Tires 532
Air Pressure 533, 597
Checking and Maintaining 532
Flat Tire (Puncture) 555
Inspection 532
Labeling 533
Puncture (Flat Tire) 555
Regulations 535
Rotation 539
Spare Tire 597
Summer 540
Temporary Tire Repair Kit 556
Tire Chains 540
Wear Indicators 537
Winter 540
Tools 554
Towing a Trailer 425
Towing Your Vehicle 425
Emergency 593
TPMS (Tire Pressure Monitoring System) 442
Transmission 433
Automatic 433
Fluid 523
Gear Position Indicator 69
Number 598
Sequential Mode 435
Shift Lever Position Indicator 434
Trip Meter 92
Troubleshooting 553
Blown Fuse 590, 591
Brake Pedal Vibrates 23
Buzzer Sounds When Opening Door 24
Emergency Towing 593
Engine Won't Start 577
Flat Tire/Puncture 555
Noise When Braking 24
Overheating 584
Premium Gasoline 502, 596
Puncture/Flat Tire 555
Rear Door Won't Open 23, 122
Select Lever Won't Move 583
Warning Indicators 68
Trunk 124
Lid 124
Light Bulb 596
Open Message 83
Turn Signals 138
Indicators (Instrument Panel) 74
Turn-by-Turn Directions 93
Two-way Keyless Access Remote 119, 428

U

Unlocking the Doors 111
Unlocking the Front Doors from the Inside 12, 120
USB Adapter Cable 176, 178
USB Flash Drives 289
USB Port 179
Using the Keyless Access System 111

V

Vanity Mirrors 7
Vehicle Identification Number 598
Vehicle Stability Assist® (VSA®) 437
Off Button 438
Off Indicator 73
System Indicator 72
Viscosity (Oil) 516, 597
Voice Control Operation 218
Voice Portal Screen 219
Voice Recognition 218
VSA® (Vehicle Stability Assist®) 437

W

Wallpaper 214
Wallpaper Setup 186
Warning and Information Messages 81
Warning Indicator On/Blinking 586
Warning Labels 66
Warranties (Warranty Manual provided separately) 603
Watts 596
Wear Indicators (Tire) 537
Wheel Nut Wrench (Jack Handle) 573

Window Washers 146
Adding/Refilling Fluid 524
Switch 146
Windows (Opening and Closing) 131
Windshield 146
Cleaning 549
Defrosting/Defogging 172
Washer Fluid 524
Wiper Blades 530
Wipers and Washers 146
Winter Tires 540
Snow Tires 540
Tire Chains 540
Wipers and Washers 146
Checking and Replacing Wiper Blades 530
WMA 192, 201, 235, 260
Worn Tires 532



mygarage.acura.com (U.S.A.)
acura.ca (Canada)

31TX6662
OM-22032
00X31-TX6-6620

2019 Acura ILX Owner's Manual
© 2023 Honda Motor Co., Ltd. — All Rights Reserved

Printed in the U.S.A.